

# Foreword

Thank you for choosing Hongqi E-HS9!

European version of Hongqi E-HS9 has passed the EU vehicle type approval.

Hongqi E-HS9 is equipped with various luxury equipment and advanced technologies. In order to make full use of these equipment and technologies in your vehicle life in the future, it is recommended that you read this manual carefully so that you can quickly and comprehensively understand Hongqi E-HS9.

This manual provides detailed instructions on safe driving, vehicle maintenance, and emergency countermeasures in addition to introducing how to use the vehicle, aiming to enable you to use the vehicle safely and comfortably, while maximizing the value of the vehicle.

This manual is based on the product's conditions at the time of publication, subsequent product changes will be revised at the time of reprinting and the revisions will be made without notice. Thanks for understanding.

For any further questions about the vehicle or if you feel the information provided in the accompanying documents is insufficient, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer, and we will be happy to help you!

You can view or download the latest version of the Owner's Manual from the Hongqi official website. Before using the vehicle, it is recommended that you read the manual carefully.

Have a nice drive!

China FAW Group Import and Export Co., Ltd





## Table of contents

|   |                                |                                                                                    |
|---|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|   | Index of figures               | Search by figures                                                                  |
| 1 | Safety instructions            | Always read safety instructions                                                    |
| 2 | Instrument cluster             | Read instrument cluster information, various alarm lamps and indicator lamps, etc. |
| 3 | Operating components           | Open and close doors and windows, adjust before driving, etc.                      |
| 4 | Driving                        | Necessary operations and recommendations during driving                            |
| 5 | In-vehicle infotainment system | Operate in-vehicle infotainment system                                             |
| 6 | In-vehicle equipment           | Use in-vehicle equipment, etc.                                                     |
| 7 | Service and maintenance        | Vehicle service and maintenance steps                                              |
| 8 | In case of a fault             | Countermeasures in case of a fault or an emergency                                 |
| 9 | Vehicle specifications         | Details of vehicle specifications                                                  |
|   | Other information              | List of abbreviations and other information contained in this manual               |

**1 Safety instructions****1-1. Instructions for safe use**

|                                              |    |
|----------------------------------------------|----|
| Safe driving .....                           | 24 |
| Seat belt .....                              | 26 |
| Airbag .....                                 | 32 |
| Child safety information ..                  | 44 |
| Child restraint system .....                 | 45 |
| Installation of child restraint system ..... | 54 |
| High voltage safety .....                    | 57 |

**1-2. Charging/discharging**

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| Methods and steps of charging/discharging ...   | 60 |
| Display and setting of charging/discharging ... | 70 |
| Charging/discharging troubleshooting .....      | 75 |

**1-3. IMMO system/anti-theft system**

|                              |    |
|------------------------------|----|
| Immobilizer system .....     | 79 |
| Body anti-theft system ..... | 80 |

**2 Instrument cluster****2. Instrument cluster**

|                                                                   |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Instrument cluster .....                                          | 82 |
| Warning lamp .....                                                | 84 |
| Indicator lamp .....                                              | 86 |
| Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster ..... | 88 |

**3 Operating components****3-1. Key information**

|           |    |
|-----------|----|
| Key ..... | 92 |
|-----------|----|

**3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid**

|                 |     |
|-----------------|-----|
| Door .....      | 95  |
| Trunk lid ..... | 100 |
| PEPS .....      | 105 |

**3-3. Adjusting seat**

|                   |     |
|-------------------|-----|
| Front seat .....  | 110 |
| Rear seat .....   | 113 |
| Headrest .....    | 116 |
| Seat memory ..... | 118 |

### 3-4. Adjusting steering wheel and rearview mirror

|                                           |     |
|-------------------------------------------|-----|
| Steering wheel .....                      | 120 |
| Anti-glare interior rearview mirror ..... | 122 |
| Exterior rearview mirror .....            | 123 |

### 3-5. Opening and closing windows

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Power window .....     | 126 |
| Panorama sunroof ..... | 128 |

## 4 Driving

### 4-1. Before driving

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Driving the vehicle ..... | 132 |
| Goods and luggage .....   | 139 |

### 4-2. Driving specifications

|                                      |     |
|--------------------------------------|-----|
| Power (ignition) switch .....        | 141 |
| Gearshift control .....              | 143 |
| Driving mode .....                   | 148 |
| Air suspension* .....                | 152 |
| Turn signal lamp control lever ..... | 157 |
| Electronic parking brake (EPB) ..... | 158 |
| AUTO HOLD .....                      | 160 |

### 4-3. Operating lamps and wipers

|                                          |     |
|------------------------------------------|-----|
| Headlamp switch .....                    | 162 |
| ADB intelligent high beam control* ..... | 165 |
| Fog lamp switch .....                    | 168 |
| Front windshield wiper & washer .....    | 169 |
| Rear windshield wiper & washer .....     | 173 |

### 4-4. Charging port cover

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Opening charging port cover ..... | 175 |
|-----------------------------------|-----|

### 4-5. Using other driving systems

|                                                            |     |
|------------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Adaptive cruise control (ACC) .....                        | 177 |
| Intelligent speed control system (IACC) .....              | 186 |
| Super adaptive cruise control (SACC) .....                 | 188 |
| Front and rear parking radar .....                         | 199 |
| Around view monitor (AVM) .....                            | 206 |
| Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) .....               | 213 |
| Lane departure warning/lane keeping assist (LDW/LKA) ..... | 215 |
| Driver status monitor (DSM)* .....                         | 219 |

|                                                    |     |
|----------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Forward collision warning (FCW) .....              | 222 |
| Autonomous emergency braking (AEB) .....           | 225 |
| Blind spot detection (BSD) .....                   | 229 |
| Intelligent speed limit warning system (ISA) ..... | 235 |
| Auto parking assist (APA) .....                    | 237 |
| Driver assistance system .....                     | 247 |

#### 4-6. Driving information

|                                    |     |
|------------------------------------|-----|
| Driving essentials in winter ..... | 251 |
|------------------------------------|-----|

### 5 In-vehicle infotainment system

#### 5-1. Basic operation

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Multimedia display ..... | 254 |
| USB data interface ..... | 259 |

#### 5-2. Using multimedia system

|                       |     |
|-----------------------|-----|
| Vehicle .....         | 261 |
| Charging .....        | 274 |
| Travel .....          | 275 |
| Entertainment .....   | 278 |
| Bluetooth phone ..... | 280 |

#### 5-3. Operating on-board Bluetooth phone

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Hands-free system ..... | 282 |
|-------------------------|-----|

#### 5-4. Using voice recognition

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Voice recognition ..... | 285 |
|-------------------------|-----|

#### 5-5. Using mobile APP

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Hongqi Zhilian APP ..... | 287 |
|--------------------------|-----|

### 6 In-vehicle equipment

#### 6-1. Using A/C system

|                                                        |     |
|--------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Automatic A/C system ...                               | 292 |
| Automatic A/C system - front control system .....      | 293 |
| Automatic A/C system - second row control system ..... | 303 |
| Third row A/C control system .....                     | 309 |
| Rear windshield heating                                | 313 |

#### 6-2. Using interior lamp

|                          |     |
|--------------------------|-----|
| Interior lamp list ..... | 314 |
|--------------------------|-----|

### 6-3. Using storage compartments

|                                 |     |
|---------------------------------|-----|
| Storage compartments list ..... | 317 |
| Trunk device .....              | 323 |

### 6-4. Other equipment

|                                  |     |
|----------------------------------|-----|
| On-board wireless charging ..... | 324 |
| Sun visor .....                  | 326 |
| Document holder .....            | 327 |
| Vanity mirror .....              | 328 |
| Power outlet .....               | 329 |
| 220 V power outlet .....         | 332 |
| Seat temperature control* .....  | 334 |
| Seat massage function* .....     | 336 |
| Rear center armrest* ....        | 337 |
| Roof grab handle .....           | 338 |
| Coat hook .....                  | 339 |

## 7 Service and maintenance

### 7-1. Service and maintenance

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| Cleaning and protecting exterior trims of vehicle ..... | 342 |
| Cleaning and protecting interior trims of vehicle ..... | 344 |

### 7-2. Maintenance

|                                   |     |
|-----------------------------------|-----|
| Precautions for maintenance ..... | 347 |
|-----------------------------------|-----|

### 7-3. Maintenance by yourself

|                                               |     |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----|
| Precautions for maintenance by yourself ..... | 350 |
| Front compartment cover .....                 | 353 |
| Front compartment .....                       | 354 |
| Tire .....                                    | 363 |
| Tire pressure .....                           | 366 |
| Wheel .....                                   | 368 |
| A/C filter .....                              | 370 |
| Replacing key battery ...                     | 373 |
| Checking and replacing fuse .....             | 375 |
| Power battery .....                           | 379 |

## 8 In case of a fault

### 8-1. Important information

|                         |     |
|-------------------------|-----|
| Hazard warning lamp ... | 384 |
| SOS alarm .....         | 385 |

### 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| If the vehicle needs to be towed .....                  | 386 |
| If the vehicle is found to be abnormal .....            | 391 |
| If warning lamp comes on or warning buzzer sounds ..... | 392 |
| If you have a flat tire .....                           | 398 |
| If the power system cannot start .....                  | 400 |
| If the key is lost .....                                | 401 |
| If the key fails to work normally .....                 | 402 |
| If the door cannot be locked normally .....             | 404 |
| If 12 V battery power is low .....                      | 406 |
| If your vehicle overheats .....                         | 409 |
| If an electrical fire occurs .....                      | 411 |
| If vehicle gets trapped ..                              | 412 |

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| If driving on water-logged road ..... | 414 |
| If you have a burst tire ..           | 415 |
| If an accident occurs .....           | 416 |
| Emergency opening of trunk lid* ..... | 417 |

## 9 Vehicle specifications

### 9-1. Specifications

|                        |     |
|------------------------|-----|
| Maintenance data ..... | 420 |
|------------------------|-----|

## Other information

|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| List of abbreviations ..... | 436 |
| Driving with trailer .....  | 441 |

1

2

3

4

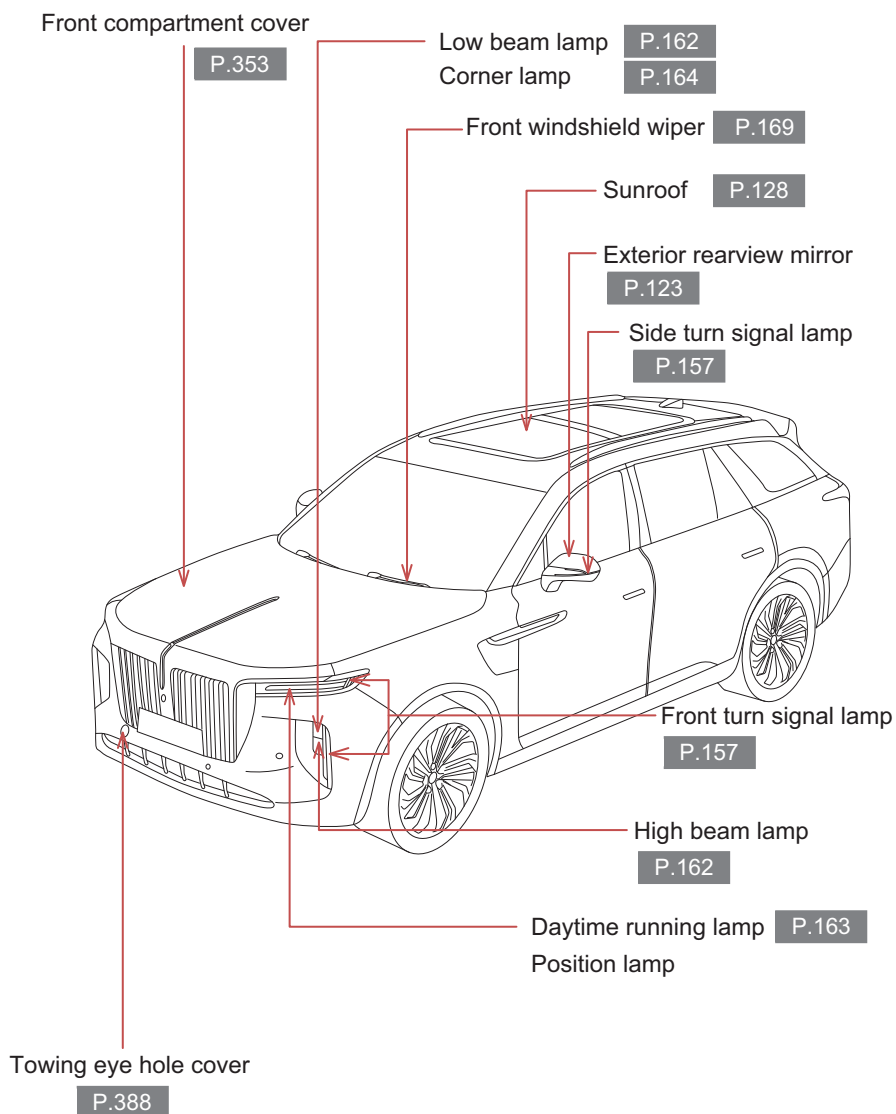
5

6

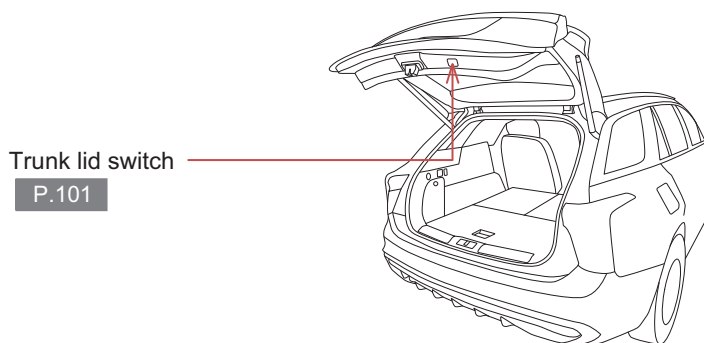
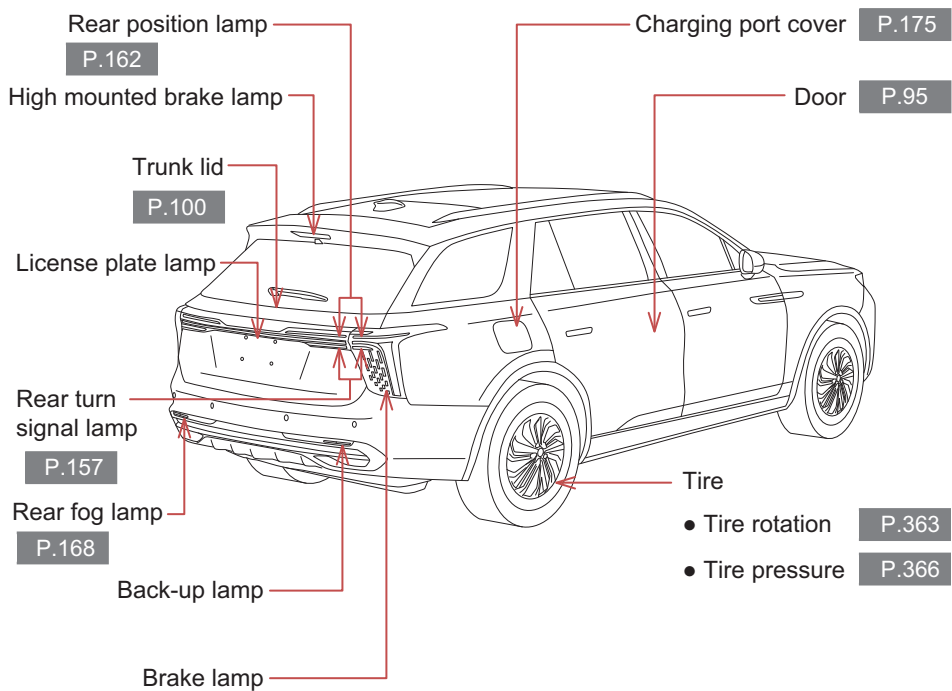
7

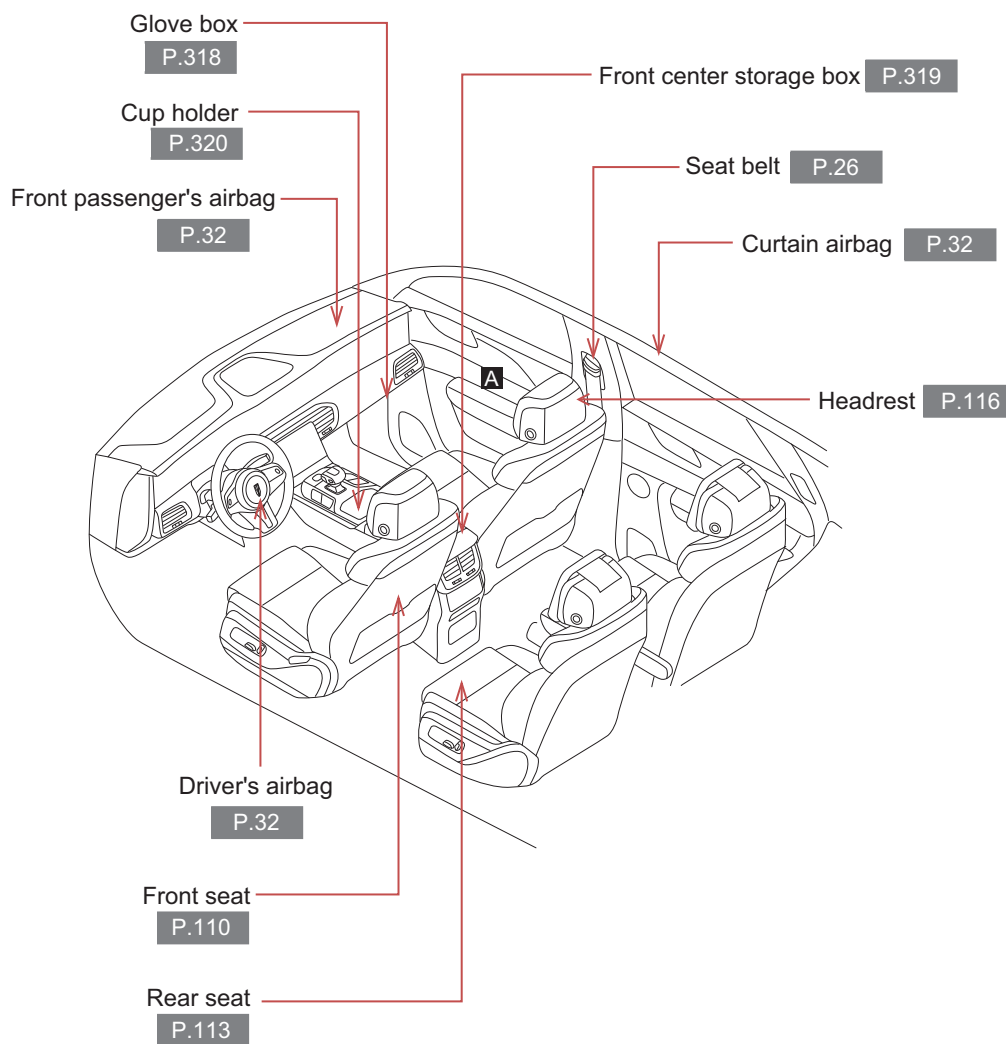
8

9

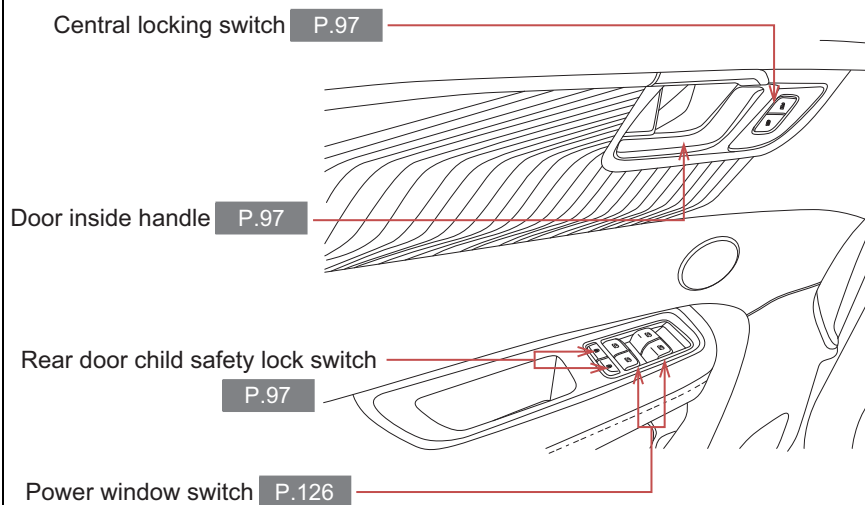


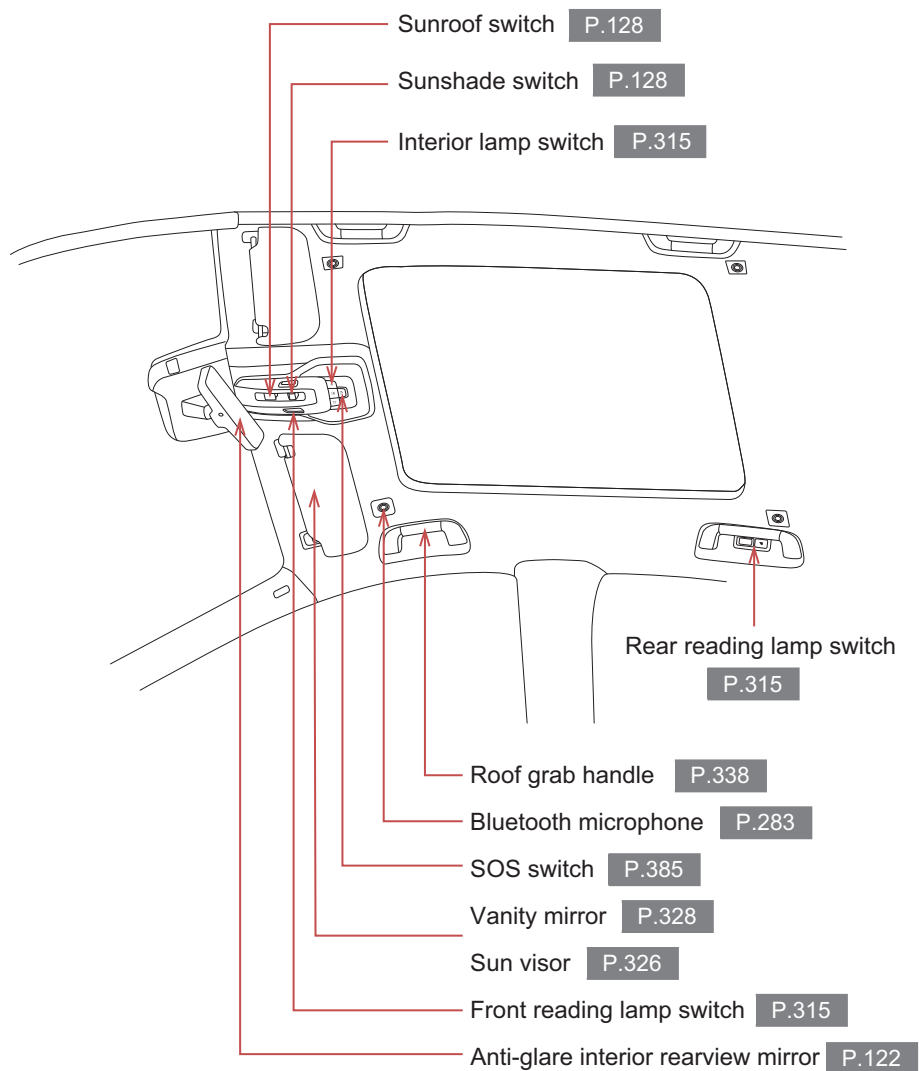


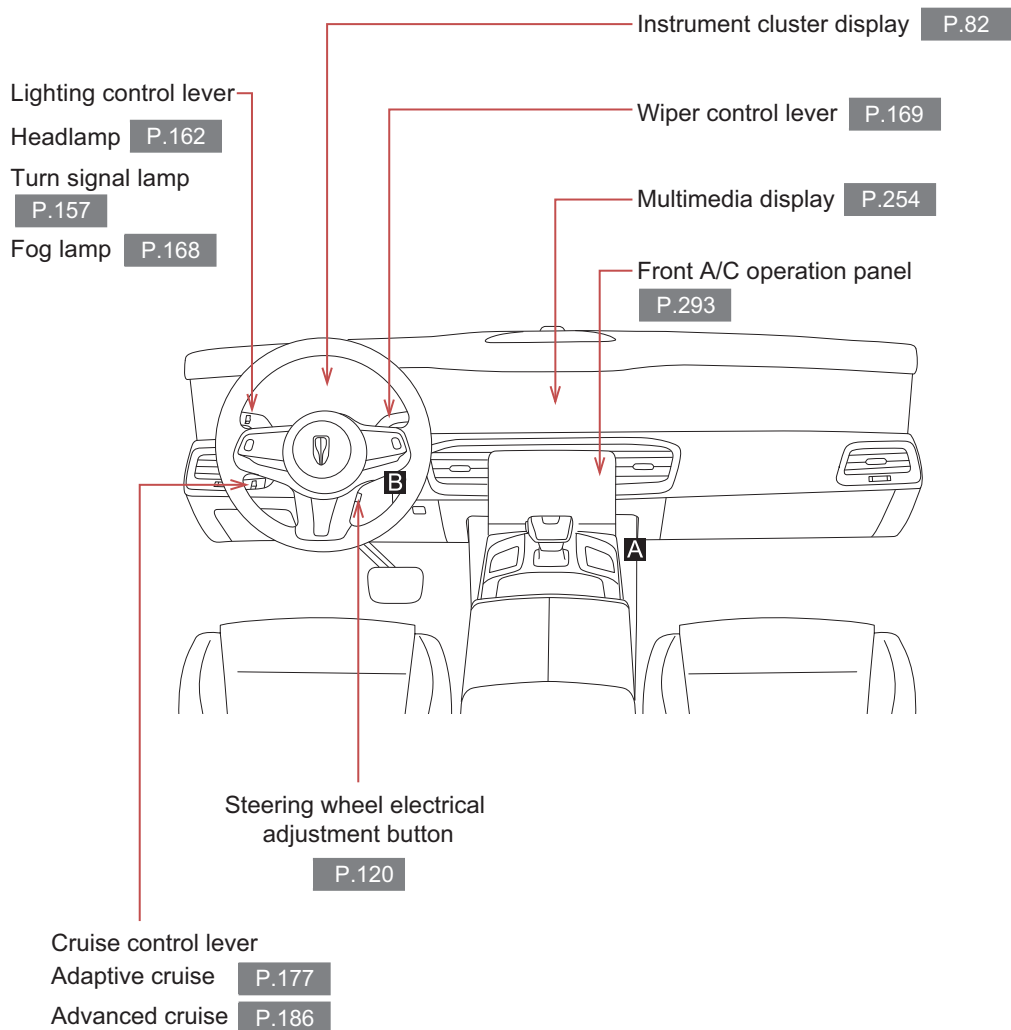




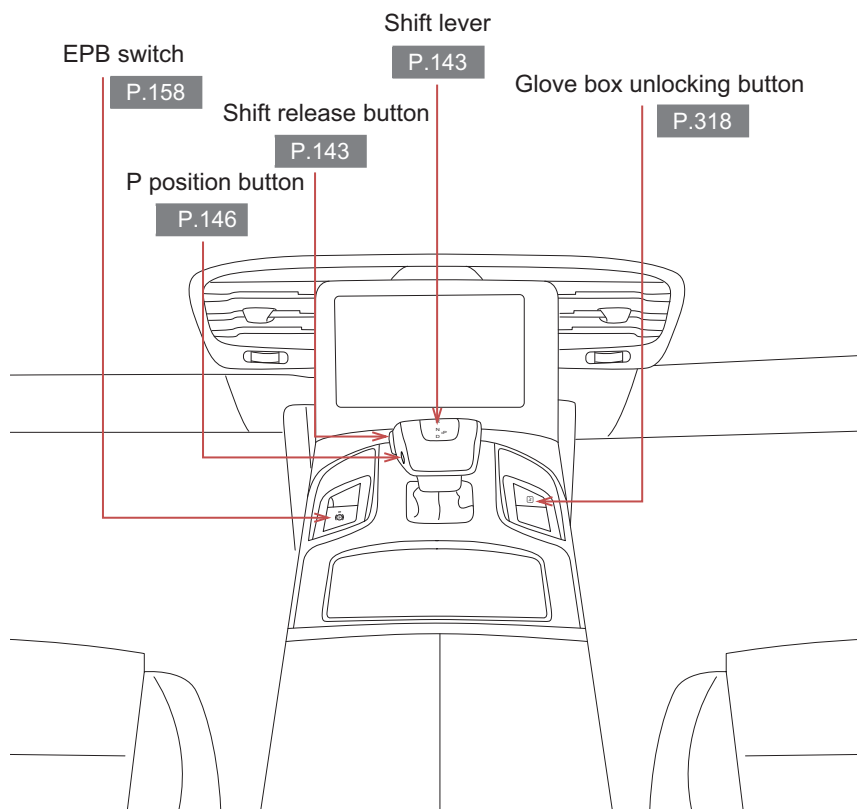
A



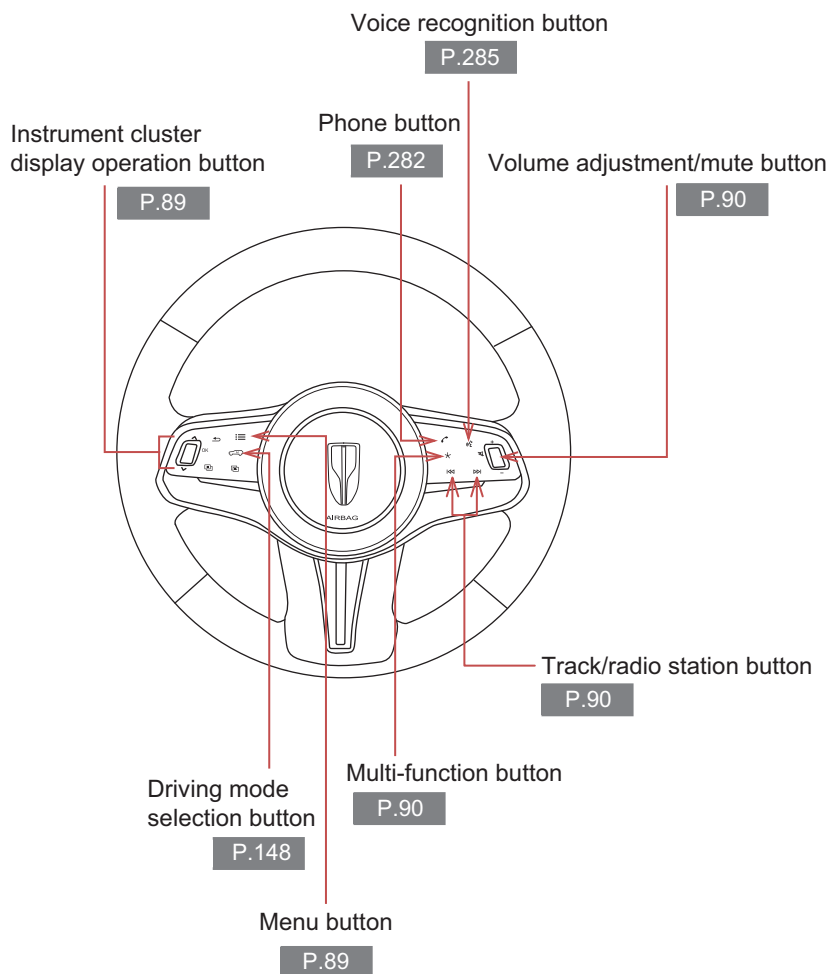




A



**B**



## Reference information

### Precautions for manual

The user must hold a driving license before driving the vehicle on the road. This manual is intended for such users.

As a general manual, this manual is applicable to many models of E-HS9. Some equipment described in the manual may not be installed on your vehicle. \* Indicates that the configurations and functions may vary depending on model. For specific configuration information, please refer to the relevant sales materials or consult the dealer you purchased the vehicle.

The pictures in this manual are for reference only to help you understand the vehicle more intuitively, which may be slightly different from your vehicle. Please refer to the real vehicle configurations.

All specifications provided in this manual are up-to-date when it goes to press. However, due to ongoing modifications and improvements by FAW, the equipment and performance of the follow-up models may vary. Thus, the content of this manual is subject to change without notice. Please do not compare the owner's manual of other versions with the equipment and performance of your vehicle, or require for retrofitting based on the difference between the two. If you have any questions about your vehicle or this owner's manual, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### Accessories, spare parts and modifications of vehicle

An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has the advanced tools, equipment and genuine spare parts for the maintenance and service of your vehicle. We strongly recommend that you use FAW genuine spare parts and accessories that meet the requirements of this vehicle.

For any non-genuine spare parts or accessories, whether they are used for replacement or installation, FAW neither assumes any responsibility nor provides any guarantee. In addition, vehicle damage and performance problems due to the use of the above-mentioned spare parts or accessories are not covered under warranty.



It is prohibited to illegally modify the vehicle with products not authorized by FAW, otherwise it may affect the handling, safety and durability of the vehicle, and may even violate local government regulations. In addition, problems due to modifications are not covered under warranty.

### Reading vehicle identification number (VIN)

Use a diagnostic tester to connect the OBD port of the vehicle; when reading the HCU information, you can read the VIN. Reading tool can be purchased in the market, and must meet ISO14229, ISO15765, ISO15031, and ISO11898 standards.

### Before driving

Before driving, it is recommended to check the followings:

- Tire
- Lighting
- Whether there are obstacles around the vehicle
- Whether there are liquids under the vehicle

Please obey local regulations and designated traffic regulations, and always remember to drive safely.

### Installing RF transmitter system

Installation of the RF transmitter system in the vehicle may affect electronic systems such as:

- Antilock brake system
- Cruise control system
- Airbag system
- Seat belt pretensioner system

Before installing the RF transmitter system, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## Scrapping of vehicle

Since the airbags and seat belt pretensioners contain explosive chemicals, if the vehicle is scrapped without removing them, accidents such as personal injury and fire may occur. Before scrapping the vehicle, be sure to contact a qualified company or institution to remove and dispose of the airbags and seat belt pretensioners. An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is familiar with relevant laws and regulations and can provide you with consulting services.

## Environmental protection

Used parts and waste oil:

- Dispose of the used parts and waste oil properly
- Improper disposal may lead to environmental pollution
- Consult the dealer from whom you purchased the vehicle before scrapping the vehicle

## Event data recorder

The vehicle is equipped with an event data recorder (EDR). The EDR is mainly designed to record data in the event of certain or sudden collisions (such as airbag deployment or collision with a barrier), so as to help understand the operation of the vehicle system. The EDR is specially used to record data related to the dynamic control and safety systems of the vehicle within a short period of time. However, the data may not be recorded sometimes, depending on the severity and type of collision.

Data recorded by EDR of the vehicle, such as:

- Driver and passenger seat belt status
- The extent of the driver depressing the brake and accelerator pedals
- Operating condition of vehicle-related systems
- Vehicle speed

These data can help to better understand the situation of collision and personal injury caused therefrom.

Note: The EDR will record data only when a collision of certain degree occurs to the vehicle; that is to say, the EDR will not record data and personal information (e.g. name, gender, age and site of collision) during normal driving. To read the data recorded by the EDR, it is required to use the special equipment specified by the vehicle manufacturer and obtain the permission of access to the EDR. Besides the vehicle manufacturer, the third parties with special equipment (such as law enforcement agencies) can also read the information if they have the permission of access to the vehicle or EDR.

Based on legal obligations regarding product monitoring, our company can use the data for environmental monitoring, research and vehicle safety system quality improvement. For the purpose of research, our company can provide the data to relevant parties in an anonymous form, that is, the data does not include information about the vehicle, owner, or lessee.

## Model code

This manual describes QRP7WGCN0001, QRP5WHCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001 and QRP6WGCN0001 models.



## **WARNING**

### **■ Precautions for driving**

It is important for the driver to drive soberly, carefully and attentively.

- Drive soberly: Never drive the vehicle after drinking or taking medicine. Alcohol or certain medications may delay response time and impair judgment and coordination, thus resulting in serious injury or death.
- Drive carefully: Always drive with caution. Always pay attention to the movements of other vehicles and pedestrians in order to make timely judgments to prevent accidents.
- Drive attentively: Be sure to concentrate on driving. Anything distracting the driver's attention, such as adjusting the control buttons, making a phone call or reading, may lead to a collision and cause serious injury or even death.

### **■ Precautions regarding child safety**

- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Do not allow children to carry or use the key, as children may cause a safety hazard by starting the vehicle or operating the shift lever.
- Do not allow children to play with doors, windows or other vehicle equipment as they may get injured.
- Make sure that the temperature inside the vehicle is appropriate, because too high or too low temperature may cause fatal injury to children.

## Read this manual

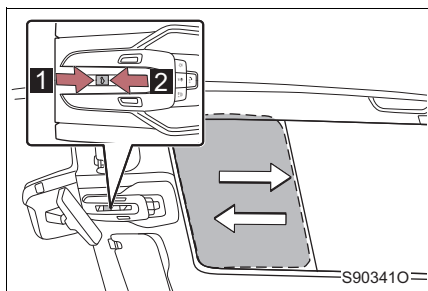
### **WARNING**

Explains warnings that, if not obeyed, could cause serious injury or even death.

### **CAUTION**

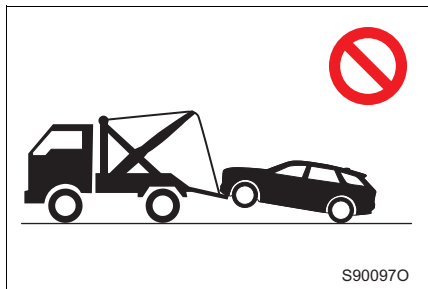
Explains precautions that, if not obeyed, could cause vehicle damage or malfunction.

**Step 1** Indicates operating or working procedures, which should be performed in numerical order.



 Indicates the action (push, turn, press, etc.) used to operate the switch and other devices.

 Indicates the result of the operation (for example, the cover is opened).



 Indicates "Do not", "Do not do", or "Do not do this".



## 1-1. Instructions for safe use

|                                                 |    |
|-------------------------------------------------|----|
| Safe driving .....                              | 24 |
| Seat belt .....                                 | 26 |
| Airbag .....                                    | 32 |
| Child safety<br>information .....               | 44 |
| Child restraint<br>system .....                 | 45 |
| Installation of child<br>restraint system ..... | 54 |
| High voltage<br>safety .....                    | 57 |

## 1-2. Charging/discharging

|                                                          |    |
|----------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Methods and steps<br>of charging/<br>discharging .....   | 60 |
| Display and setting of<br>charging/<br>discharging ..... | 70 |
| Charging/discharging<br>troubleshooting .....            | 75 |

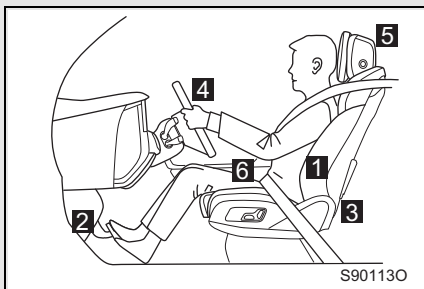
## 1-3. IMMO system/anti-theft system

|                                 |    |
|---------------------------------|----|
| Immobilizer<br>system .....     | 79 |
| Body anti-theft<br>system ..... | 80 |

## Safe driving

**Before driving, adjust the seat, steering wheel and rearview mirrors to the proper positions to ensure safe driving.**

■ **Correct driving posture**



- 1** Sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- 2** Adjust the seat position forward or backward to ensure that you can depress the pedal to the desired position easily.
- 3** Adjust the seat back for convenient access to various switches.
- 4** Adjust the tilt angle of the steering wheel so that the airbag is facing the driver's chest.
- 5** Adjust and lock the headrest so that its center is flush with the upper part of the ear.
- 6** Fasten the seat belt properly.

■ **Correct use of seat belt**

Before driving, make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.

Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.

■ **Adjustment of rearview mirrors**

Adjust the interior and exterior rearview mirrors properly to ensure a clear rear view.



**WARNING****■ Precautions when driving**

- Do not adjust the driver's seat while driving as this may result in loss of vehicle control.
- Do not place a cushion between your body and the seat back, as this will hinder proper sitting posture and reduce the effectiveness of seat belt and headrest.
- Do not place objects under the front seats as this may cause the objects to be caught between seat rails.
- During long-distance driving, please take appropriate breaks if you feel tired.  
If you feel tired or drowsy during driving, do not force yourself to continue driving but immediately rest.

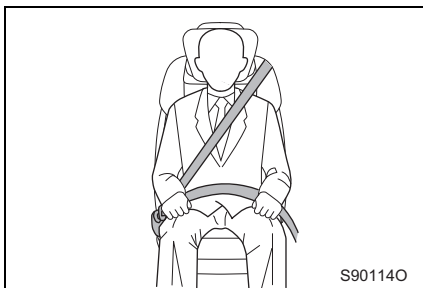
**■ Adjustment of seat position**

- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that the seat does not hurt any other occupants.
- Do not place your hand under the seat or near the moving parts while adjusting the seat, otherwise your fingers may be pinched by seat adjustment device.

# Seat belt

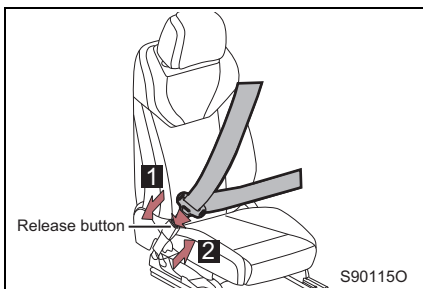
**Before driving, make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.**

## How to use seat belt correctly



- Stretch the shoulder belt so that it slopes across the shoulder, but does not touch the neck or slip off the shoulder.
- Spread the lap belt as low as possible across the hips.
- Adjust the position of the seat back so that you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- Do not twist the seat belt.

## Fastening and unfastening seat belt

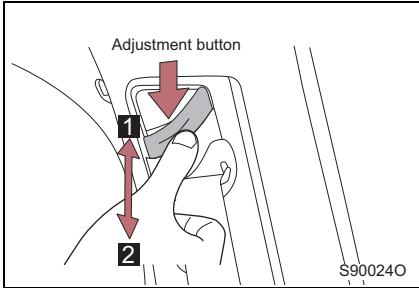


- 1 Fasten the seat belt**  
Insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.
- 2 Unfasten the seat belt**  
Press the release button.

### CAUTION

If any occupant does not fasten the seat belt, the instrument cluster will give an alarm prompt when the vehicle reaches a certain speed.

## Adjusting seat belt height (front seats)

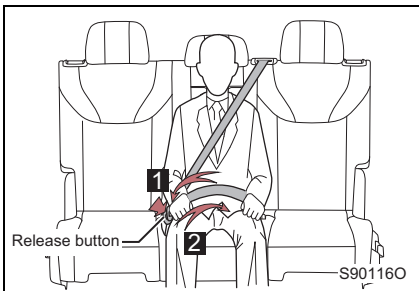


### 1 Move upward

### 2 Move downward

Press and hold the adjustment button and move the height adjuster up or down as desired until you hear a "click" sound.

## Second row center seat belt\*



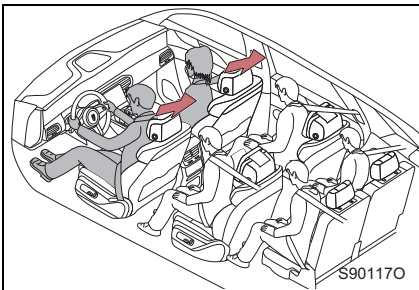
### 1 Fasten the seat belt

Insert the latch plate into the buckle until you hear a "click" sound.

### 2 Unfasten the seat belt

Press the release button.

## Seat belt pretensioner (front only)



When the vehicle is subjected to a serious frontal collision, the pretensioner will be activated to tighten the seat belt so as to quickly restrain the occupant's body for better protection.

However, the pretensioner may not be activated during a minor frontal collision, side collision or rear-end collision.

---

### ■ Emergency locking retractor (ELR)

The retractor will lock the seat belt in the event of emergency braking or a collision. It will also lock the seat belt if you lean forward too quickly. Slow and smooth movement can stretch the seat belt, so that you can move freely.

### ■ Use of child seat belt

The seat belts on the vehicle are mainly designed for adults.

- Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- When children become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt, follow the instructions for using the seat belt. (See P. 26)

### ■ Replacement of seat belt after pretensioner activation

- If the vehicle is involved in multiple collisions, the seat belt pretensioner will be activated during the first collision, but no longer be activated during the second and subsequent collisions.
- After the seat belt pretensioner is activated in a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to replace the seat belt in time.

### ■ Seat belt regulations

If there are seat belt regulations in your country or region, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement or installation of the seat belt.



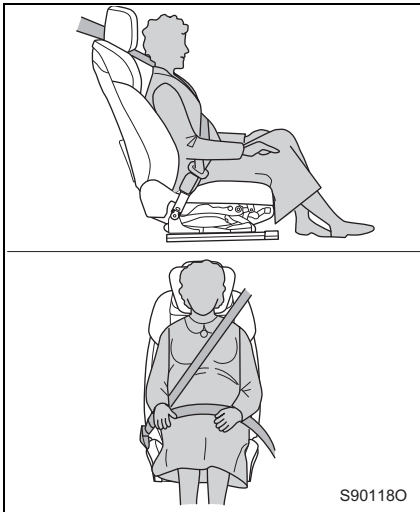
## WARNING

To reduce the risk of injury due to emergency braking, emergency steering, or accidents, observe the following precautions; otherwise, serious injury or death may be caused.

### ■ Fasten the seat belt properly

- Make sure that all occupants have fastened the seat belts.
- Be sure to fasten the seat belt correctly at all times.
- Do not over-recline the seat for comfort. The seat belt provides the maximum protection only when you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.
- Do not place the shoulder belt under your arms.
- Be sure to spread the seat belt as low as possible across the hips.

### ■ Pregnant women



- Please follow your doctor's advice and properly fasten the seat belt.
- Like other occupants, pregnant women should also spread the lap belt as low as possible across the hips. The shoulder belt should be stretched obliquely along the shoulders and across the chest, and avoid contact with the raised abdomen.
- If the seat belt is not properly fastened, in emergency braking or a collision, pregnant women and fetus may suffer from serious injury or even death.

### ■ Patients

Please follow your doctor's advice and properly fasten the seat belt.

### ■ When a child is in the vehicle

Do not let the child play the seat belt. If the seat belt is wrapped around the child's neck, asphyxiation or other serious injury that could result in death may be caused.

If the seat belt cannot be unfastened in such a case, cut off the seat belt with a pair of scissors.



## **WARNING**

In order to reduce the risk of personal injury in case of emergency braking or an accident, and to avoid serious personal injury or even death, please observe the following precautions.

### **■ Fasten the seat belt correctly**

- It is very dangerous for the driver to sit in the wrong posture or fasten the seat belt in the wrong way. The pretensioners and load limiters cannot provide adequate protection due to incorrect fastening of seat belt, which may result in serious personal injury.
- The incorrect fastening of seat belt is very dangerous. During a collision, an occupant who fastens the seat belt incorrectly may collide with other persons or objects in the vehicle, or may even be thrown out of the vehicle, resulting in serious injury or even death. In the same collision, an occupant who fastens the seat belt correctly will be safer.

### **■ Do not twist the seat belt when fastening it**

A twisted seat belt is very dangerous. During a collision, the seat belt cannot fully utilize its full width to absorb the impact force, so that more force is exerted on the bones under the seat belt, which can result in serious injury or even death.

### **■ Do not share a seat belt with others**

It is very dangerous to share a seat belt with others (including children). Because the seat belt cannot properly disperse the impact force, and the occupants can collide with each other, causing serious injury or even death.

### **■ Adjustable shoulder belt anchorages (front seats)**

Make sure that the shoulder belt crosses the middle of the shoulder. The seat belt should be away from the neck, but shall not slip off the shoulder. Otherwise, the protective effect of the seat belt may be reduced in the event of an accident, and serious injury or death may be caused in case of emergency braking, sudden steering or accident.

### **■ Do not over-recline the seat**

Do not over-recline the seat for comfort. The seat belt provides the maximum protection only when you sit up straight with your back against the seat back.

**WARNING**

■ **Do not drive the vehicle with a damaged seat belt**

The use of a damaged seat belt is very dangerous. An accident may result in damage to the seat belt. The damaged seat belt fails to provide adequate protection in a collision. After an accident, all seat belt systems shall be thoroughly inspected by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer before use.

■ **Seat belt pretensioner**

Immediately after any collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of seat belt pretensioners and airbags. As with airbags, the seat belt pretensioners can only be used once and must be replaced after activation in a collision. If not replaced, the risk of serious injury to the occupants may be increased during the second collision.

■ **Damage and wear of seat belt**

- Do not allow the seat belt or latch plate get caught in the door as this may damage the seat belt.
- Check the seat belt regularly. Check the seat belt for cuts, wear and looseness. Do not use a damaged seat belt, but replace it. A damaged seat belt cannot protect the occupant and could result in serious injury or even death.
- Make sure that the latch plate and buckle of seat belt are locked and the seat belt is not twisted.  
If the seat belt fails to work properly, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- If the vehicle is involved in a serious accident, replace the seat belt together with the seat assembly even if there is no significant damage.
- Do not install, remove, modify, disassemble or discard the seat belt without authorization. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for necessary treatment.

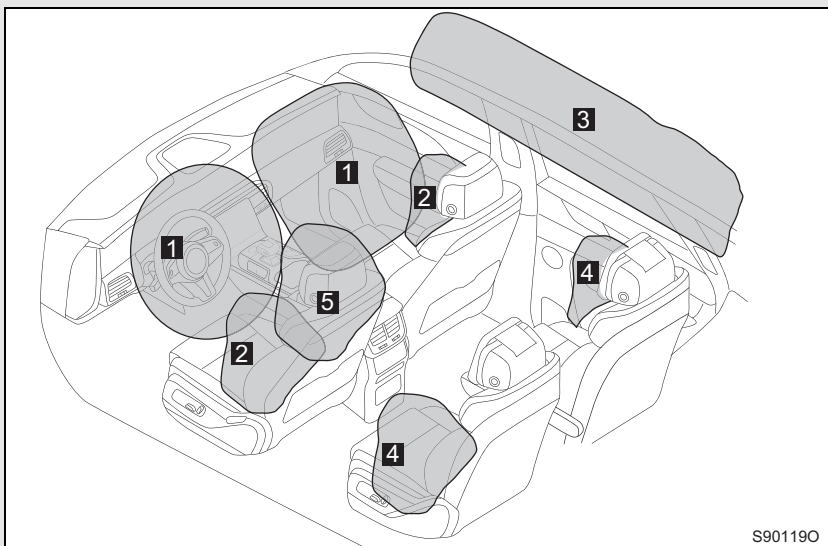
**CAUTION**

■ **Keep seat belt clean**

If the seat belt is dirty, it may be difficult to be retracted. Please keep the seat belt clean. (See P. 345)

# Airbag

The airbag is a passive safety protection device designed to mitigate or avoid the injury to the occupants when the vehicle is subjected to serious collisions that may cause serious injuries to the occupants. In certain serious collisions, the airbag can be deployed. The vehicle is equipped with multiple airbags. The airbags and seat belts work together to reduce the risk of serious injury or even death. (The shape of the deployed airbag is only for reference)



S901190

**1 Driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag**

To help protect the driver's and front passenger's head and chest from the impact of interior components.

**2 Driver's seat airbag/front passenger's seat airbag**

To help protect the driver's and front passenger's torso.

**3 Curtain airbag**

To help protect the heads of the driver, front passenger, and rear outer occupant.

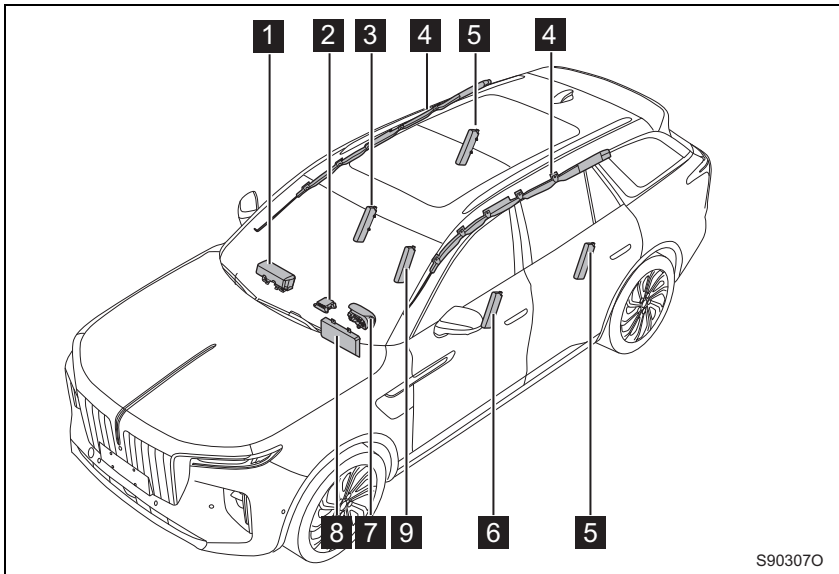
**4 Second row seat airbag\***

To help protect the torsos of the second row occupants on both sides.



**5 Front center airbag**

To help protect the driver's and front passenger's torsos from colliding with each other.

**Components of supplemental restraint system (SRS)****1 Front passenger's airbag****2 Airbag control unit****3 Front passenger's seat airbag****4 Curtain airbag****5 Second row seat airbag\*****6 Driver's seat airbag****7 Driver's airbag****8 SRS fault warning lamp****9 Front center airbag**

These are the main components of the SRS.

In the event of severe frontal or side collision, the SRS triggers the airbag inflator. The chemical reaction in the airbag inflator can quickly fill the airbag with non-toxic gas to avoid injury to the occupants due to a secondary collision with interior components.



## WARNING

### ■ Precautions for airbag

Please observe the following precautions for airbags. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

- The driver and other occupants in the vehicle must correctly fasten the seat belts.

The airbag is an auxiliary device used in conjunction with the seat belt.

- The driver's airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the driver is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused.
- The high-risk zone for the driver's airbag is the first 0-100 mm of deployment. Keep at least 300 mm away from the driver's airbag. This is the distance from the center of the steering wheel to the sternum of the driver. If you are sitting at a distance of less than 300 mm, you can adjust the driving position using the following methods:
  - Move the seat to the rear as far as possible, but it is still the prerequisite to depress the pedals easily.
  - Slightly tilt the seat back backward. If it is difficult to see the road ahead after the seat back is tilted, you can raise the seat or use a hard anti-slip seat cushion to lift the body.
  - Adjust the steering wheel to tilt it downward as far as possible. This allows the airbag to face the driver's chest rather than the head and neck.

When the driver's seat is adjusted in accordance with the above recommendations, the pedals and steering wheel should be kept in the driver's control range, and control switches of the instrument panel are within the driver's field of view.

- When scrapping the vehicle or the components of SRS and pretensioner seat belts, please observe the relevant safety regulations.

### ■ Fasten the seat belt properly

Always fasten the seat belt when driving a vehicle equipped with airbags. It is very dangerous to rely solely on the airbag in an accident. Because only the airbag may not be able to avoid serious injury. Therefore, be sure to fasten the seat belt when driving or riding the vehicle.

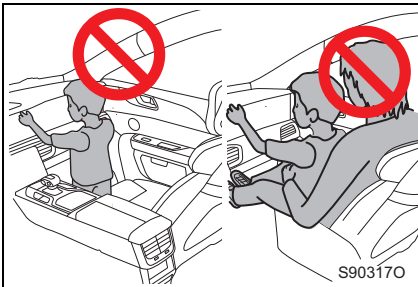
## ⚠ WARNING

### ■ Precautions for airbag

- The front passenger's airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the front passenger is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused. The front passenger's seat should be as far away from the airbag as possible, and the seat back should be adjusted so that the front passenger can sit upright.
- Improperly seated/protected infants and young children may suffer from serious injury or death due to airbag deployment. Infants and young children who are unable to use the seat belts shall be properly restrained by child restraint systems. We strongly recommend that the infants and young children use child seats and the child seats be placed on the rear seats of the vehicle. For infants and young children, the rear seats are safer than the front passenger's seat.



- Do not lean against the instrument panel, A-pillars, roof side rails, door parts or seat edges, otherwise, when the front passenger's airbag is deployed, it may cause a strong head impact, resulting in serious injury or even death (when children are in the vehicle, more attention shall be paid).



- Do not allow children to stand in front of the front passenger's airbag.
- Do not place any object or let any child sit on the front passenger's lap.

**⚠ WARNING**

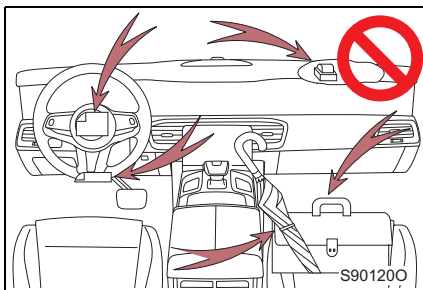
**■ Precautions for airbag**



- Do not lean against the doors, roof side rails, A-pillars or B-pillars.



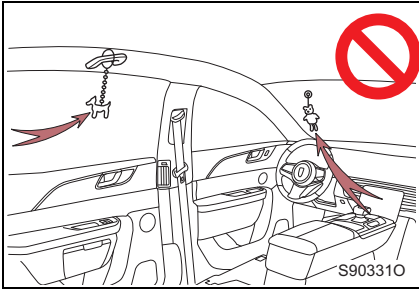
- Do not face the door and kneel on the seat or extend the head and hand out of the vehicle.



- Do not attach or lean any items to the instrument panel, driver's airbag cover, etc. These items may be ejected upon deployment of driver's airbag or front passenger's airbag.

## WARNING

### ■ Precautions for airbag



- Do not tie anything to the doors, windshields, windows, A-pillars, B-pillars, C-pillars, roof side rails, roof grab handles, etc.
- Do not hang coat hangers or other hard objects on the coat hooks. If the curtain airbag is deployed, these objects may be ejected, resulting in serious injury or death.
- Do not use such seat accessories that will cover the seat airbag or its deployment area, as they may interfere with deployment of the airbag.
- Do not strike the area where the airbag is located or apply excessive force to it, as this may cause the airbag to malfunction.
- Do not touch the related parts immediately after the airbag is deployed (inflated), as they may be hot.
- If you feel it difficult to breathe after deployment of the airbag, open the door or window for ventilation, or leave the vehicle if it is safe to do so. Rinse the residue on the body as soon as possible so as to avoid skin irritation.
- If the area where the airbag is located (such as the driver's airbag cover and instrument panel) is damaged or cracked, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement.



## WARNING

### ■ After the airbag is deployed in the event of a collision

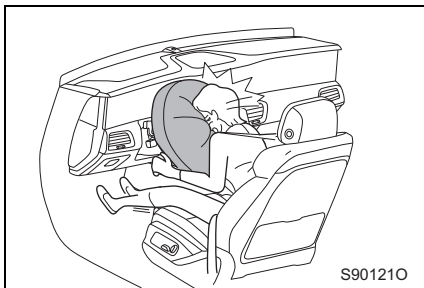
The SRS can only provide the protection in an accident for one time. After the airbag is deployed in the event of a collision, please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement of airbag, airbag control unit and related components, and the original components shall not be used.

### ■ Modification and scrapping of SRS components

Be sure to contact a qualified company or institution to scrap the airbag. Please do not make the following modifications before consulting an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. Otherwise, the airbag may malfunction or deploy (inflate) unintentionally, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbag.
- Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument panel, seat or seat trims, A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar or roof side rail.
- Repair or modification of front fender, front bumper or sides of passenger compartment.
- Retrofitting of front grille with snow plow, winch and other tools.
- Modification of suspension system.
- Installation of portable two-way radio.

### ■ When the airbag is deployed (inflated)



- The airbag deploys with considerable force, and if the occupant is too close to the airbag, serious injury or death may be caused.
- The airbag deploys with ignition sound and smoke, but no fire will occur. If people with respiratory tract diseases such as asthma inhale the gas, they may experience breathing difficulties. In this case, it is relatively safe to immediately evacuate from the vehicle. If evacuation is impossible, open the windows and doors to take in the fresh air.

- The airbag deployment speed is very high, which may cause minor scratch, scalding or other injuries.
- If the residue (gas, etc.) from airbag deployment splashes into the eyes or attaches to the skin, rinse the affected area with fresh water as soon as possible. Sensitive skin may have allergic reactions.
- In addition to the airbag itself, the SRS module components (including airbag cover and inflator), as well as the steering wheel, instrument panel, seat, A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar and roof side rail may become hot in a few minutes.
- The front windshield may be broken.

#### ■ Airbag trigger factors

- The triggering range of airbag in various accident situations cannot be determined in general terms, because the specific circumstances of the accidents vary greatly. For example, the nature (hardness) of the object that the vehicle collides with, the angle of collision, and the speed of the vehicle are all important trigger factors for the airbag.
- The decisive trigger factors for the airbag are the deceleration and pressure curves that are produced in the event of a collision. The sensors installed on the vehicle, together with the electronic control units, identify the severity of the collision, and thus selectively trigger the airbag in a timely manner. If the deceleration value or pressure value generated and measured during a collision is lower than the reference value preset in the control unit, the airbag will not deploy even though the vehicle may have been deformed to a certain extent in the accident.

#### ■ Operating conditions (driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag)

- In the event of a more severe frontal collision, where the degree of collision exceeds a set threshold, the driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag will be deployed.

However, if the vehicle hits a movable or deformable object (such as a parked vehicle or a signal post) or in case of an "underrun" (such as a collision in which the front of the vehicle "penetrates" beneath a truck's cargo compartment), the airbag may not deploy.

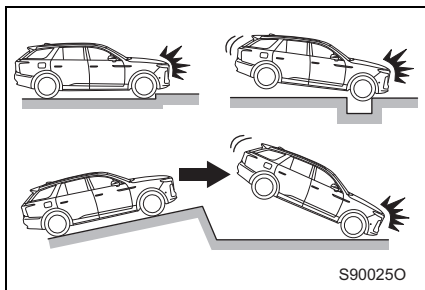
- In some collisions, the forward deceleration of the vehicle is very close to the design threshold, but the frontal airbag and seat belt pretensioner may not be activated.

### ■ Operating conditions (seat airbag and curtain airbag)

- In the event of a severe side collision, the collision degree exceeds the set threshold, the seat airbag and curtain airbag on collision side will deploy.
- In some special accidents, the seat airbag and curtain airbag may deploy together with the driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag.

### ■ Other cases where the airbag may deploy (except for collisions)

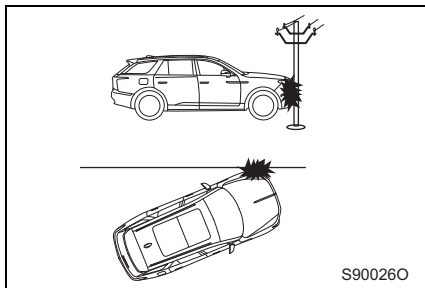
If the bottom of the vehicle is severely impacted, the driver's airbag and front passenger's airbag also be deployed.



- The vehicle hits a curb, sidewalk edge, or hard surface
- The vehicle falls into or jumps over a deep pit
- The wheels are hard grounded or the vehicle falls

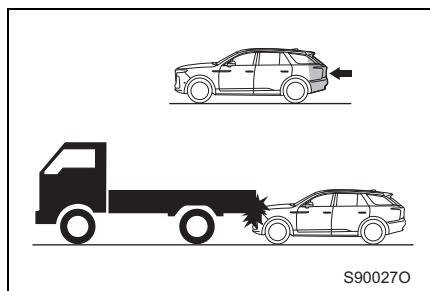
### ■ Cases where the airbag (driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag) may not deploy

The driver's airbag/front passenger's airbag may not deploy during the collision with cylindrical objects such as utility poles and trees, non-frontal collision with walls and highway guardrails, rear-end collision, collision with the rear of truck or going under the bottom of truck, low-speed frontal collision, side collision or rollover. However, as long as the collision causes the vehicle to have a sufficient forward deceleration, the airbag may deploy.

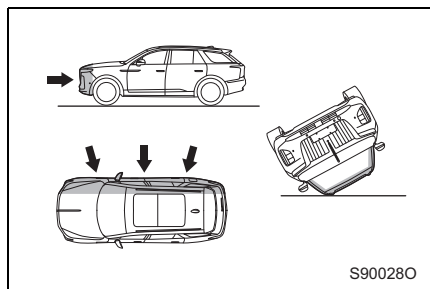


- Collision with cylindrical objects such as utility poles and trees
- Non-frontal collision with walls and highway guardrails





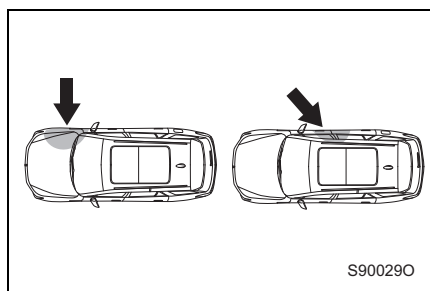
- Rear-end collision
- Collision with the rear of the truck, or going under the bottom of truck



- Low-speed frontal collision
- Side collision
- Rollover

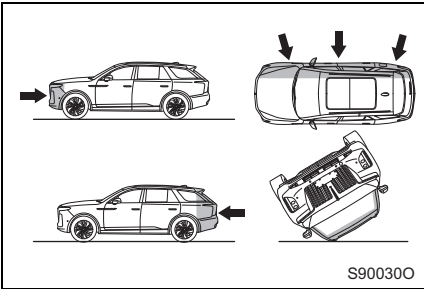
#### ■ Cases where the airbag (seat airbag/curtain airbag) may not deploy

If the vehicle is subjected to a side collision of non-passenger compartment, or a side collision of vehicle body at an angle, the seat airbag/curtain airbag may not deploy



- Side collision of non-passenger compartment
- Side collision of vehicle body at an angle

Generally, the seat airbag/curtain airbag will not deploy when the vehicle is subjected to a low-speed frontal collision, low-speed side collision, rear-end collision or rollover.

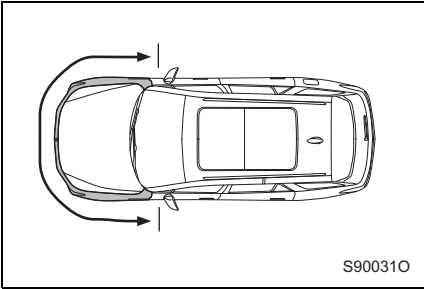


- Low-speed frontal collision
- Low-speed side collision
- Rear-end collision
- Rollover

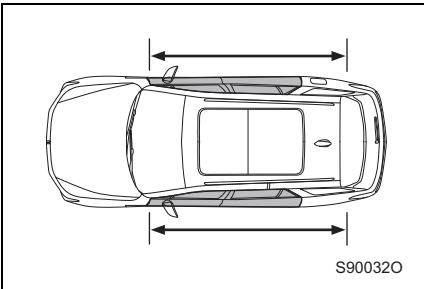
■ When to contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer

In the following cases, the vehicle needs to be inspected and/or repaired. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.

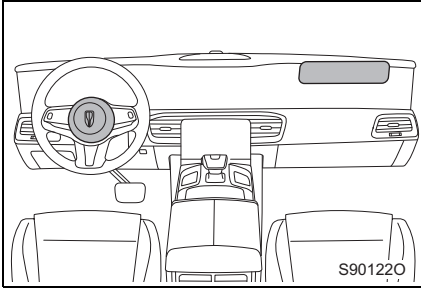
- Any airbag has been deployed.



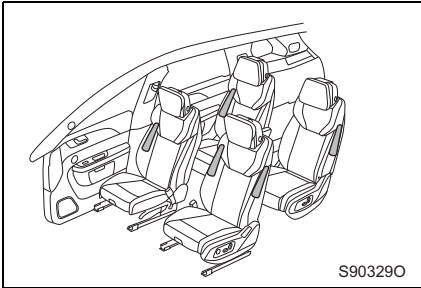
- The front of the vehicle is damaged or deformed, or a collision in which the airbag is not deployed has occurred.



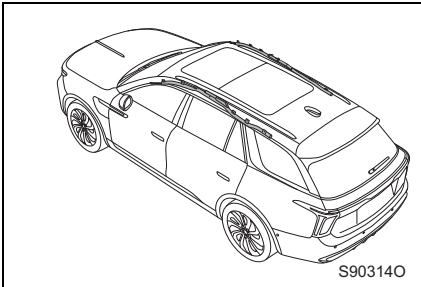
- The door or the area around the door is damaged or deformed, or a collision in which the seat airbag and curtain airbag are not deployed has occurred.



- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the driver's airbag cover or the instrument panel near the front passenger's airbag.



- There are scratches, cracks or other damages on the surface of the seat equipped with seat airbag.



- There are scratches on the curtain airbag, and cracks or other damages on the parts such as the A-pillar, B-pillar, C-pillar protector, roof, handle, reading lamp, microphone, etc.

# Child safety information

**Always observe the following precautions when any child is inside the vehicle.**

**Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.**

- It is recommended that the child sit in the rear seats to prevent accidental contact with the shift lever, wiper switch, etc.
- During driving, use the rear door safety lock to lock the doors and windows so that the children cannot open the door or operate the power window unexpectedly.
- Do not allow the child to operate devices that may pinch any body part (such as power window, front compartment cover, trunk lid, seat, etc.)



### **WARNING**

■ **Do not allow children to carry the vehicle key or play alone in the vehicle**

Never leave children unattended in the vehicle. Do not allow children to carry or use the key.

Children may start the vehicle or operate the shift lever. Children may also get injured while playing with windows, sunroof or other vehicle equipment. In addition, too high or too low temperature inside the vehicle may cause fatal injury to children.

■ **Always lock the vehicle, and keep the key out of reach of children**

It is dangerous if the vehicle is improperly locked when leaving it stationary or if the key is placed within the reach of children. The child who enters the trunk through an open trunk may get locked in the trunk by accident. Especially in summer, the child may suffer from heat exhaustion, resulting in brain injury and even death. Regardless of whether you have children, always lock the doors and trunk.

# 1-1. Instructions for safe use

## Child restraint system

**FAW strongly recommends that you use the child restraint system.**

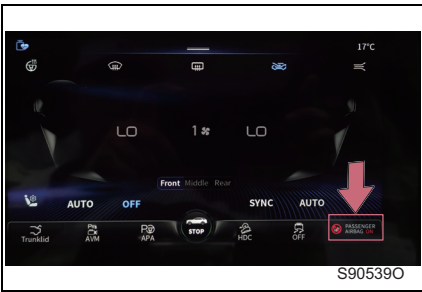
### Precautions

An appropriate child restraint system can provide good protection for your child in an accident.  
For the child's safety, please carefully read the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual before installing a child restraint system.

#### **WARNING**

- An appropriate child restraint system must be used for the child when traveling in the vehicle, never carry a child on your lap.
- Make sure the child restraint system is properly installed following the instructions provided with the restraint system and in this manual.
- Failure to follow the instructions provided with the child restraint system and in this manual may cause injuries and even death to the child in an accident.

### Front passenger airbag switch



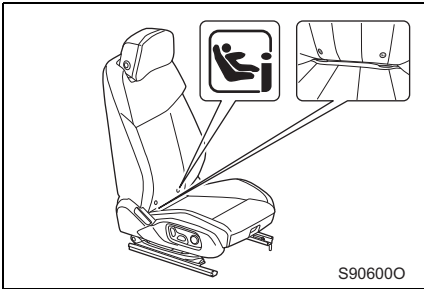
Front passenger airbag ON-OFF switch is located in the A/C operation panel.

#### **WARNING**

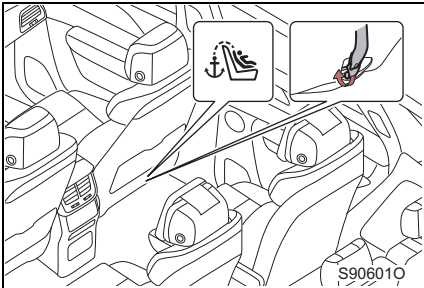
- Never use a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger's seat when the front passenger airbag switch is active.
- When there is no child restraint system installed on the front passenger seat, please switch the airbag back to the ON position immediately.

Child restraint system anchorage

► Front passenger's seat

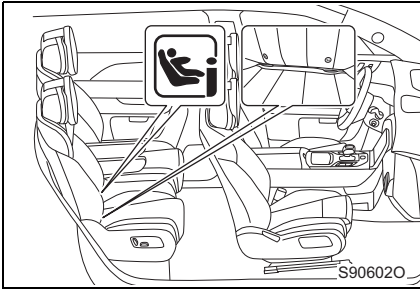


Front passenger's seat is equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorage. The anchorage is located between the seat back and seat cushion, identified with i-Size markings.

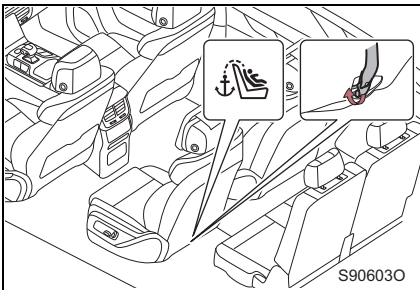


The front passenger's seat is equipped with the top tether anchorage on the base of the seat back, identified with a Top Tether marking.

## ► Second row outside seat



The second row outside seats are equipped with ISOFIX/i-Size anchorages. The anchorages are located between the seat back and seat cushion, identified with i-Size markings.



The second row outside seats are equipped with a Top Tether anchorage on the seat back, identified with a Top Tether marking.

## Follow the instructions below when using a child restraint system on front passenger's seat:

If necessary, please adjust the front passenger's seat backwards so that there is no interaction between the dashboard and the child restraint system/the child.

If necessary, adjust the height of front passenger's seat to ensure the child restraint system is properly restrained.

If necessary, adjust the front passenger's seat back angle to ensure that the seat back provides good support to the child restraint system.

Always remove the comfort cushion from the headrest. The height of headrest can be adjusted when it interacts with the child restraint system.

For child restraint system with seat belt guide, please ensure that guide is positioned forward or aligned with the seat belt upper anchorage on the vehicle's B-pillar. Ensure that the seat belt passes through the guide without any twisting.

**Follow the instructions below when using a child restraint system on the second row seat:**

To ensure that the child restraint system/child does not interfere with the front seat, adjust the front seat forward to get more space.

The second row seat can be adjusted forwards/backwards to ensure that the child restraint system/child is properly installed and restrained.

The seat back angle can be adjusted so that the child restraint system is supported well.

Always remove the comfort cushion from the headrest if available. The headrest can be adjusted or even removed if necessary to ensure that the vehicle seat back provides good support to the child restraint system. But never remove the headrest when using a booster cushion without the seat back and adjust it to a suitable locking position.

**Follow the instructions below when using a child restraint system on the third row seat:**

If necessary, adjust the second row seat to its most forward position, and adjust its seat back angle to vertical (or even fold it forward] to ensure there is sufficient space to safely install the child restraint system in the third row seat.

When the child restraint system/child is properly installed and restrained, return the second row seat back to its normal use position.

Always keep the headrest in the normal use position.



## Details on child restraint system installation

1

Safety instructions

|                                                            | Seating position |                           |                            |                         |                                                                         |                          |                        |                         |
|------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                                            | Driver's seat    | Front passenger's seat    |                            | Second row left seat b) | Second row center seat b)<br>Only applicable for the 7-passenger models | Second row right seat b) | Third row left seat c) | Third row right seat c) |
|                                                            |                  | Front passenger airbag ON | Front passenger airbag OFF |                         |                                                                         |                          |                        |                         |
| Seating position suitable for universal seat belt (Yes/No) | No               | Yes a) d)                 | Yes a)                     | Yes                     | No                                                                      | Yes                      | Yes                    | Yes                     |
| i-Size seating position (Yes/No)                           | No               | Yes d)                    | Yes                        | Yes                     | No                                                                      | Yes                      | No                     | No                      |
| Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2/No)   | No               | No                        | No                         | No                      | No                                                                      | No                       | No                     | No                      |
| Largest suitable rear-facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3/No)     | No               | No                        | R1/R2X/R2/R3               | R1/R2X/R2/R3            | No                                                                      | R1/R2X/R2/R3             | No                     | No                      |

|                                                         | Seating position |                           |                            |                          |                                                                         |                          |                        |                         |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------|---------------------------|----------------------------|--------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|-------------------------|
|                                                         | Driver's seat    | Front passenger's seat    |                            | Second row left seat b)  | Second row center seat b)<br>Only applicable for the 7-passenger models | Second row right seat b) | Third row left seat c) | Third row right seat c) |
|                                                         |                  | Front passenger airbag ON | Front passenger airbag OFF |                          |                                                                         |                          |                        |                         |
| Largest suitable front-facing fixture (F1/F2X/F2/F3/No) | No               | F1/F2X/<br>F2/F3          | F1/F2X/<br>F2/F3           | F1/<br>F2X/<br>F2/<br>F3 | No                                                                      | F1/<br>F2X/<br>F2/<br>F3 | No                     | No                      |
| Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3/No)             | No               | (B2/B3)<br>a)             | (B2/B3)<br>a)              | B2/<br>B3                | (B2/B3)<br>e)                                                           | B2/<br>B3                | (B2/<br>B3)<br>e)      | (B2/<br>B3)<br>e)       |

The meanings of above alphabets are:

- a): Adjust the seat halfway between fully raised and fully lowered position. Always remove the comfort cushion from the headrest and adjust the height of headrest if needed.
- b): Always remove the comfort cushion from the headrest if available. Adjust/remove the headrest if possible, but never remove it when using a booster cushion without the seat back.
- c): For the child seat installation and child sitting on the third row seat, adjust the second row seat to its fully forward position. Adjust the second row seat back vertically or even fold it when it interferes with the child seat on the third row to facilitate installation. Keep the seat headrest in the normal use position. After installation, return the second row seat back to its use position if possible.
- d): Only applicable for front-facing child seat.
- e): Only applicable for installation with seatbelt.

## Recommended child restraint system

Grouping of child stature according to ECE R129 regulations

| Child stature                                                                                      | Manufacturer | Child restraint system     | Vehicle accessories   |
|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 40-83 cm                                                                                           | Maxi-Cosi    | Pebble 360                 | Seat belt             |
| 76-105 cm                                                                                          | Britax Romer | Trifix <sup>2</sup> i-Size | ISOFIX and Top Tether |
| 100-150 cm                                                                                         | Britax Romer | Kidfix i-Size *            | ISOFIX and seat belt  |
| 137-150 cm                                                                                         | GRACO        | Booster MAX                | Seat belt             |
| *: For the best child protection, ensure to pass the seat belt through the Secure Guard and XP-PAD |              |                            |                       |

### ■ Choose an appropriate child restraint system

- Children shall use appropriate child restraint systems until they become large enough to wear the vehicle's seat belt.
- If the child cannot use a child restraint system due to large body size, place the child in the second row seat and use the seat belt of the vehicle.
- Ensure that the CRS is the correct type for the seating position.



## **WARNING**

### **■ Manufacturer's instructions for child restraint system**

Always observe the manufacturer's instructions when selecting, installing and using a child restraint system, otherwise the desired protection may not be obtained.

### **■ When a child is in the vehicle**

Do not let the child play the seat belt. If the seat belt twists around the neck, the child may suffer from suffocation or other serious injury, and even death. If the seat belt cannot be unfastened in such a case, cut off the seat belt with a pair of scissors.

### **■ When the child restraint system is not used**

- The child restraint system should be properly secured on the seat even if it is not being used.

Do not place an unsecured child restraint system in the passenger compartment.

- If the child restraint system must be removed, remove it and secure it in the trunk. If the headrest is raised to facilitate the installation of child restraint system, be sure to adjust the headrest to a proper position before driving. Otherwise, the occupants may get injured in case of emergency braking or accident.

### **■ Use the child restraint system**

If an inappropriate child restraint system is used for this vehicle, the infant or child may not be properly protected, and the serious injury and even death may occur (in case of emergency braking or accident).

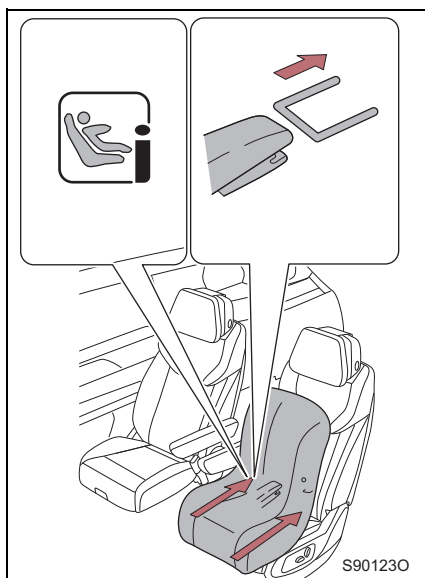
**WARNING****■ Precautions for child restraint system**

- The child must be restrained by a seat belt or child restraint system according to the weight and size of the child to effectively protect the child in the event of an accident and emergency braking. Holding the child in your arms does not replace the role of a child restraint system. During an accident, the child may collide with the windshield or be squeezed between you and the compartment.
- Vehicles with seat airbags and curtain airbags: Even if the child restraint system is properly used, the head or any part of body cannot lean against the door, seat or roof side rail (where the seat airbag or curtain airbag may deploy). Otherwise, the large impact force generated by the deployed seat airbag or curtain airbag may result in serious injury and even death to the child.
- Always follow the manufacturer's instructions and make sure the child restraint system is securely fastened at all times.  
Failure to secure the child restraint system is very dangerous. During emergency braking or a collision, the child restraint system may move, causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants.

## Installation of child restraint system

**Please observe the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. Secure the child restraint system firmly to the seat with ISOFIX/i- Size rigid anchorages. Fix the top tether during the installation of the child restraint system equipped with top tether.**

### Installation with ISOFIX/i- Size rigid anchorages



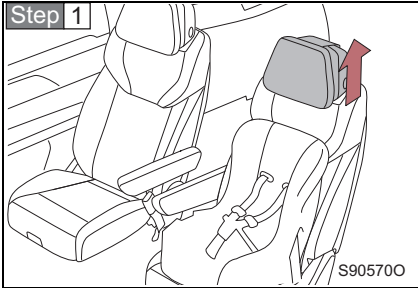
**Step 1** Slightly increase the gap between the seat cushion and the seat back.

**Step 2** Insert the child seat buckles in the ISOFIX/i-Size rigid anchorages. Ensure the buckles are securely locked.

If the headrest interferes with the child restraint system and cannot be installed properly, adjust the headrest upward before installing the child restraint system.

If the child restraint system has a top tether, fix the Top Tether onto the anchorage support.

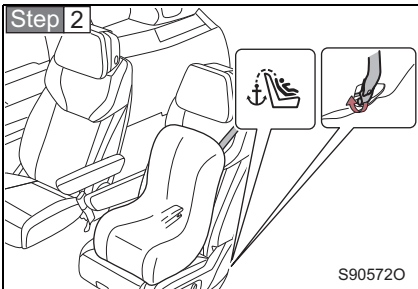
## Child restraint system with top tether



Secure the child restraint system with ISOFIX/i-Size rigid anchorages.

If the headrest interferes with the child restraint system and cannot be installed properly, adjust the headrest upward before installing the child restraint system.

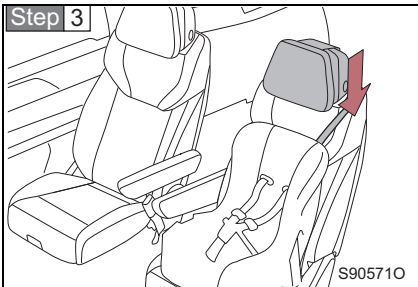
For the best child safety, when a CRS with Top Tether is installed, route the Top Tether on the outside of each headrest support rod.



Clamp the hook onto the anchorage support, and fasten the top tether.

Make sure that the top tether is fastened.

For vehicles equipped with third row seat, the anchorage support is located on the lower of rear side on the second row seat back.



Return the headrest to the correct position.

**⚠ WARNING**

■ **When installing the child restraint system**

Please observe the following precautions, otherwise serious injury or death may occur.

- Tie up the top tether firmly, and make sure that the seat belt is not twisted.
- Do not tie the top tether to any object rather than the anchorage support.
- Push and pull the child restraint system in different directions to make sure it is securely installed.
- Do not adjust the seat after the child restraint system is installed. If the seat is adjusted, the safety of the child restraint system should be reconfirmed.
- Please observe the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.



- The labels attached to both the inner and outer sides of the sun visor in front of the passenger seat remind you not to place a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat when the front passenger's airbag is ON. For details about label, see the figure.

■ **Secure the child restraint system to the anchorage correctly**

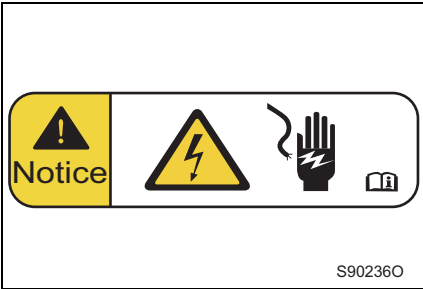
When using a lower anchorage, make sure that there are no foreign objects around the anchorage and that the seat belt is not stuck behind the child restraint system.



1-1. Instructions for safe use

# High voltage safety

The electric vehicle is equipped with high voltage system within level B voltage range. If the vehicle is used improperly, it may cause electric shock or fire hazards to driver, passengers and operators.



The high voltage harness and the high voltage connector are both marked in orange. The high voltage components (except harnesses) are labeled with high voltage marks.

■ Meaning of high voltage marks

|  |                             |  |                |
|--|-----------------------------|--|----------------|
|  | Risk of electric shock      |  | Notice         |
|  | Read operating instructions |  | Electric shock |

■ Active discharge of high voltage system

After the power (ignition) switch is turned to OFF mode, the high voltage system actively discharges and releases the remaining voltage of the high voltage components to a safe voltage so as to prevent the occupants from being exposed to high voltage.

■ After vehicle collision

- High voltage relay is turned off.
- The high voltage circuit quickly enters an uncharged state to avoid electric shocks.
- The high voltage components are actively discharged.
- It is forbidden to restart or recharge the vehicle.

### ■ Self-protection measures against the electric shock in vehicle

- Think calmly, protect yourself, and do not put yourself at the risk of electric shock.
- Do not directly touch the person who has been electrically shocked.
- If possible, immediately cut off the power supply of the electrical equipment (power off at high voltage or disconnect low voltage maintenance switch).
- Use non-conductive tools (wooden board, broom handle, etc.) to separate the injured person from current conductor or power supply.

### ■ Medical protective measures against the electric shock from vehicle (the electrocuted person cannot speak)

- Rescue on the site, when the electrocuted person is removed from the power source, immediately assess their vital signs, such as pulse and breathing.
- Call for help immediately and contact the emergency services.
- Do artificial respiration and chest compression before the doctor arrives.
- If the electrocuted person stops breathing, use a defibrillator if possible.

### ■ Medical protective measures against the electric shock from vehicle (the electrocuted person can speak)

- Cool down the burned wound and cover it with a sterilized towel.
- To avoid delayed complications, immediately send the injured person to the doctor for assistance.

### ■ Rescue in case of electrical fire

- Protect yourself and do not inhale smoke.
- Call the fire department.
- Carbon dioxide fire extinguisher or foam fire extinguisher should be used when extinguishing fires on electrical equipment.
- Do not use a carbon dioxide fire extinguisher to extinguish fires on individuals, as there is a risk of suffocation.
- Place the fire extinguisher within easy reach, and arrange persons to inspect it regularly.

**WARNING****■ Precautions on high voltage system**

Please observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

- Contact with all high voltage components should be avoided as much as possible. In the case of insulation failure of the high voltage system, the shell of the high voltage component may carry high voltage.
- If it is found that the shell of the high voltage component or the high voltage harness is damaged, do not directly touch it, and contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately. Touching the damaged part with hands or conductive objects may result in electric shock.
- It is prohibited to remove and repair components and high voltage cables with high voltage safety marks without authorization. If you need to remove and repair high voltage system components, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Do not spray high voltage components directly with spray pipes and high pressure cleaning devices.
- When inspecting and repairing high voltage conductive parts and accessories, the high voltage system must be powered off first.
- Do not contact the liquid and exhaust gas from the power battery, which may be toxic or flammable.
- Damaged vehicle or power battery can cause immediate or delayed escape of toxic gases, which can easily cause a fire. When damage occurs, be sure to open the window so that the escaping gas can be discharged from the vehicle, and do not inhale such gas.
- Do not use engine oil, lubricating oil, etc. on the high voltage connector.
- In case of fire, leave the dangerous area and call the fire telephone, and inform the rescue personnel that the vehicle is an electric vehicle.

# Methods and steps of charging/discharging

Household or industrial electrical socket ( $110 \pm 5 \text{ V} \sim 254 \pm 5 \text{ V}$ ) charging

### ■ Start charging

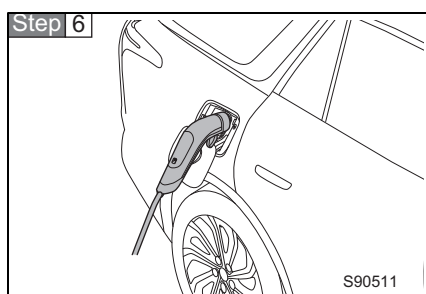
**Step 1** Park the vehicle in an AC charging area, depress the brake pedal, set the shift lever to P position, and apply the parking brake.

**Step 2** Take out the AC charging cable for the household or industrial electrical socket, and check that the power plug and the power socket are clean and free of dirt.

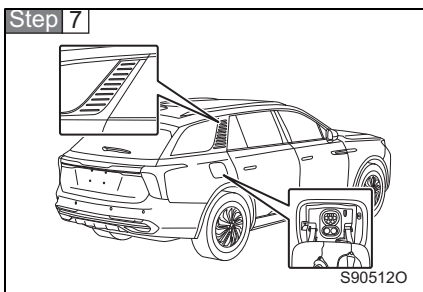
**Step 3** Connect the power plug of the charging cable for household or industrial electrical to the power socket. The power supply green indicator lamp on the control box illuminates.

**Step 4** Open the charging port cover. The charging indicator lamp (white) of the charging port remains on. (See P. 175)

**Step 5** Check that the charging plug and the charging socket are clean and free of dirt.



Connect the charging plug to the charging socket. At this time, the instrument cluster displays that the charging gun is connected, and the AC charging port indicator and C-pillar charging indicator lamp (blue) remain on.



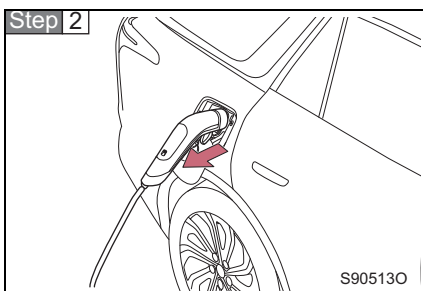
Charge according to the instructions of the AC charging device. If the charging has been started, the charging port indicator and C-pillar charging indicator lamp (green) will flash, and AC charging will display in the instrument cluster.

After charging is completed, the charging port indicator and C-pillar charging indicator lamp (green) remain on.

**Note:** The vehicle can be charged when the power (ignition) switch is set to ON/OFF mode.

### ■ Stop charging

**Step 1** Make sure that the charging electronic lock is unlocked. (See P. 65)



Unplug the charging plug on the vehicle end.

The charging connection indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster will go out at this time.

**Step 3** Close the charging port cover. (See P. 175)

**Step 4** Unplug the power plug from the power outlet and properly store the AC charging cable for the household or industrial electrical socket.

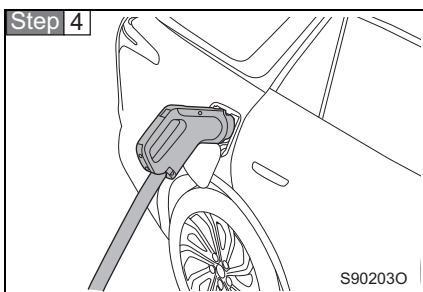
### DC charging

#### ■ Start charging

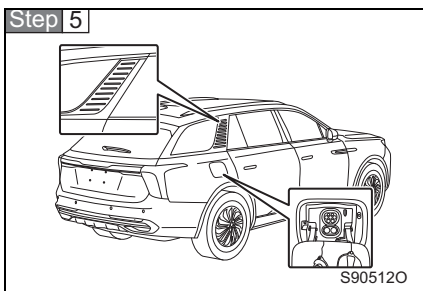
**Step 1** Park the vehicle in a DC charging area, depress the brake pedal, set the shift lever to P position, and apply the parking brake.

**Step 2** Open the charging port cover. The charging indicator lamp (white) of the charging port remains on. (See P. 175)

**Step 3** Check that the charging plug and the charging socket are clean and free of dirt.



Connect the charging plug to the charging socket, and lock the electronic lock. At this time, the instrument cluster displays that the charging gun is connected, and the DC charging port indicator and C-pillar charging indicator lamp (blue) remain on.



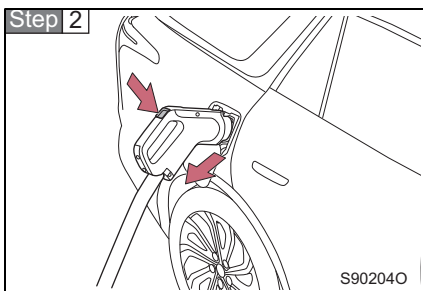
Charge according to the manual of the DC charging device. If the charging has been started, the DC charging port and C-pillar charging indicator lamp (green) will flash, and DC charging will display in the instrument cluster.

After charging is completed, the DC charging port indicator and C-pillar charging indicator lamp (green) remain on.

**Note:** The vehicle can be charged when the power (ignition) switch is set to ON/OFF mode.

## ■ Stop charging

**Step 1** Stop charging according to the instructions of the DC charging device, and make sure that the charging electronic lock is unlocked. (See P. 65)

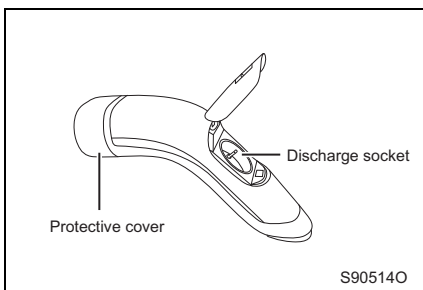


Unplug the charging plug on the vehicle end.

The charging connection indicator lamp  on the instrument cluster will go out at this time.

**Step 3** Close the charging port cover. (See P. 175)

## AC discharge



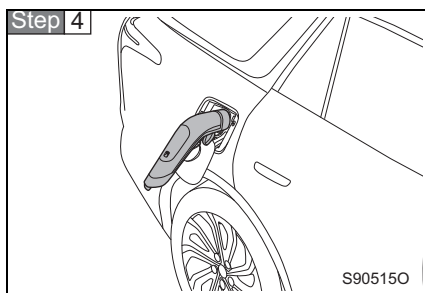
AC discharge gun.

### ■ Start discharging

**Step 1** Park the vehicle in an AC discharging area, depress the brake pedal, set the shift lever to P position, and apply the parking brake.

**Step 2** Open the charging port cover. The charging indicator lamp (white) of the charging port remains on. (See P. 175)

**Step 3** Take out the AC discharge gun, and check that the discharging plug and the charging socket are clean and free of dirt.



Connect the discharging plug to the AC charging socket. At this time, the charging port indicator and C-pillar charging indicator lamp (blue) remain on.

**Step 5** When the charging port indicator and the C-pillar charging indicator lamp (purple) remain on, it means that the vehicle is discharging.

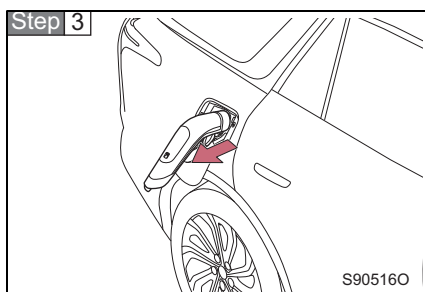
Note: The vehicle can be discharged when the power (ignition) switch is set to ON/OFF mode.

### ■ Stop discharging

**Step 1** Make sure that the charging electronic lock is unlocked. (See P. 65)

**Step 2** Turn off the power supply of the household appliance and unplug the household appliance plug from the discharge socket.





Unplug the discharging plug.

**Step 4** Close the charging port cover. (See P. 175)

**Step 5** Keep the AC discharge gun properly.

## Electronic charging lock

The charging electronic lock is used to lock the charging/discharging plug so as to prevent the user from disconnecting it during charging/discharging and deterring theft of the charging cable in an unattended environment.

### ■ Locking of charging electronic lock

The electronic lock will be locked if any of the following conditions are met:

- When the user fully connects the charging/discharging plug to the charging port, the electronic lock is automatically locked.
- When the electronic lock is unlocked and the charging/discharging plug remains connected, the electronic lock will automatically lock after 120 seconds.

### ■ Unlocking of charging electronic lock

The electronic lock will be unlocked if any of the following conditions are met:

- Users carry the smart key and touch the charging port cover closing button (see P. 175), and the electronic lock will be unlocked.
- Touch the charging port cover switch button on the multimedia system charging setting interface (see P. 274), and the electronic lock will be unlocked.

### ■ Emergency unlocking of charging electronic lock

In case of failure to unlock the charging electronic lock due to low battery or other reasons, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

---

### ■ Charging time

The actual charging time is related to the environment and other factors. Please refer to the charging time reminder on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster.

### ■ Charging port indicator lamp

The indicator lamp is used to remind the user about the connection status of the charging/discharging plug and the charging/discharging status.

- When the charging port cover is opened and the charging/discharge plug is not connected, the white indicator lamp of the charging port will come on.
- When the charging/discharging plug is correctly connected to the charging port, the blue indicator lamp of the charging port will come on.
- When the charging/discharge plug is connected incorrectly, the yellow indicator lamp of the charging port will come on.
- During charging, the green indicator lamp of the charging port flashes; When the charging is completed, the green indicator of the charging port remains on.
- The blue indicator lamp will go out when the charging plug is connected for a period of time but the charging device is not operated to start charging.
- When the power supply device or the power socket stops supplying power, the charging port green indicator lamp will remain on for a period of time and then go out.
- The purple indicator lamp of the charging port remains on during the AC discharging.
- When the vehicle fails and cannot be charged, the red indicator lamp of the charging port will come on.

### ■ C-pillar charging indicator lamp

Due to different model configurations, C-pillar charging indicator lamp is only equipped on some models.

**WARNING****■ Precautions for charging**

- Do not insert or pull out the plug with wet hands or standing in water, liquid or snow. Otherwise, it may cause electric shock, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.
- Make sure that there is no water or foreign object in the vehicle socket, charging plug or power plug, and they are not damaged or corroded. Otherwise, it may cause a short circuit, electric shock or even fire, resulting in serious personal injury or even death.
- Do not touch the metal contacts at the charging port, charging plug, and power plug.
- When lightning, do not touch the vehicle or the charging device. Lightning strikes may damage the device and pose a risk of personal injury or death.
- Do not disassemble or modify the charging port and the AC charging cable, otherwise it may cause a fire.
- Do not pull, twist or drag the charging cable.
- Do not place the charging device near high temperature objects.
- While unsupervised, unauthorized persons (for example, children playing) must not touch the charging system or the vehicle.
- When using a household or industrial electrical socket, it is recommended to use the AC charging cable suggested by FAW. If other charging cables are used for AC charging, it may cause damage to the vehicle or the charging device or even cause a fire.
- Do not use extended cable, cable reel, multiple socket and travel adapter.
- If any part shows signs of damage, wear, breakage, crack or other damage, do not use it.
- When using the charging cable, handle it with care to avoid falling, and do not pull the wire or cable forcefully.
- The power socket and the power supply circuit must be grounded and protected by a special circuit breaker or fuse to avoid danger.
- The AC charging cables for household or industrial electrical sockets should use power sockets that meet the requirements of NEK 502 standards. It is prohibited to use other sockets.
- If you have any question about the power socket and power supply circuit, please consult a qualified technician.



### WARNING

#### ■ Cases in which electric shock may occur while charging

- The socket for charging is not grounded.
- Charge in rainy days.

#### ■ Precautions for use of DC charging connection device

- Considering that the DC charging plug is heavy and its accidental fall may cause damage to the vehicle and the charging plug or personal injury, please make sure to pull out the charging plug carefully.



### CAUTION

#### ■ During AC discharging

- The discharge function can be activated when the power battery level is higher than the discharge limit, and deactivated when the power battery level is lower than the discharge limit.
- During AC discharging, the vehicle will automatically terminate AC discharging once the power battery level displayed on the instrument cluster reaches the discharge limit.
- The rated discharge current of the discharge socket is 16 A. When using the AC discharge function, ensure that the total current of the discharge socket does not exceed 16 A.

#### ■ Electronic charging lock

- Before unplugging the charging/discharging plug, make sure that the electronic lock is unlocked, otherwise the charging cable or the vehicle may be damaged.
- While charging in an unattended environment, please lock the charging electronic lock, otherwise the charging cable may be stolen.

#### ■ Precautions for use of AC charging cable

- Ensure that the AC charging cable is stored properly and avoid immersion in water.
- Avoid foreign objects from entering the terminal of the AC charging cable plug.
- Avoid stepping on, folding, or knotting cable and wire.
- Avoid using AC charging cable during thunderstorm.
- Avoid using AC charging cable in wet location.
- Do not place heavy objects on the AC charging cable.

**CAUTION**

■ **Precautions for use of AC charging cable**

- When charging, keep the AC charging cable away from high temperature objects.
- When not in use, please close the protective cover properly and place the AC charging cable in a cool and dry place away from direct sunlight.

■ **After vehicle collision**

It is forbidden to restart or charge the vehicle.

■ **It is forbidden to connect the AC charging plug and the DC charging plug at the same time, otherwise the charging may be not started or interrupted.**

■ **Precautions for power battery**

- When the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the charging time may be prolonged. Long-term charging at too high or low temperature may affect the battery life.
- Do not use high-power DC fast charging method frequently to charge the vehicle, as it can affect the service life of the power battery. It is recommended to give priority to AC charging when conditions are available and time permits.
- To ensure the maximum driving range and the safety of the vehicle when the battery is nearly fully charged, the system will reduce the charging speed. If there is no need for long-distance driving, it is not recommended to charge in this stage (set the charging limit to 90%) to reduce charging time. If you need to charge in this stage, it is recommended to turn off the A/C system.
- When the battery temperature is too low, the vehicle will start the battery heating first after connecting with the charging plug, thus the charging start time will be delayed. While charging and heating, the instrument cluster will prompt the information that the power battery is heating.

## 1-2. Charging/discharging

# Display and setting of charging/discharging

### Display of charging/discharging

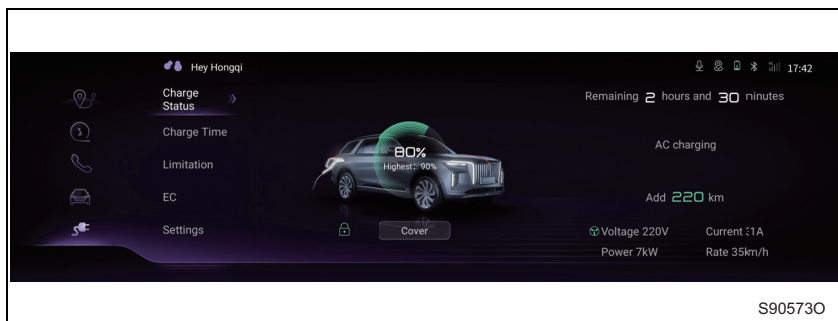
#### ■ Charging display on instrument cluster

During the charging process, the multi-function display of the instrument cluster will show the remaining charging time, battery level and other related parameters.



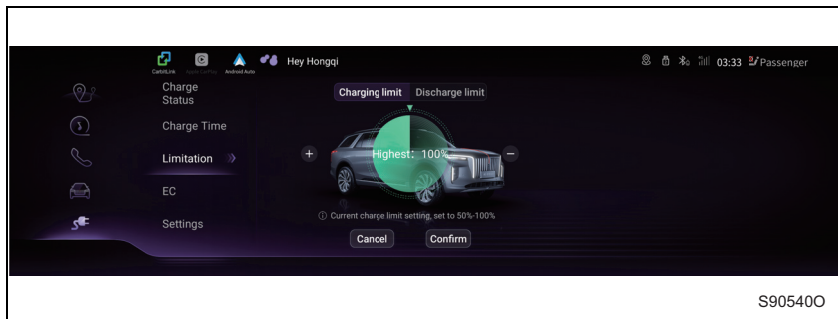
#### ■ Charging display on multimedia display

During the charging process, the charging setting interface of the multimedia display will show the remaining charging time, battery level and other related parameters, and the charging limit, scheduled charging and other functions can be set at the same time.



## Charging limit setting

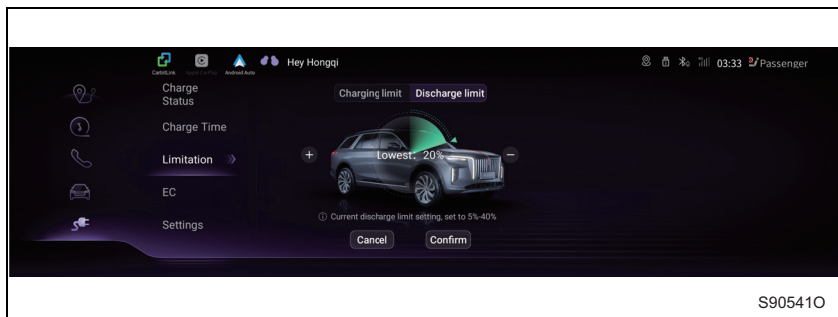
The default custom charging limit in the vehicle is 100%.



- Move the slider on the charging setting interface of the multimedia system to set the charging limit.  
The setting range is 50% - 100%, and the setting interval is 5%.
- When the charging capacity is greater than or equal to the charging limit value set by user, the vehicle will stop charging and display "Charging is completed" prompt information.
- When the vehicle displays "Charging completed", if the user sets the charging limit > current battery level again at this time, the charging gun needs to be reinserted to start charging again.

## Discharge limit setting

The default custom discharge limit in the vehicle is 20%.



- Move the slider on the charging setting interface of the multimedia system to set the discharge limit.  
The setting range is 5% - 40%, and the setting interval is 5%.

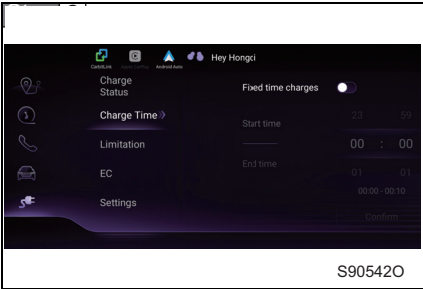
- After the vehicle is discharged and started, the multimedia system will calculate the remaining discharge time and display "AC discharging" simultaneously.
- When the remaining battery level reaches the discharge limit set by the user, the vehicle will stop discharging, and the instrument cluster display will prompt "SOC value is lower than set value, discharging cannot be activated" prompt information.

Scheduled charging

■ Scheduled charging setting

Scheduled charging function needs to be implemented in conjunction with Hongqi brand AC charging device.

**Step 1** Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.



Enable the scheduled charging and set the time in the charging settings of the multimedia system.

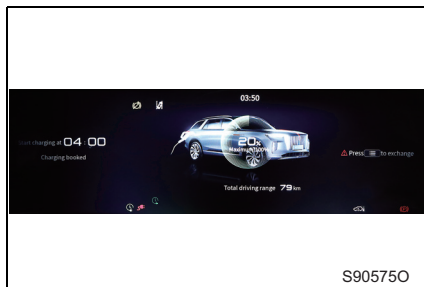
The scheduled charging switch is OFF by default.

The start time and end time should be separated at least 10 minutes.

**Step 3** When parking the vehicle in an AC charging area, setting the shift lever to P position, applying the EPB, connect the AC charging device, and set the charging pile to start charging. If there is no system fault in the vehicle and the charging device, the vehicle will perform AC charging at the appointed time set by the user.



## ■ Scheduled charging display

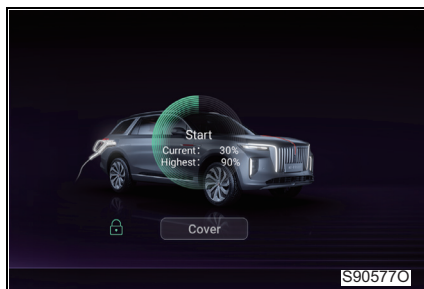


When the time for scheduled charging is not reached, the instrument panel will display the scheduled charging information, and the scheduled charging indicator lamp  will come on.



When the time for scheduled charging is reached, the instrument panel will display "Start charging - AC charging" in turn.

## ■ Start of scheduled charging in advance



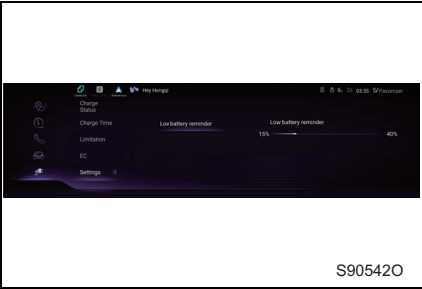
When the vehicle is in the scheduled charging waiting state, by touching [start] in the multimedia system charging interface, the AC charging can be started immediately without turning off the scheduled charging switch.



If the AC charging is started in advance, the information displayed on the instrument cluster will change from "Charging reserved" to "Starting charging - AC charging".

Low battery reminder

The default custom low battery prompt value is 20% when the vehicle leaves the factory.



Move the slider on the charging setting interface of the multimedia system to set the low battery prompt value.

The setting range is 15% - 40%, and the setting interval is 5%.

When the battery level is lower than the low battery prompt value set by the user, the low charge state warning lamp on the  instrument panel will come on and the "Power battery is low, please turn on "Economic" mode and charge it in time!" prompt information will be displayed at the same time.

1-2. Charging/discharging

# Charging/discharging troubleshooting

| Symptom                  | Possible causes                                                                                        | Solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Unable to start charging | The battery temperature is too high or too low, or the temperature difference is too large             | Determine whether the battery temperature is too high or too low, or whether the temperature difference is too large through the prompt text on the instrument cluster. If the corresponding prompt text appears on the instrument cluster, charging cannot be started. Charging can be started after the battery temperature becomes normal. |
|                          | The power battery is sufficiently charged or the current battery level is higher than the charge limit | The charging cannot be started when the power battery is sufficiently charged.<br>The charging cannot be started when the current battery power is higher than the charge limit.                                                                                                                                                              |
|                          | 12 V battery power is low                                                                              | When the 12 V battery power is low, the vehicle control system cannot be started. Please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|                          | Vehicle fault                                                                                          | When the vehicle fails, the charging cannot be started. Confirm whether the fault warning lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates. If it does, please stop charging immediately and contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.                                                                                                              |

| Symptom                     | Possible causes                                                 | Solutions                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Unable to start AC charging | The vehicle plug is not connected reliably                      | Make sure that the charging plug is reliably connected to the vehicle socket. Make sure that the charging connection indicator lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates.           |
|                             | The AC charging device is not powered                           | Ensure the AC charging device is powered. Make sure to start charging in accordance with the instructions of the AC charging device.<br>(See the instructions of AC charging device) |
|                             | The power socket is not powered                                 | Ensure that the power socket is powered. Confirm the power supply indicator lamp status of the control box.                                                                          |
|                             | The charging plug is not reliably connected to the power socket | Make sure that the charging plug is reliably connected to the power socket.<br>(Household or industrial electrical socket charging)                                                  |
|                             | Charging mode is timing mode                                    | Make sure that the charging mode is immediate charging mode.                                                                                                                         |

| Symptom                           | Possible causes                                                   | Solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Unable to start DC charging       | The vehicle plug is not connected reliably                        | Make sure that the charging plug is reliably connected to the vehicle socket. Make sure that the charging connection indicator lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates.                                                         |
|                                   | DC charging device does not match the vehicle charging parameters | If the instrument cluster prompts that the DC charging device does not match the vehicle, please use another DC charging pile for charging.                                                                                        |
|                                   | DC charging device is not powered                                 | Confirm that the DC charging device is powered. Make sure to start charging in accordance with the instructions of the DC charging device.<br>(See the instructions of DC charging device)                                         |
| Charging stops during AC charging | AC power supply device stops power output                         | If the power supply of the power supply device is interrupted, the charging will stop. When the power supply device is restored, the charging must be restarted.                                                                   |
|                                   | The power socket stops power output                               | If the power supply of the power socket is interrupted, the charging will stop. When the power socket is re-powered, the vehicle can automatically resume AC charging.                                                             |
|                                   | The charging cable is disconnected                                | Make sure that the charging cable is reliably connected.                                                                                                                                                                           |
|                                   | Charge termination time is reached                                | In scheduled charging mode, if the charging termination time is reached, the charging will stop.                                                                                                                                   |
|                                   | Vehicle fault                                                     | When the vehicle fails, the charging will be interrupted. Confirm whether the fault warning lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates. If it does, please stop charging immediately and contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. |

| Symptom                           | Possible causes                                                                              | Solutions                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Charging stops during DC charging | DC charging device and vehicle communication failure                                         | If the instrument cluster prompts that there is a communication failure between DC charging device and vehicle, please reinsert the charging plug and start charging again. If this communication failure occurs several times, please use another charging pile for charging. |
|                                   | AC charging connection device and DC charging connection device are connected simultaneously | When AC charging connection device and DC charging connection device are connected simultaneously, the charging may stop.                                                                                                                                                      |
|                                   | Vehicle fault                                                                                | When the vehicle fails, the charging will be interrupted. Confirm whether the fault warning lamp on the instrument cluster illuminates. If it does, please stop charging immediately and contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.                                             |

## 1-3.IMMO system/anti-theft system

# Immobilizer system

In order to prevent the vehicle from being stolen, it is equipped with smart key, the smart key has a built-in password chip. If the key is not registered in the IMMO system in advance, it is impossible to start the power system with this key. Different information is registered in the key for different vehicles.

Do not leave the key in the vehicle but carry it with you when leaving the vehicle.

This system helps to prevent vehicle theft, but does not prevent all theft and can not guarantee the absolute safety of the vehicle.

Carry the registered key with you and press the power (ignition) switch or depress the brake pedal to deactivate the IMMO system.

### ■ Conditions that may cause system failure

- The key was strongly impacted
- The key is flooded
- The key is at a high temperature place (e.g. on the instrument panel exposed to the sun)
- A magnetic key chain is used
- The key has been cleaned with ultrasonic cleaner
- The key has approached or come into contact with a key of other vehicle (key with built-in transponder chip)

### ■ If the vehicle cannot be started by using the correct method, the immobilizer system may fail. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect your vehicle.



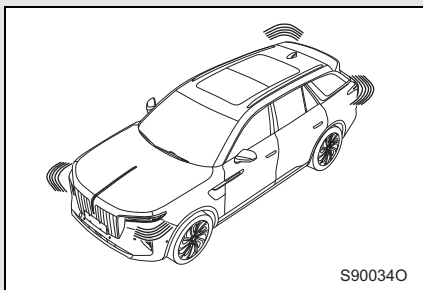
### CAUTION

### ■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not modify or disassemble the immobilizer system. Otherwise, the normal operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

### Body anti-theft system

The body anti-theft system mainly monitors the status of four doors, front compartment cover and trunk lid. When the system detects someone entering by force, it will give an alarm and make the turn signal lamps flash continuously.



#### Body anti-theft system works.

After the driver and all passengers getting off the vehicle, close the doors, trunk lid and front compartment cover and lock all doors.

#### Deactivating or stopping the alarm

Perform any of the following operations:

- Use intelligent unlocking, remote unlocking or Hongqi Zhilian APP to remotely unlock the doors or trunk lid.
- Start the power system.

#### ■ Items to be checked before locking the vehicle

To prevent accidental alarm triggering, make sure that there are no people, valuables and other personal belongings in the vehicle and all windows and sunroof are closed before locking the vehicle.

#### ■ When 12 V battery is disconnected

Be sure to deactivate the alarm system.

If the battery is disconnected before the alarm is deactivated, the alarm may be triggered after the battery is reconnected.

#### CAUTION

#### ■ Ensure normal operation of the system

Do not modify or disassemble the IMMO system. Otherwise, the normal operation of the system cannot be guaranteed.

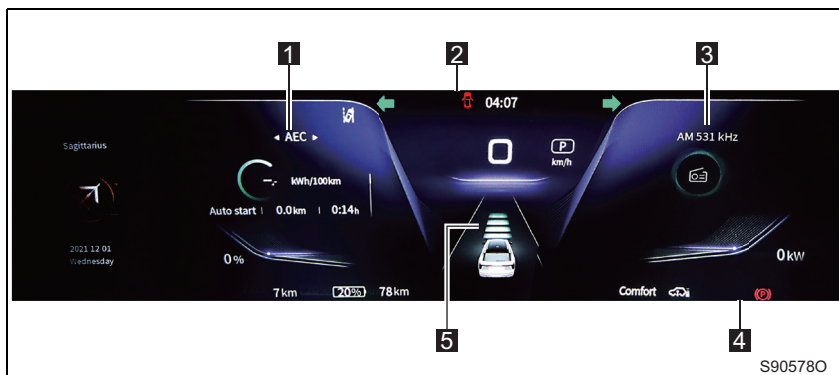


**2. Instrument cluster**

|                                                                   |    |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|----|
| Instrument cluster ....                                           | 82 |
| Warning lamp .....                                                | 84 |
| Indicator lamp .....                                              | 86 |
| Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster ..... | 88 |

## 2. Instrument cluster

### Instrument cluster



Depending on vehicle configurations, the specific displayed information will vary.

#### 1 Driving information display area

Display the average energy consumption, tire pressure monitoring, acceleration information, fault query, driving mode, backlight brightness and exterior rearview mirror settings, etc.

#### 2 Prompt/alarm icon display area

Display information regarding vehicle indicator lamps and warning lamps.

#### 3 Media information display area

Display music, radio, call, etc. in the multimedia system.

#### 4 Comprehensive information display area

Display information regarding gear, vehicle speed, driving assistance, date and various alarms/prompts, etc.

## Interior backlight brightness adjustment

The interior backlight brightness adjustment can be performed in the driving information display area on the instrument cluster. (See P. 89)



### WARNING

#### ■ In case of brightness adjustment

For the sake of safety, please adjust the backlight brightness during parking, and do not distract attention and hinder safe driving while using this function. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to accidents.

# Warning lamp

**Warning lamps indicate the current status or possible malfunction of the vehicle systems.** (See P. 392)



Low charge state warning lamp



Power battery system fault warning lamp



12 V battery charging fault warning lamp



Lamp unit fault warning lamp



SRS fault warning lamp



Seat belt unfastened warning lamp



Electronic shift system fault warning lamp



Electronic parking lock (Epark) warning lamp



PEPS fault warning lamp



Immobilizer system fault warning lamp



Low key battery warning lamp



Power system fault warning lamp



Electronic wiper system fault warning lamp



Low washer fluid level warning lamp



Low brake fluid level/system fault warning lamp



Brake degradation warning lamp



EPS system fault warning lamp



EPS system major fault warning lamp



ABS system fault warning lamp



Excessive brake lining wear warning lamp



EPB system fault warning lamp



AUTO HOLD system fault warning lamp



HDC system fault warning lamp



ESC system fault warning lamp  
(Remains ON)



APA system fault warning lamp



Automatic headlamp/  
automatic wiper  
function fault warning  
lamp



Driving mode selection  
system fault warning  
lamp



Air suspension system  
fault warning lamp



SOS fault warning  
lamp



Low coolant level  
warning lamp



Motor system fault  
warning lamp



Water heating PTC  
fault warning lamp



Power battery thermal  
runaway signal loss  
warning lamp



ISA fault warning lamp



LDW fault warning  
lamp



Tire pressure abnormal/  
system fault warning  
lamp



Automatic headlamp  
leveling system fault  
warning lamp



Driver assistance  
system fault warning  
lamp



Air suspension system  
major fault warning  
lamp



Vehicle overload  
warning lamp



High coolant  
temperature warning  
lamp



Thermal management  
system fault warning  
lamp



Wireless charging fault  
warning lamp



High voltage system  
fault warning lamp



FAW/AEB fault warning  
lamp



LKA fault warning  
lamp

#### Notice:

If any of the lamps do not come on or go off, the corresponding system may be faulty. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to carefully check the vehicle.

### Indicator lamp

**Indicator lamps indicate the current working status of the vehicle systems.**



Left turn signal indicator lamp



Right turn signal indicator lamp



High beam ON indicator lamp



Position lamp ON indicator lamp



Low beam ON indicator lamp



Rear fog lamp ON indicator lamp



ESC system working indicator lamp (Flashing)



ESC system OFF indicator lamp



Air suspension height indicator lamp



Air suspension lifting mode indicator lamp



"READY" indicator lamp



Door opening indicator lamp



ADB system working indicator lamp



ADB system ON indicator lamp



Maintenance indicator lamp



Attention warning indicator lamp (Distracted reminder)



Intelligent speed limit indicator lamp



APA system working indicator lamp



EPB working indicator lamp



AUTO HOLD working indicator lamp



FCW/AEB system  
OFF indicator lamp



LDW system ON  
indicator lamp



DSM system warning  
indicator lamp  
(Minor abnormality)



LKA system ON  
indicator lamp



LKA system OFF  
indicator lamp



ISA function OFF  
indicator lamp



Overspeed visual  
warning indicator lamp



ACC system ON  
indicator lamp



SACC system steering  
assist ON indicator  
lamp



HDC system working  
indicator lamp



Scheduled charging  
indicator lamp



Indicator lamp for  
failing to identify key



LDW system working  
indicator lamp



DSM system warning  
indicator lamp  
(Major abnormality)



LKA system working  
indicator lamp



LDW system OFF  
indicator lamp



Indicator lamp for  
failing to recognize  
speed limit sign



Indicator lamp for  
overspeed without  
warning



ACC system working  
indicator lamp



SACC system steering  
assist working  
indicator lamp



Indicator lamp for  
failing to switch  
driving mode

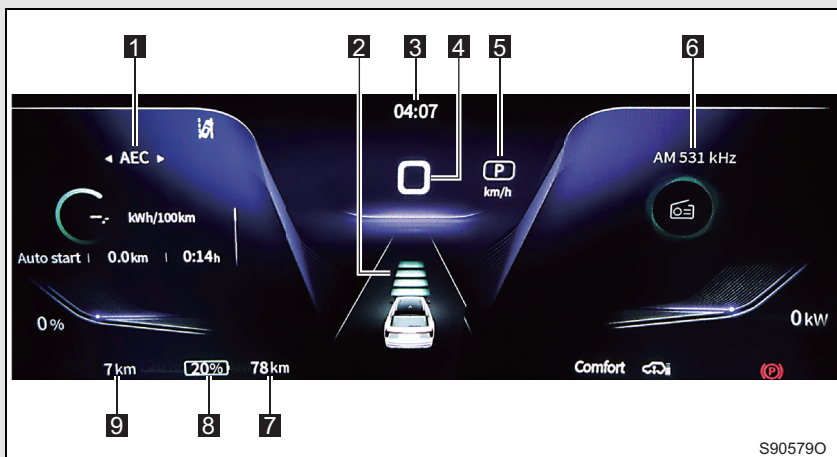


Charging connection  
indicator lamp

## 2. Instrument cluster

### Information on multi-function display of instrument cluster

The driver can view various driving-related information and audio navigation information through the driving information display area, media information display area and comprehensive information display area in the instrument cluster.

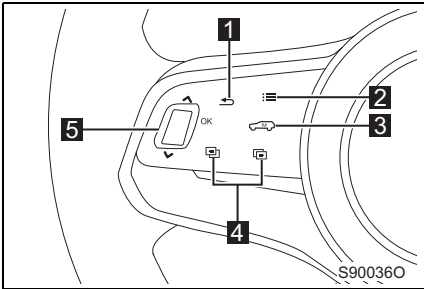


- 1 Driving information display area
- 2 Comprehensive information display area
- 3 Time display area  
Display the clock information.
- 4 Speed display area  
Display the current speed of the vehicle.
- 5 Gear display area  
Display the current gear of the vehicle.
- 6 Media information display area
- 7 Driving range display area  
Display the driving range under the current battery level.
- 8 Charging information display area  
Display the current battery level or the charging information.
- 9 Total mileage display area  
Display the total mileage information.



Buttons on steering wheel

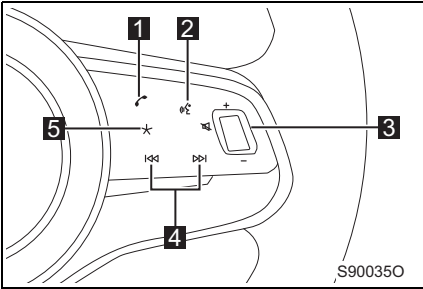
■ Buttons on the left of steering wheel



- 1 Back button
- 2 Menu button
- 3 Driving mode selection button
- 4 Left/right selection button
- 5 Scroll wheel

| No. | Function                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-----|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Press: Return to the previous interface                                                                                                                                                       |
| 2   | Press: Enter/exit the backlight brightness, head up display and exterior rearview mirror setting interface<br>Press and hold: Press and hold it to restart the in-vehicle infotainment system |
| 3   | Press: Enter the driving mode selection interface                                                                                                                                             |
| 4   | Press: Switch between driving information, tire pressure monitoring, acceleration information, fault query, energy consumption information                                                    |
| 5   | Scroll: Switch the selection items<br>Press: Confirm the selection                                                                                                                            |

■ Buttons on the right of steering wheel



- 1 Phone button
- 2 Voice recognition button
- 3 Scroll wheel
- 4 Track/radio station button
- 5 Multi-function button

| No. | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
|-----|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Press: Answer the current incoming call when there is an incoming call<br>End the current call when there is call/dial-out<br>Without incoming call: Display the last call information, press again to dial out<br>Press and hold: End the current call when there is an incoming call<br>Automatically dial out the last call number when there is no incoming call |
| 2   | Press: Trigger/exit the voice recognition function                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 3   | Scroll: Increase/decrease the volume, and unmute the media source in mute state<br>Press: Mute/unmute                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 4   | Press: Previous track (radio station)/next track (radio station)                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 5   | Switch multimedia audio sources                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |

 **WARNING**

■ **During driving**

During operation of buttons on steering wheel, extra care must be taken to avoid accidents.

**3-1. Key information**

Key ..... 92

**3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid**

Door ..... 95

Trunk lid ..... 100

PEPS ..... 105

**3-3. Adjusting seat**

Front seat ..... 110

Rear seat ..... 113

Headrest ..... 116

Seat memory ..... 118

**3-4. Adjusting steering wheel and rearview mirror**

Steering wheel ..... 120

Anti-glare interior  
rearview mirror ..... 122Exterior rearview  
mirror ..... 123**3-5. Opening and closing windows**

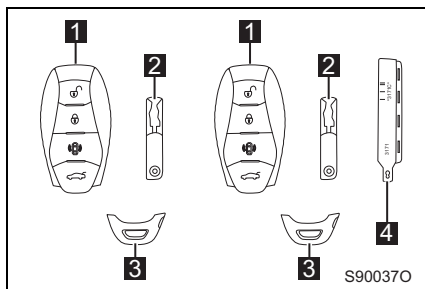
Power window ..... 126

Panorama sunroof ... 128

# Key

### Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys.



#### 1 Smart key

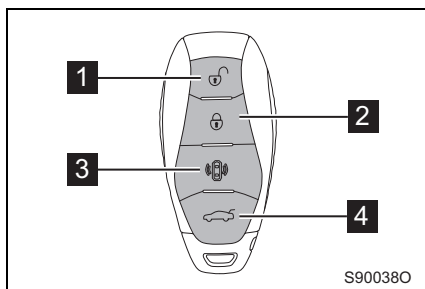
- Operate the PEPS system (See P. 105)
- Operate the wireless remote control function

#### 2 Mechanical key

#### 3 Key end cover

#### 4 Key number plate

### Wireless remote control



#### 1 Unlock button

Press the button to unlock the doors; press and hold the button to open all windows and sunroof.

#### 2 Lock button

Press the button to lock the doors; press and hold the button to close all windows and sunroof.

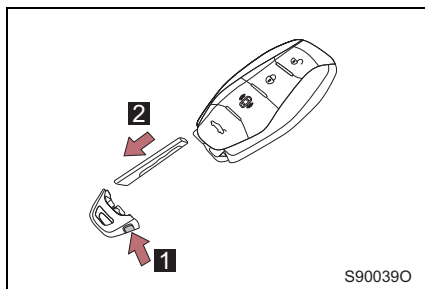
#### 3 Vehicle locating button

When the entire vehicle is locked, press the vehicle locating button to trigger the vehicle locating function. The turn signal lamp will flash 3 times accompanied by the horn sounding 3 times.

#### 4 Trunk lid opening/closing button

Press and hold the button to open/close the trunk lid.

## Using mechanical key



**1** Press the unlock button to detach the key end cover

**2** Taking out the mechanical key  
After using the mechanical key, store it in the smart key. Always carry the mechanical key with the smart key. If the smart key battery runs out and does not work properly, use the mechanical key. (See P. 402)

3

Operating components

### ■ When you need parking service

Be sure to keep the mechanical key with you, and only give the smart key to the parking service personnel.

### ■ When traveling by air

When flying with the smart key, make sure that you don't press any button on the smart key while in the cabin. If the key is placed in the bag, make sure that no buttons on the key are accidentally pressed. Otherwise, the key will emit radio waves, which may interfere with the flight of the aircraft.

### ■ Key battery power

- The standard battery life is 1 to 2 years.
- Even if the key is not in use, the battery may be depleted. The following symptoms indicate that the key battery is low or may be depleted. Replace the battery if necessary. (See P. 373)
  - The PEPS system or wireless remote control function does not work.
  - The detection area becomes smaller.
  - The instrument cluster displays that the key battery is low.
- To avoid serious degradation of key performance, do not place it within 1 m of the following electrical equipment that can generate magnetic field:
  - TV set
  - Personal computer
  - Mobile phone, cordless phone and battery charger
  - Mobile phone or cordless phone being charged
  - Table lamp
  - Induction cooker

### ■ Replacing battery

(See P. 373)



### CAUTION

#### ■ Prevent damage to the key

- Do not subject the key to violent impact or expose it to high temperature (such as direct sunlight) and humid environment.
- Do not wet the key or clean it in ultrasonic cleaner.
- Do not immerse the key in water.
- Do not attach metal or magnetic materials to the key, or place the key near such materials.
- Do not disassemble the smart key.
- Do not stick labels or other items on the key surface.
- Do not place the key near objects that can generate magnetic fields, such as television, sound system, induction cooker or electronic medical equipment (such as low-frequency medical equipment).

#### ■ Carry the smart key with you

When carrying the key with you, keep it 10 cm or more away from the electrical equipment that are turned on. Radio waves emitted by electrical equipment within 10 cm from the key may interfere with the key, causing it to fail to work normally.

#### ■ When the PEPS system fails or there is other failure related to the key

Please send the vehicle to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer with all the keys of the vehicle.

#### ■ When the key is lost

If the key is lost, the risk of vehicle theft will obviously increase. Please go to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer with all the keys of the vehicle for re-matching.

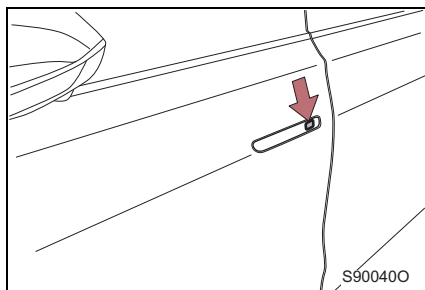
## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid

# Door

### Unlocking/locking doors from outside

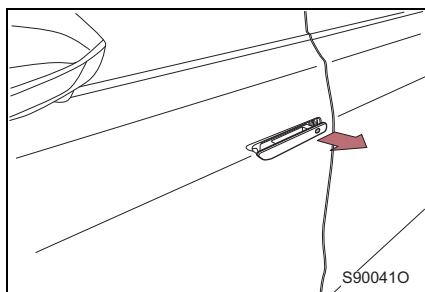
#### ■ PEPS

As long as you carry the smart key with you, the door can be unlocked and locked through PEPS function.



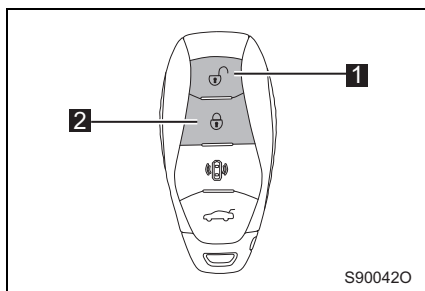
Turn off the power (ignition) switch and close all doors, then touch the door handle sensing switch to lock the door.

When any door is not closed, it is impossible to lock the door by touching the door handle sensing switch.



When vehicle is locked, touch the door handle sensing switch to unlock door and eject door handle.

#### ■ Wireless remote control

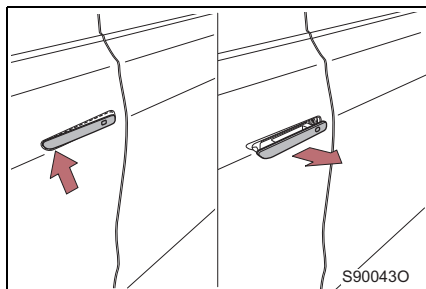


**1** Unlocking driver's door/all doors

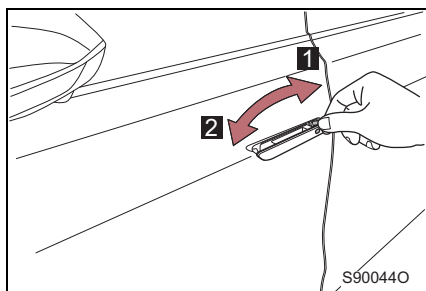
The unlocking method can be customized. (See P. 269)

**2** Locking all doors

### ■ Mechanical key



Press the front of driver's door handle to raise it, then pull the middle part and pull it out vertically.



Hold the door handle, lock and unlock the door with a mechanical key.

**1** Unlocking the door

**2** Locking the door

---

### ■ Operating signal

All turn signals flash to indicate that the doors are locked/unlocked. (Lock: flash once; Unlock: flash twice)

### ■ The key battery runs out of power

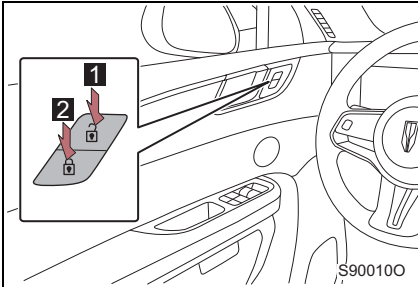
If the key battery runs out of power, replace the battery with a new one. (See P. 373)



## Unlocking/locking doors from inside

The doors can be unlocked and locked by the central locking switch on the driver's door.

### ■ Central locking switch

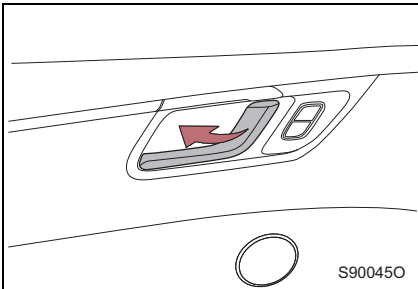


**1** Unlocking all doors

**2** Locking all doors

Note: When a door is not closed, the central locking switch can only unlock the doors.

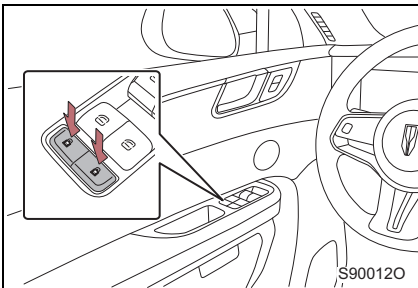
### ■ Door inside handle



Pull the door inside handle to open the door.

After the door is locked, pull the inside handle once to unlock the door and pull it again to open the door.

## Rear door child safety lock



After the safety lock is set through this switch, the rear door and window on the corresponding side cannot be operated from inside.

Set the safety lock to prevent children from opening the rear doors and operating the window from inside.

### ■ Speed sensing door lock function

- When all doors are closed with any door unlocked, and the vehicle runs at a speed of about 15 km/h, the speed sensing door lock will be activated to lock the doors.

### ■ Concealed door handle

- When vehicle is unlocked through PEPS function or central locking switch, all door handles will eject.
- When vehicle is unlocked through remote control key, driver side door handle/all door handles will eject according to the set safety unlock mode.
- When the vehicle is running and vehicle speed exceeds approx. 15 km/h, all door handles will retract.
- When vehicle is locked through PEPS function, remote control key or central locking switch, all door handles will be retract.

### ■ Conditions affecting PEPS system or wireless remote control

(See P. 107)



### WARNING

#### ■ Prevent accidents

Please observe the following precautions when driving.

Otherwise, occupants may be thrown out of the vehicle due to the accidental opening of the door, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.

- Be sure to fasten the seat belt properly.
- Ensure that all doors are closed correctly.
- Be sure to lock all doors.
- Do not pull the door inside handle while driving.  
Otherwise, occupants may be thrown out of the vehicle due to opening of the door, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.
- If there are children in the rear seat, please set the rear door child safety lock.
- When leaving the vehicle and there is no one in the vehicle, please take the key with you, close all windows and sunroof and lock all doors to prevent others from entering or stealing the vehicle.
- Never leave children unattended in the vehicle.
- Do not allow children to carry or use the key, as children may cause a safety hazard by starting the vehicle or operating the shift lever.

**WARNING**

- Do not allow children to play with windows or other equipment as they may get injured.
- Make sure that the temperature inside the vehicle is appropriate, because too high or too low temperature will cause fatal injury to children.
- Make sure that the surrounding area of the vehicle is safe when opening the door.

It is very dangerous to open the door suddenly, which may hit other vehicles or pedestrians and cause accidents.

- After closing the door, make sure it is closed tightly.

It is very dangerous to leave the door ajar, because the door may open accidentally during driving, which may cause an accident.

**■ When using concealed door handle**

- Be careful not to get caught by the door handle or damage the door handle.
- When the door handle ejects, make sure that there is no foreign matter around it to prevent damage.
- When driving in winter, remove the ice or snow from the door handle, and then unlock or lock the door, otherwise the door handle may not work properly.

## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid

### Trunk lid

The trunk lid can be opened by using the trunk lid unlocking button, PEPS or wireless remote control.

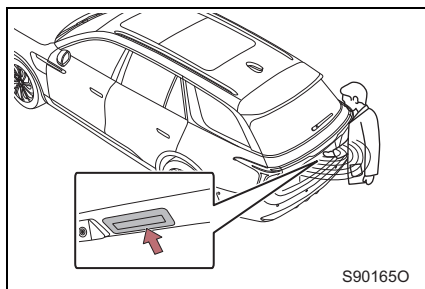
#### Opening trunk lid

##### ■ Opening trunk lid from inside



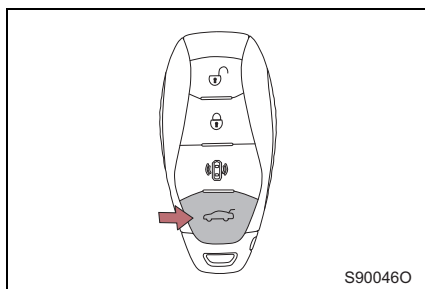
When the vehicle is stationary and the trunk lid is closed, press the trunk lid interior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

##### ■ Opening trunk lid from outside



When the vehicle is locked, carry the smart key with you, and press the trunk lid exterior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid; When the vehicle is unlocked, press the trunk lid exterior unlocking button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

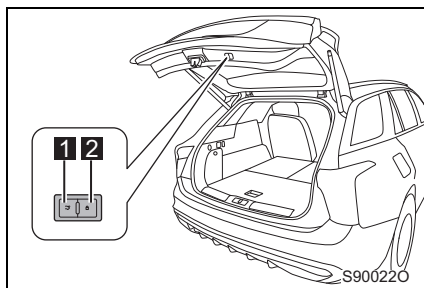
##### ■ Wireless remote control



When the trunk lid is closed, press and hold the button to unlock and open the trunk lid.

## Closing trunk lid

### ■ Trunk lid switch\*



#### 1 Trunk lid closing button

Press the trunk lid closing button, the trunk lid will automatically close.

#### 2 One-button lock button

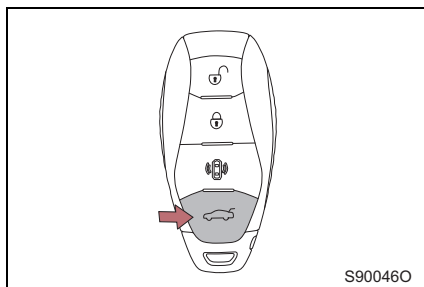
When power (ignition) switch is in OFF mode and all doors are closed, carry the smart key and ensure that no other recognizable smart key is in the vehicle, press the one-button lock button, the trunk lid will automatically close and the vehicle will lock after a few seconds.

### ■ Trunk lid interior unlocking button



When the vehicle is stationary and the trunk lid is open, press and hold the trunk lid interior unlocking button until the trunk lid is closed.

### ■ Wireless remote control



When the trunk lid is open, press and hold the button until the trunk lid is closed.

---

### ■ Trunk lamp

When the trunk lid is opened, the trunk lamp will come on.

### ■ During the trunk lid opening process, press the trunk lid interior unlocking button to stop opening. Press it again to continue opening the trunk lid.

### ■ Trunk lid position memory

Open the trunk lid, adjust the trunk lid to an appropriate angle (which shall be more than half of the maximum opening angle), press and hold the trunk lid closing button for more than 3 seconds, then all turn signal lamps will flash once and the current position will be memorized as the opening position of trunk.

### ■ Key reminder

With the power (ignition) switch in OFF mode and the vehicle locked, when the trunk lid is opened and closed separately from outside, if the smart key is left inside the vehicle, the key reminder function will be triggered (automatically popping open the trunk lid).

**WARNING**

- **When opening and closing the trunk lid, be careful to avoid being caught by the trunk lid.**
- **Before driving**
  - Make sure the trunk lid is completely closed. Otherwise, the trunk lid may open accidentally and knock into the objects nearby, or the objects in the trunk may be thrown out during driving, causing an accident.
  - Prevent the children from playing in the trunk. Otherwise, they may be locked in the trunk by accident and suffer from heatstroke, suffocation or other injuries thereafter.
  - Prevent the children from opening or closing the trunk lid. Failure to do so may cause the trunk lid to open by accident or cause the closing trunk lid to pinch the child's hands, head or neck.
- **Precautions when driving**

Be sure to keep the trunk lid closed to prevent objects from being thrown out and prevent exhaust gas from entering the vehicle.
- **When children are in or around the vehicle**

Prevent children from playing in and around an unattended vehicle, especially when the trunk lid has been opened, because children may enter and be trapped in the trunk. If the temperature in the vehicle is too high or too low at this time, serious injury or death may occur.
- **Important when driving**

Never let anyone sit in the trunk. Otherwise they are susceptible to serious injury or even death in the event of emergency braking or collision.
- **Anti-pinch function\***

Do not activate the anti-pinch function by intentionally stopping the moving window with any part of your body.

### **WARNING**

#### ■ Using trunk

Please observe the following precautions. Otherwise a body part may be pinched, causing serious injury.

- Before opening the trunk lid, remove the heavy load on the trunk lid, such as snow and ice. Otherwise, it may cause the trunk lid to suddenly close again after being opened.
- Before opening or closing the trunk lid, please thoroughly check the surrounding area for the sake of safety.
- If anyone is nearby, ensure their safety and inform them that the trunk lid is about to open or close.
- Care should be taken when opening or closing the trunk lid in windy weather, because the trunk lid may suddenly move in strong winds.
- Do not install any accessories on the trunk lid. Otherwise, the extra load on the trunk lid may cause the trunk lid to suddenly close again after being opened.



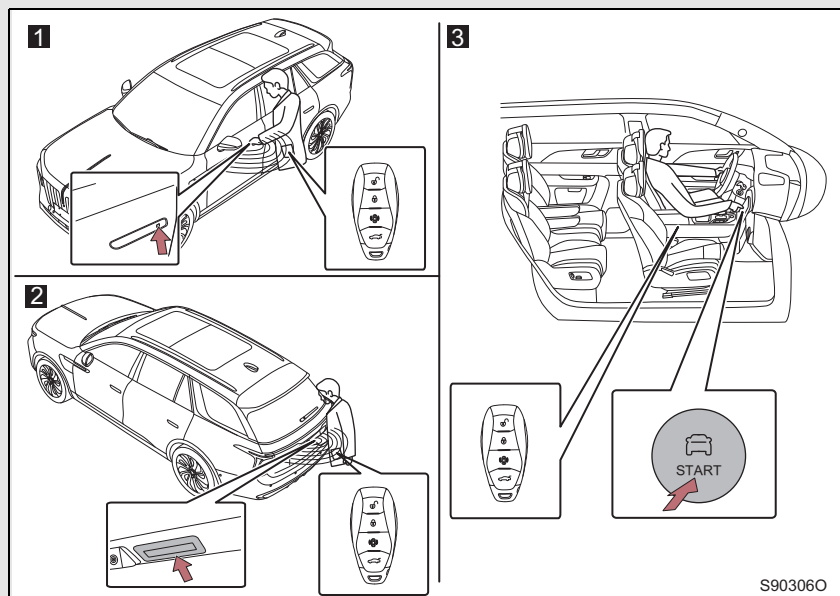
- It is much more difficult to open or close the trunk lid on a slope than on a level road, so beware of accidental closure of the trunk lid during opening or accidental opening during closing. Before using the trunk, make sure that the trunk lid is fully opened and secured.

- When closing the trunk lid, special care should be taken to avoid pinching fingers and other parts.
- Do not touch the trunk lid during the electric operation (opening/closing) process of trunk lid, to prevent personnel injury or damage to the trunk lid.
- If the automatic opening or closing process of the trunk lid is affected by poor movement or obstacles, the opening or closing process will be interrupted automatically:
  - Check if there are obstacles in the opening or closing path of trunk lid;
  - The trunk lid can be continued to open or close manually if necessary. Greater force is required for this purpose, and force must be applied slowly; Do not operate the trunk lid violently at this time to prevent damage to the trunk lid from excessive impact.



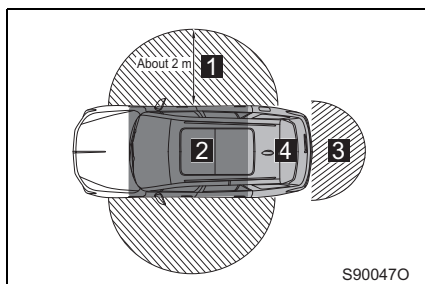
## 3-2. Opening, closing and locking doors and trunk lid PEPS

As long as you carry the smart key with you, for example, in your pocket, you can do the followings. (The driver must carry the key with him)



- 1** Door locking/unlocking. (See P. 95)
- 2** Trunk lid locking/unlocking. (See P. 100)
- 3** Start the vehicle. (See P. 141)

### ■ Effective range (the area where the key can be detected)



Effective range of key sensing antenna:

A hemispherical area centered on the sensing antenna.

**1** When locking or unlocking the door

When the key is in the sensing area outside the vehicle, you can lock or unlock the door.

**2** When starting the power system or switching the power (ignition) switch mode

If the key is in the sensing area inside the vehicle, you can start the power system or switch power (ignition) switch mode.

**3** When unlocking the trunk lid  
When the key is in the sensing area outside the trunk, if the conditions are met, you can unlock the trunk lid.

**4** When the key is left in the trunk  
If you close the trunk lid when the key is in the sensing area inside the trunk, and the conditions are met, the key reminder will be activated. (See P. 102)

### ■ Warning and prompt function

The system warning and prompt function is realized through the instrument cluster, warning buzzer, hazard warning lamp and power (ignition) switch status indicator lamp.

● When any warning lamp comes on

Take corresponding measures depending on the lit warning lamp. (See P. 392)

- When an warning message is displayed

Take corresponding measures depending on the warning message displayed by the cluster instrument.

#### ■ Conditions affecting operations

The radio waves used in the PEPS system are weak. The communication between the key and the vehicle may be affected in the following circumstances, which may prevent the PEPS system and the wireless remote control from working properly.

- When the key battery is low.
- When the key battery is depleted
- When the user is close to a TV tower, power plant, gas station, radio station, large monitor, airport or other facilities that produce strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- When the user carries a portable radio, mobile phone, cordless phone or other wireless communication device.
- When the key comes into contact with or is covered by a metal object.
- When multiple smart keys are near the vehicle at the same time.
- When the user carries or uses the key with the following device that emit radio waves.
  - Smart key of any other vehicle
  - Wireless remote control key for transmitting radio waves
  - Personal computer
- When the sunshade film with metal composition or any metal material is adhered to the rear windshield.
- When the following metal objects touch or cover the key.
  - A card with aluminum foil
  - Cigarette case with aluminum foil attached inside
  - A wallet or bag made of metal
  - Coins
  - Metal hand warmer
  - Media such as CD and DVD
- When the key is near the battery charger or electronic device.

### ■ Operating system properly

- Remember to carry the key with you when operating the system. When operating outside the vehicle, do not make the key too close to the vehicle.
- Depending on the specific location of the key and the holding method, the key signal may not be detected, resulting in the system not functioning properly.

### ■ Safety function

- When using remote unlocking or intelligent unlocking, if the door or trunk lid is not opened, the vehicle will be automatically locked after a period of time.

### ■ When parking for a long time

- To prevent the vehicle from being stolen, do not place the key too close to the vehicle.
- When the vehicle is parked for a long time, it must be locked. Otherwise, the battery may be depleted.

### ■ If the PEPS system does not work properly

- Lock and unlock the door: Use the mechanical key. (See P. 402)
- Start the power system. (See P. 403)

### ■ Comments on PEPS

- Under the following circumstances, the system may not work properly even if the key is within the effective range (sensing area).
  - When locking or unlocking the door, the key is too close to the window or door handle, too close to the ground or too high.
- As long as the smart key is within the effective range, anyone can lock or unlock the door. Please keep the key properly.
- The PEPS may fail if a large amount of water splashes on the door handle (such as during vehicle washing or heavy rain).
- The door may not be locked under the following circumstances.
  - When the smart key is still in the vehicle and the door is locked with the intelligent locking function.
  - When any door is not completely closed.

**WARNING****■ Precautions for interference with electronic devices**

People who use implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should keep an appropriate distance from the antenna of the PEPS system.

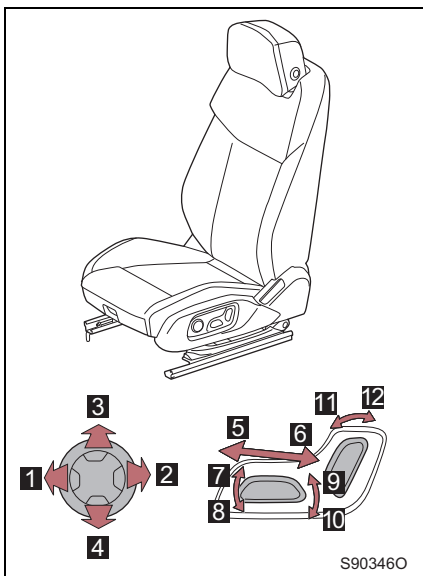
- Radio waves may affect the normal operation of such devices. For details of radio wave frequency and radio wave transmission time, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. Then ask your doctor if you can use them normally.
- People who use other electronic medical devices instead of implantable pacemakers, cardiac resynchronization therapy pacemakers or implantable cardioverter defibrillators should consult the device manufacturer about the impact of radio waves on the operation of the devices.
- Radio waves may have an unpredictable impact on the use of such medical devices.
- For details about PEPS, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## 3-3. Adjusting seat

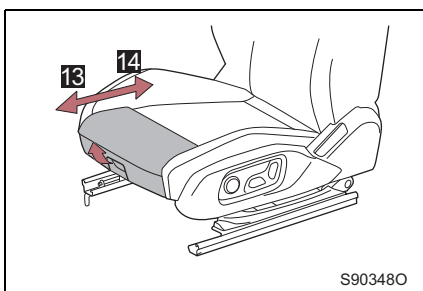
### Front seat

#### Adjustment steps

##### ► Driver's seat

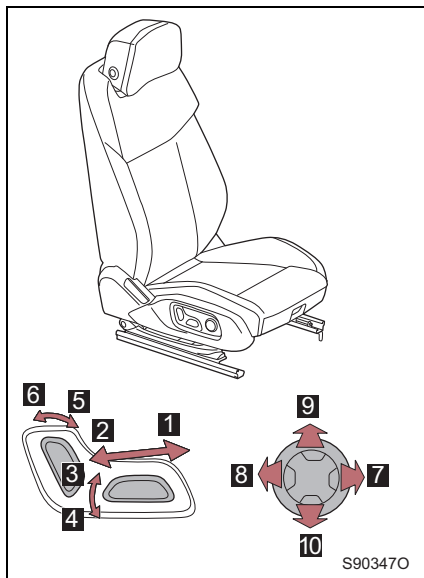


- 1** Protruding lumbar support
- 2** Depressing lumbar support
- 3** Moving lumbar support upward
- 4** Moving lumbar support downward
- 5** Moving seat forward
- 6** Moving seat backward
- 7** Lifting front end of seat
- 8** Lowering front end of seat
- 9** Lifting seat
- 10** Lowering seat
- 11** Tilting seat back forward
- 12** Tilting seat back backward

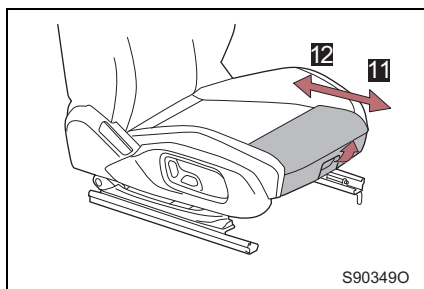


- 13** Increase seat cushion depth
  - 14** Decrease seat cushion depth
- The seat cushion depth can be adjusted manually after adjusting handle is pulled.

## ► Front passenger's seat



- 1** Moving seat forward
- 2** Moving seat backward
- 3** Lifting seat
- 4** Lowering seat
- 5** Tilting seat back forward
- 6** Tilting seat back backward
- 7** Protruding lumbar support
- 8** Depressing lumbar support
- 9** Moving lumbar support upward
- 10** Moving lumbar support downward



- 11** Increase seat cushion depth
  - 12** Decrease seat cushion depth
- The seat cushion depth can be adjusted manually after adjusting handle is pulled.



#### **WARNING**

##### **■ Seat adjustment**

- Do not tilt the seat excessively during driving, so as to prevent your body from slipping out of the lap belt. If the seat is tilted excessively, the lap belt may slide over the hips and strangle the abdomen or allow the shoulder belt to reach the neck, increasing the risk of serious injury or even death in the event of an accident.
- Do not place your hands under the seat or near moving parts, as the seat mechanism may pinch your hands.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other occupants are not injured when the seat moves.
- Do not allow the children to adjust the seat.  
It is very dangerous to allow children to adjust the seat. If a child's hand or foot is caught, serious injury could occur.
- Always park the vehicle before adjusting the driver's seat.  
Adjusting the driver's seat during driving is very dangerous, because the driver may lose control of the vehicle, which could lead to an accident.

##### **■ Seat modification**

- Modifying or replacing the front seats may damage the airbag components in the seats and cause failure of the airbags to deploy properly in the event of a crash.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

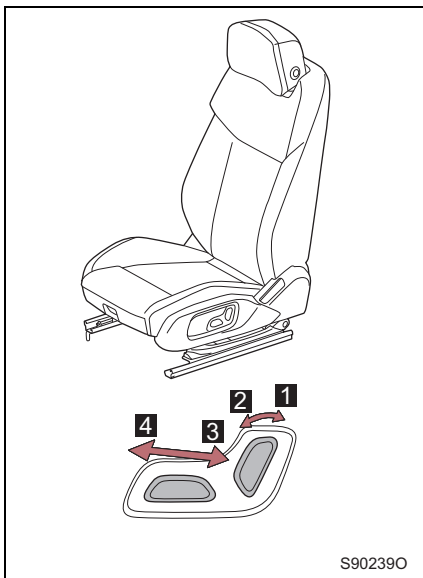
##### **■ If the seat is damaged**

- If the seat has been damaged, it is very dangerous to drive the vehicle at this time.
- After a collision, even if the seat airbag does not deploy, the seat may be damaged. Therefore, after a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the seats, seat belt pretensioners and airbags.



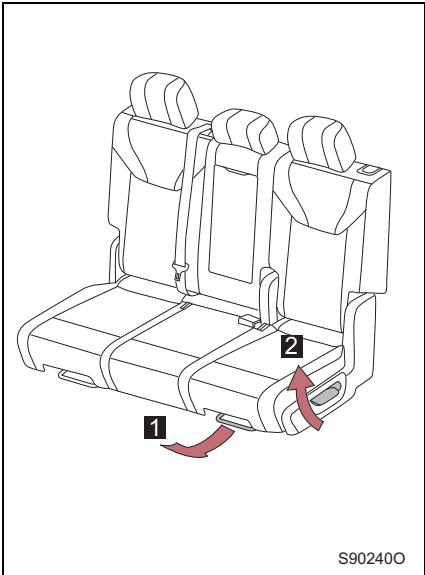
#### Second row seat adjustment

##### ► Second row seat adjusting (type I)



- 1** Tilting seat back backward
- 2** Tilting seat back forward
- 3** Seat position backward
- 4** Seat position forward

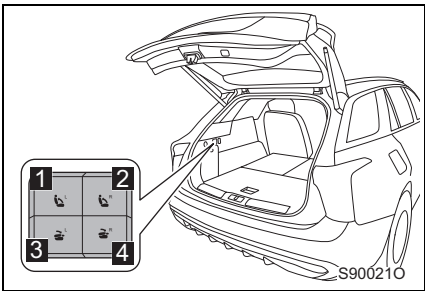
► Second row seat adjusting (type II)



- 1 Seat longitudinal position adjustment
- 2 Seat back angle adjustment

Third row seat folding\*

The third row seats can be folded and unfolded by using the buttons on the trim panel on the left side of the trunk.



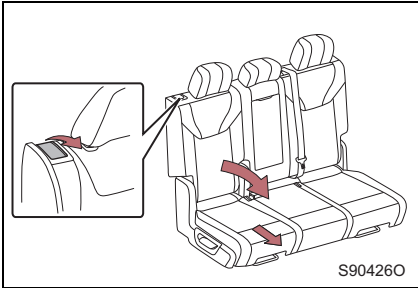
- 1 Left seat back unfolding
- 2 Right seat back unfolding
- 3 Left seat back folding
- 4 Right seat back folding

The third-row seat backs can be folded down flat into the trunk floor to increase storage space.

### WARNING

- The space available in the third row seats is limited. The third row seats are not suitable for adult passengers.

#### ■ Move the second row seats to access the third seats\*



For 7-passenger models, pull the second row seat shoulder adjustment handle, fold the seat back to a 45° position and move the right seat forward to access the third row seat.

### WARNING

#### ■ Seat adjustment

- Do not place your hands under the seat or near moving parts, as the seat mechanism may pinch your hands.
- Be careful when adjusting the seat position to ensure that other occupants are not injured when the seat moves.
- Do not allow the children to adjust the seat.  
It is very dangerous to allow children to adjust the seat. If a child's hand or foot is caught, serious injury could occur.

#### ■ Seat modification

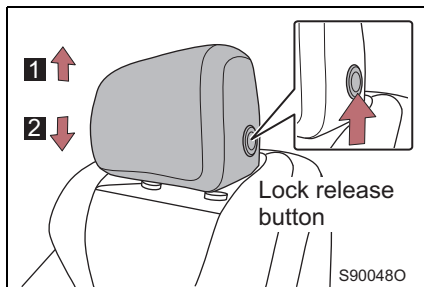
- Modifying or replacing the second row seat may damage the airbag components in the seats and cause failure of the airbags to deploy properly in the event of a collision.
- If the seat needs to be removed or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

#### ■ If the seat is damaged

- If the seat has been damaged, it is very dangerous to drive the vehicle at this time.
- After a collision, even if the seat airbag does not deploy, the seat may be damaged. Therefore, after a collision, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the seat and airbags.

### 3-3. Adjusting seat Headrest

#### ► Manual adjusting (front seat headrest/second row seat headrest)

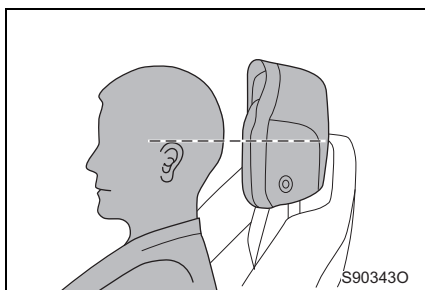


#### 1 Moving up

#### 2 Moving down

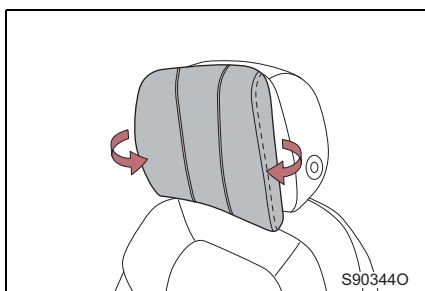
Push down the headrest while pressing and holding the lock release button.

#### ■ Adjusting headrest height



Adjust the headrest so that the center of the headrest is flush with the upper end of ears.

#### ■ Sleeping headrest\*



The two wings of headrest can be adjusted to a comfortable position.

**WARNING****■ Precautions for headrest**

Please observe the following precautions for headrest. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

- Use the headrests specifically designed for the seats.
- Be sure to adjust the headrest to the appropriate position for use.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the headrest removed.

Whenever you drive the vehicle, install the headrest and adjust it to the proper position. It is very dangerous to drive the vehicle with the headrest in a low position or uninstalled. In the event of a collision, the lack of head support could cause serious neck injuries.

- **Headrests can reduce the whiplash effect and mitigate the neck injury of the occupants in case of rear impact.**

### 3-3. Adjusting seat

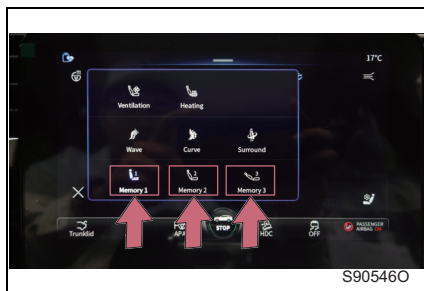
## Seat memory

The position of the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror can be memorized at the same time.

#### Seat memory setting



Operate the A/C operation panel, and touch seat setting button.



To set memory content: After adjusting the position of the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror, press and hold any memory button, then the button will be highlighted and display a ✓, which indicates that the position information has been recorded in that button.

To recall the memory content: Press the memory button to allow the seat, steering wheel and exterior rearview mirror to be automatically adjusted to the memorized position set by the button.

## Welcome function

The welcome function includes automatic backing and automatic return.

**Automatic backing:** Turn off the power (ignition) switch, and open the left front door. Then the seat and steering wheel automatically move backward to facilitate the driver getting off the vehicle.

**Automatic return:** Turn on the power (ignition) switch. Then the seat and steering wheel automatically return to the position before the driver left the vehicle.

### ■ Welcome function switch

The welcome function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 269)

### ■ During automatic backing

During the automatic backing, the driver can operate the steering wheel adjusting switch, seat adjusting switch or seat memory button to terminate the steering wheel and/or seat backing.

### ■ During automatic return

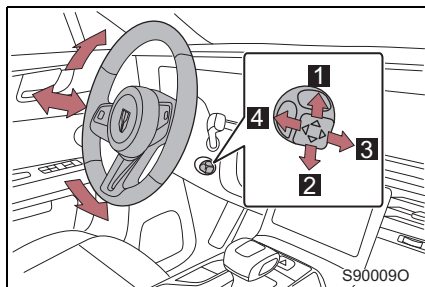
During the automatic return, the driver can operate the steering wheel adjusting switch, seat adjusting switch and seat memory button to terminate the steering wheel and/or seat return.

## 3-4. Adjusting steering wheel and rearview mirror

### Steering wheel

#### Steering wheel adjustment

The steering wheel can be adjusted to a comfortable position.



- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move downward
- 3 Move forward
- 4 Move backward

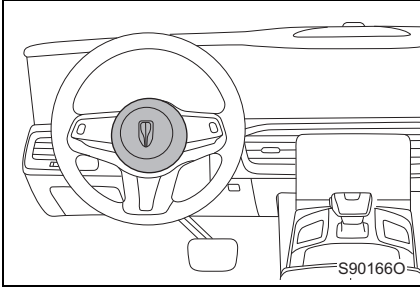
#### Steering wheel heating



Touch the steering wheel heating button on the A/C operation panel, the indicator lamp will illuminate and the steering wheel heating function will be activated; touch the button again, the steering wheel heating function will be deactivated.



## Horn



Press the horn symbol or the surrounding area to sound the horn.



### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions when driving

- Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving, as this may cause the driver to make a mistake and cause an accident, which could result in serious injury or even death.
- During driving, the driver's hands should hold the outside of the steering wheel rim at the 3 o'clock and 9 o'clock positions. Do not hold the steering wheel at the 12 o'clock position or in any other position, as this may result in injury to the driver's arms or head when the driver's airbag deploys.

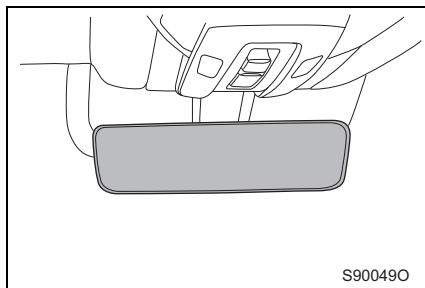
#### ■ When adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel should be adjusted so that the driver's chest is at least 300 mm away from the steering wheel. Do not make the steering wheel directly face the driver's face; otherwise the driver's airbag will not provide effective protection in the event of an accident.

## 3-4. Adjusting steering wheel and rearview mirror

### Anti-glare interior rearview mirror

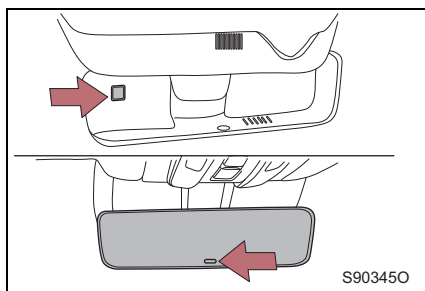
#### Adjusting interior rearview mirror



The interior rearview mirror can be adjusted up/down/left/right depending on the driving posture.

The driver must adjust the interior rearview mirror to a proper position, in order to view the rear of the vehicle through the rear windshield.

#### Anti-glare function



Interior rearview mirror has automatic anti-glare function, which uses the front and rear light sensors to detect the ambient light intensity and light intensity of vehicles behind, and reduces the reflected light automatically in the night when light of vehicle behind is too bright.

#### **WARNING**

##### ■ During driving

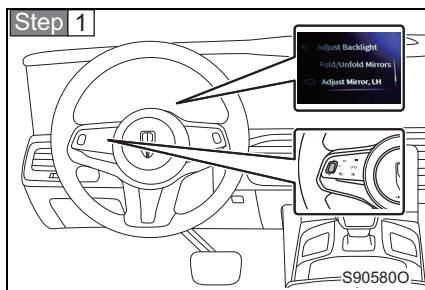
- Do not adjust the position of the rearview mirror while driving, as this may result in an accident due to mishandling, which could lead to serious injury or even death.
- Stacking items in the rear seats beyond the seat back height will obstruct the sight in the rearview mirror, which could result in a traffic accident. Therefore, do not stack items beyond the seat back height.

## 3-4. Adjusting steering wheel and rearview mirror

### Exterior rearview mirror

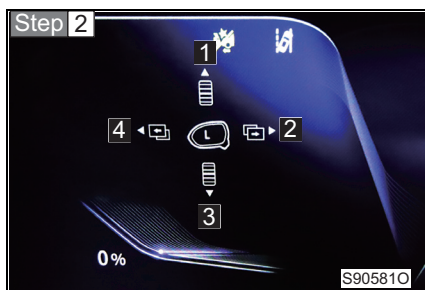
#### Adjusting exterior rearview mirror

When the power (ignition) switch is set to ON mode, the angle of exterior rearview mirror can be adjusted.



Operate the menu button on the left side of steering wheel to enter the backlight brightness and external rearview mirror setting interface.

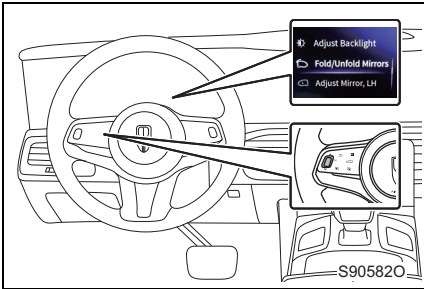
Operate the steering wheel's left scroll wheel to select exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side.



Operate the steering wheel's left scroll wheel and left/right selection button to adjust exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side.

- 1 Move upward
- 2 Move rightward
- 3 Move downward
- 4 Move leftward

Folding exterior rearview mirror



Operate the menu button on the left side of steering wheel to enter the backlight brightness and external rearview mirror setting interface. Select the folding exterior rearview mirror through steering wheel's left scroll wheel.

The exterior rearview mirror will automatically fold when the vehicle is locked, and automatically unfold when the vehicle is unlocked.

The automatic folding function of exterior rearview mirrors can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the multimedia system. (See P. 270)

Exterior rearview mirror heating



When the rearview mirrors are fogged up, touch the rear windshield heating button on A/C operation panel to heat the exterior rearview mirror and rear windshield at the same time; press the button again to deactivate the heating.

■ Using power mode in cold weather

In cold weather where the exterior rearview mirrors may freeze, the automatic folding and unfolding feature may not function in power mode. In this case, remove the snow and ice from the exterior rearview mirrors, and then operate the mirrors manually.

■ Exterior rearview mirror memory

The exterior rearview mirrors feature a memory function that can be linked with the seat and steering wheel memory. (See P. 118)

### ■ Automatic adjustment of right rearview mirror

When the shift lever is set to R position, if this function is turned on, the right rearview mirror automatically tilts down to provide the driver with a back-up view. After the shift lever has been out of R position for 10 seconds or when the vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h, the rearview mirror automatically returns to the previous position.

With the shift lever in R position, the driver can adjust the right rearview mirror to an appropriate angle, which is memorized as the target downward tilt position.

The automatic adjustment function of right rearview mirror can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the multimedia system. (See P. 270)



### WARNING

#### ■ When driving

Please observe the following precautions while driving. Failure to do so may result in loss control of the vehicle and cause an accident, resulting in serious injury or even death.

- Always look around before changing lanes.

It is dangerous to change lanes without considering the actual distance of the vehicle in the exterior rearview mirror. Since the actual distance of the object is closer than what you see in the exterior rearview mirrors, it can lead to a serious accident.

- Do not drive with the exterior rearview mirror folded. Be sure to reset the exterior rearview mirrors to the unfolding position before driving.

#### ■ When adjusting the exterior mirror

To avoid personal injury and rearview mirror fault, be careful not to have your hands pinched by the mirror in motion.

#### ■ When operating the exterior rearview mirror heater

- Do not touch the surface of the exterior rearview mirror, as it will become hot and may cause burns.
- Turn off the exterior rearview mirror heating function when there is no need for heating.

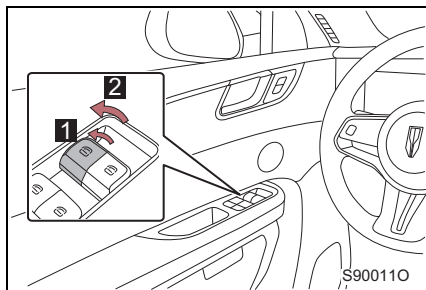
#### ■ Precautions when driving

Please observe the following precautions while driving:

- Do not adjust the rearview mirror while driving.
- Both left and right rearview mirrors must be unfolded and properly adjusted before driving.

# Power window

### Opening and closing power windows



- 1 Manual lifting/lowering**  
Pull up/press down the corresponding window regulator switch to position 1 (keep pulling up/pressing down), to achieve manual lifting/lowering of the windows.
- 2 Automatic lifting/lowering**  
Pull up/press down the corresponding window regulator switch to position 2 (pull up/press down and release), to achieve automatic lifting/lowering of the windows.

The driver's power window switch can control other windows.

The second row passenger's power window switch can control rear windows on both sides.

---

#### ■ Operating conditions of power windows

Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

#### ■ Operate the power windows with power (ignition) switch OFF

The power windows can be operated even after power (ignition) switch has been turned off for a period of time.

#### ■ Locking rear power window

Rear power window and door can be locked by rear door child safety lock to prevent children from opening the rear doors and operating the window in the vehicle. (See P. 97)

#### ■ Initialization operation

After the automatic window lifting/lowering function is disabled, the windows need to be initialized as follows:

- With the window glass in any position (more than 4 mm from the top of the window frame) within the effective anti-pinch area, continue pulling up the switch for the window to be initialized to close the window fully, and keep this action for about 2 seconds or more, then fully open and close the power window once to complete the initialization operation.

If necessary, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### ■ Anti-pinch function

In case of an obstacle during the automatic closing, the power window can automatically return to a safe position.

### ■ Automatic window closing function\*

With power (ignition) switch in OFF mode and the window not closed, the window will be automatically closed after the rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

The automatic window closing function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 269)

### ■ Remote window lifting

With all doors, the front compartment cover and the trunk lid closed and power (ignition) switch in OFF mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key in the operating range to close all windows.

### ■ Intelligent window lifting

With all doors, the front compartment cover and the trunk lid closed and power (ignition) switch in OFF mode, carry the smart key with you and press and hold the door handle sensor switch to close all windows.



## WARNING

### ■ To avoid serious personal injury or even death, observe the following precautions when closing the windows:

- During operation on the windows, do check carefully to ensure that no part of the driver and passenger's bodies will be pinched.
- Do not allow children to operate the power windows.

### ■ Anti-pinch function

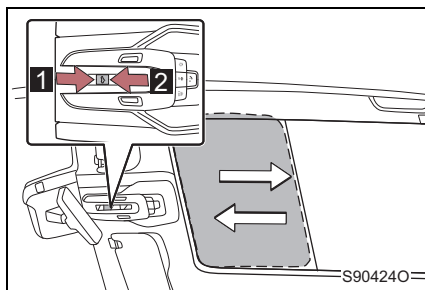
- Do not activate the anti-pinch function by intentionally stopping the moving window with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is pinched when the window is about to close fully (4 mm).
- If the automatic window lifting/lowering function or the anti-pinch function is disabled, initialization is required.

## 3-5. Opening and closing windows

# Panorama sunroof

**The sunroof can be opened and closed by the sunroof switch.**

### Opening and closing sunroof



#### 1 Opening

When the sunroof is closed, press the switch backwards once to tilt the rear of the sunroof up and partially open the sunshade.

When the sunroof is in the upward tilting position, press the switch backward once to open the sunroof and sunshade simultaneously.

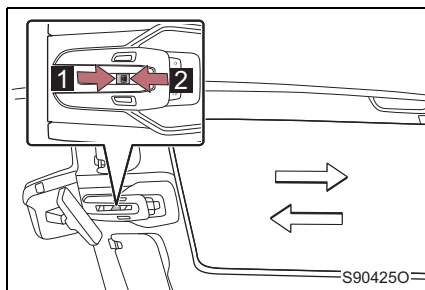
#### 2 Closing

When the sunroof is open, press the switch forward once to close the sunroof.

**Note:** When the sunroof is opening or closing automatically, press the sunroof switch again to stop the sunroof.

Press and hold the sunroof switch to open and close the sunroof manually, and release the switch to stop the sunroof.

### Opening and closing sunshade



#### 1 Opening

Press the sunshade switch backward once to open the sunshade fully.

#### 2 Closing

Press the sunshade switch forward once to close the sunshade fully.

**Note:** When the sunshade is opening or closing automatically, press the sunshade switch again to stop the sunshade.

Press and hold the sunshade switch to open and close the sunshade manually, and release the switch to stop the sunshade.

When the sunroof is not closed, the sunshade cannot be fully closed.



### ■ Operating conditions of sunroof

Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

### ■ Operate the sunroof with power (ignition) switch OFF

Within a certain period of time after power (ignition) switch is set to OFF position, if the driver's door is not opened, the sunroof can still be operated at this time.

### ■ Initialization operation

#### ● Sunroof initialization operation

When the sunroof is positioned incorrectly, the automatic sunroof function is disabled or the sunroof and sunshade linkage function is disabled, initialization should be done as follows: Set power (ignition) switch to ON mode, and run the sunroof to the fully closed position. At this time, press and hold the sunroof switch forward. When the sunroof hits the mechanism stop, release the switch and immediately press and hold the switch forward again. The sunroof will tilt up and open, slide open and slide close and then stop. Afterwards, release the switch to complete the initialization operation.

#### ● Sunshade initialization operation

When the sunshade is positioned incorrectly or the automatic sunshade function is disabled, initialization should be done as follows: Set power (ignition) switch to ON mode, and run the sunshade to the fully closed position. At this time, press and hold the sunshade switch forward. When the sunshade hits the mechanism stop, release the switch and immediately press and hold the switch forward again. The sunshade will open backward, close forward and then stop. Afterwards, release the switch to complete the initialization operation.

### ■ Anti-pinch function

In case of an obstacle during the automatic closing, the sunroof/sunshade can automatically return to a safe position.

### ■ Automatic sunroof closing function\*

With power (ignition) switch in OFF mode and the sunroof not closed, the sunroof will be automatically closed after the rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

The automatic window closing function can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 269)

### ■ Remote sunroof closing

With all doors, the front compartment cover and the trunk lid closed and power (ignition) switch in OFF mode, press and hold the lock button on the smart key within the operating range to close the sunroof.

### ■ Intelligent sunroof closing

With all doors, the front compartment cover and the trunk lid closed and power (ignition) switch in OFF mode, carry the smart key with you and press and hold the door handle sensor switch to close the sunroof.



### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions for sunroof opening

To avoid serious personal injury, observe the following precautions during sunroof opening:

- When the vehicle is moving, the driver and passengers shall never extend their hands or heads out of the vehicle.
- Do not sit on the sunroof.

#### ■ Precautions for sunroof closing

To avoid serious personal injury, observe the following precautions during sunroof closing:

- When closing the sunroof, do check carefully to ensure that no part of the occupants' bodies will be pinched.
- Do not allow children to operate the sunroof.

#### ■ During initialization operation

- During initialization, if the switch is released, the initialization operation will fail and need to be repeated.
- After the initialization operation, you need to check all the functions of the sunroof.
- If the initialization cannot be completed, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

#### ■ Anti-pinch function

- Do not activate the anti-pinch function by deliberately stopping the moving sunroof with any part of your body.
- The anti-pinch function may not work if an object is pinched when the sunroof/sunshade is about to close fully.

**4-1. Before driving**

- Driving the vehicle .... 132
- Goods and luggage .. 139

**4-2. Driving specifications**

- Power (ignition)
  - switch ..... 141
- Gearshift control ..... 143
- Driving mode ..... 148
- Air suspension\* ..... 152
- Turn signal lamp control
  - lever ..... 157
- Electronic parking brake
  - (EPB) ..... 158
- AUTO HOLD ..... 160

**4-3. Operating lamps and wipers**

- Headlamp switch ..... 162
- ADB intelligent high beam
  - control\* ..... 165
- Fog lamp switch ..... 168
- Front windshield wiper &
  - washer ..... 169
- Rear windshield wiper &
  - washer ..... 173

**4-4. Charging port cover**

- Opening charging port
  - cover ..... 175

**4-5. Using other driving systems**

- Adaptive cruise control
  - (ACC) ..... 177
- Intelligent speed control
  - system (IACC) ..... 186

- Super adaptive cruise
  - control (SACC) ..... 188

- Front and rear parking
  - radar ..... 199

- Around view monitor
  - (AVM) ..... 206

- Tire pressure monitoring
  - system (TPMS) ..... 213

- Lane departure warning/
  - lane keeping assist
    - (LDW/LKA) ..... 215

- Driver status monitor
  - (DSM)\* ..... 219

- Forward collision warning
  - (FCW) ..... 222

- Autonomous emergency
  - braking (AEB) ..... 225

- Blind spot detection
  - (BSD) ..... 229

- Intelligent speed limit
  - warning system
    - (ISA) ..... 235

- Auto parking assist
  - (APA) ..... 237

- Driver assistance
  - system ..... 247

**4-6. Driving information**

- Driving essentials in
  - winter ..... 251

# Driving the vehicle

**The following driving specifications must be observed to ensure safe driving.**

- Start the power system (see P. 141)

### ■ Driving

**Step 1** Depress the brake pedal and set the shift lever to D position, to release the EPB automatically.

**Step 2** Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

### ■ Stop

**Step 1** When the shift lever is set to D position, depress the brake pedal.

**Step 2** If necessary, apply the EPB.

For long-term parking, be sure to set the shift lever to P or N position.

### ■ Parking

**Step 1** When the shift lever is set to D position, depress the brake pedal.

**Step 2** Press the P position button and set the shift lever to P position, to apply the EPB automatically.

**Step 3** Turn off the power supply of the vehicle, lock the vehicle and make sure to carry the key with you.

## Starting on a steep slope

**Step 1** The driver fastens the seat belt, closes the doors, firmly depresses the brake pedal and sets the shift lever to D position.

Make sure the gear indicator lamp shows D.

**Step 2** Manually apply the EPB.

**Step 3** Release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.

### ■ During starting on an uphill slope

The Hill Hold Control (HHC) activates automatically to prevent the vehicle from slipping. (See P. 247)

### ■ Emergency stop signal (ESS)

When a certain speed is reached, if emergency braking is applied, the brake lamp flashes quickly to remind the following vehicle until the brake pedal is released.

### ■ Driving in the rain

- When it rains, as visibility is reduced, windows fog up easily and the road is slippery, so drive with caution.
- When it rains, do not drive at a high speed because a water film will form between tires and road surface, hindering the normal operation of steering and braking.

### ■ Running in new vehicle

To extend the life of the vehicle, it is recommended that you observe the following precautions:

- Within the first 1,000 km:
  - Do not perform emergency stop.
  - Do not drive at a very high speed.
  - Do not accelerate suddenly.
  - Do not drive at a consistently low speed.
  - Do not drive at a constant speed for a long time.

### ■ Driving abroad

Please comply with the laws and regulations of the corresponding country or region.



### WARNING

#### ■ During start

When the vehicle is in "READY" state and stopped, always depress the brake pedal with one foot. This will prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

#### ■ Precautions when driving

- If you are not familiar with the position of brake pedal and accelerator pedal, do not drive to avoid depressing the wrong pedal.
  - If the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed when the brake pedal should be depressed, sudden acceleration will be caused, which may lead to serious accidents.
  - Although the vehicle is equipped with reverse image system and parking radar system, please drive carefully during reversing.
  - During reversing, you may twist your body around, leading to a difficulty in operating the pedal. Make sure to operate the pedal correctly.
  - Even if move the vehicle slightly, you should keep the correct driving posture, so that you can depress the brake pedal and accelerator pedal accurately.
  - Depress the brake pedal with your right foot. Depressing the brake pedal with the left foot in an emergency may lead to delayed response, resulting in an accident.
- Do not drive over flammables or park near them.  
If there is any flammable material nearby, it may cause a fire.
- Do not move the vehicle backward when the shift lever is set to D or P position, or forward when the shift lever is set to R or P position; otherwise, it may cause accidents or damage the vehicle.
- Do not touch the power (ignition) switch during driving.  
If the power (ignition) switch is accidentally turned off, the brake booster, etc. may not work normally.
- When going down a steep slope, be sure to slow down.  
Note that continuous application of the brake may cause brake overheating and failure.
- When the vehicle is parked on an inclined road, please make sure the slope is suitable for the EPB function, otherwise, please depress the brake pedal and apply the EPB to prevent the vehicle from moving forward or backward and causing an accident.
- Do not adjust the position of steering wheel, seat, interior or exterior rearview mirror during driving. Otherwise, it may cause accidents.
- Be sure to check that all occupants' arms, heads or other body parts are not stuck out of the vehicle; otherwise, serious personal injury may be caused.



## WARNING

### ■ When driving on a slippery road

- Emergency braking, acceleration and turns may cause wheel slippage and reduce the maneuverability of the vehicle, causing accidents.
- After passing through a puddle, gently depress the brake pedal to ensure normal brake function. Wet brake linings may impede normal braking. Even if only brake lining on one side gets wet, it can affect vehicle control.

### ■ When operating the shift lever

Be careful not to shift gears when depressing the accelerator pedal.

Otherwise, the vehicle may be accelerated suddenly, thus causing accidents.

### ■ When the vehicle stops

- Do not leave the vehicle in "READY" state.  
If the shift lever is in a position other than P or N, the vehicle may accelerate suddenly, thus causing accidents.
- When the vehicle is in "READY" state, always depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake when necessary to prevent accidents caused by the movement of the vehicle.
- If the vehicle is parked on a slope, to prevent an accident caused by the vehicle's movement forward or backward, be sure to depress the brake pedal and apply the parking brake firmly as necessary.

### ■ After the vehicle is parked

- Do not leave spectacles, lighters, sprayers or soft drink cans in the vehicle at a high temperature place; otherwise, the following unexpected circumstances may occur.
  - Gas leaks from lighters or sprayers, causing fires.
  - The interior temperature may deform or rupture the lenses and other plastic parts of spectacles.
  - A soft drink can may rupture, causing the beverage to spill onto interior trims of vehicle, and potentially causing a short circuit in electrical components of the vehicle.
- Be sure to apply the EPB, set the shift lever to P position, turn off the power (ignition) switch and lock the vehicle.
- Do not leave the vehicle when it is in "READY" state.
- When the power (ignition) switch is turned on or has just been turned off, do not touch the high-voltage parts in the front compartment, otherwise it may cause electric shock or burns.



### WARNING

#### ■ While napping in the vehicle

Be sure to turn off the power (ignition) switch. Otherwise, you may accidentally move the shift lever or depress the accelerator pedal, causing an accident.

#### ■ When applying the brake

- Drive carefully when the brake is wet.

When the brake is wet, the braking distance will increase, the braking effects on both sides of the vehicle may be different, and the parking brake may not hold the vehicle still.

- If the brake assist function is abnormal, do not follow other vehicles at close range, and avoid going down long slopes or sharp turns.  
In this case, a greater force than usual is required to depress the brake pedal, and the braking distance may also increase.





## CAUTION

### ■ During driving

Do not use the accelerator pedal or depress the accelerator pedal and brake pedal at the same time to park on a slope.

### ■ When parking

For long-term parking, be sure to apply the EPB and set the shift lever to P position. Otherwise, it may cause the vehicle to move, or suddenly accelerate when the accelerator pedal is accidentally depressed.

### ■ Driving performance

- When the ambient temperature is too high or too low, the vehicle can start and drive normally, but the performance of the vehicle may be reduced.
- For new vehicles with the power battery in normal status, the driving range may fluctuate because of the driving habits (e.g., frequent acceleration and deceleration), road conditions (e.g., going up a long slope), ambient temperature (e.g., low temperature) and the turning on/off of the electrical equipment (e.g., A/C).

### ■ Avoid damaging vehicle parts

- Do not turn the steering wheel to the limit in either direction and keep it for a long time; otherwise, the power steering system will be damaged.
- During driving on a bumpy road, try to drive at a low speed to avoid damaging the wheels and bottom of the vehicle.

### ■ In case of flat tire during driving

Tire leakage or damage may cause the following conditions. Please hold the steering wheel firmly and slowly depress the brake pedal to reduce the speed of the vehicle:

- It may be difficult to control the vehicle.
- The vehicle will make abnormal sounds.
- The vehicle runs abnormally.

Replace the leaking tire with a new one.



### CAUTION

#### ■ In case of water-logged road

Do not drive on a road with deep water; otherwise, the vehicle may suffer from the following serious damage.

- The electrical components are short-circuited.
- The power system is damaged due to water immersion.

If water enters the vehicle after driving on a water-logged road, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible to check the following items.

- Check whether the brake functions normally.
- Whether the level and the quality of the reducer oil have changed.
- The lubrication condition at the connections (possible parts) between the bearing and the suspension, and whether the functions of all connections, bearings, etc. are normal.

# Goods and luggage

**Please pay attention to the followings when storing goods and luggage.**

- Store goods and luggage in the trunk as much as possible.
- Ensure that all articles are firmly fixed.
- Keep the vehicle level. Put the weight forward as far as possible to keep the vehicle balanced.
- In order to improve the driving range, please do not carry unnecessary heavy objects.



### WARNING

#### ■ Articles prohibited from being stored in the trunk

The following articles may cause fire when placed in the trunk.

- A container with gasoline.
- Aerosol can.
- Other inflammable and explosive articles.

#### ■ Precautions for storage

To avoid serious personal injury or even death, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not place goods or luggage in the following places. Otherwise, the articles may jam the brake pedal or accelerator pedal which may not work properly, and may block the driver's sight or hit the driver or passengers, thus causing accidents.
  - Driver's footwell
  - Front passenger's seat or rear seat (with articles)
  - Instrument panel
- Store all the articles properly in the vehicle. Otherwise, the articles may move and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- It is forbidden to store poorly sealed liquid containers in the trunk.

#### ■ Load and distribution

- Please do not overload the vehicle.
- Be sure to place the goods evenly.

Improper placement may lead to poor steering or braking control performance, resulting in serious personal injury and even death.
- Do not put heavy objects in the trunk for a long time.

Placing heavy objects in the trunk for a long time may affect the performance of the suspension system.

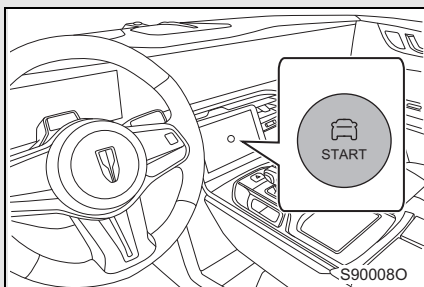
## 4-2. Driving specifications

# Power (ignition) switch

**You can switch the power (ignition) switch mode or start the power system when carrying the smart key.**

### ■ Switching power (ignition) switch mode

By touching power (ignition) switch [START] or depressing the brake pedal, the power mode can be switched from OFF to ON; by touching the power (ignition) switch [OFF] again or the remote control lock button, the power mode can be switched from ON to OFF.



### OFF mode\*<sup>1</sup>

The position lamp and the hazard warning lamp can be used.

### ON mode

All electrical components can be used.

\*<sup>1</sup>: Before turning off the power (ignition) switch, set the shift lever to P position.

### ■ Starting the power system

**Step 1** Sit in the driver seat and firmly depress the brake pedal.

**Step 2** Switch the shift lever to D/R.

The "READY" indicator lamp on the instrument cluster will be illuminated.

### ■ Stopping the power system

**Step 1** Stop the vehicle completely.

**Step 2** Set the shift lever to P position and confirm that the parking brake has been applied.

**Step 3** Press the power (ignition) switch or remote control lock button to power off the vehicle.

### ■ If the vehicle cannot be started

The vehicle anti-theft system may not be deactivated yet. (See P. 79)



### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions when driving

Do not touch the power (ignition) switch during driving to prevent the power system from shutting down accidentally, leading to accidents.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing low battery

- When leaving the vehicle, the driver should lock the vehicle and carry the key. Do not leave the key in the compartment to prevent the PEPS from continuous operation, leading to low battery.

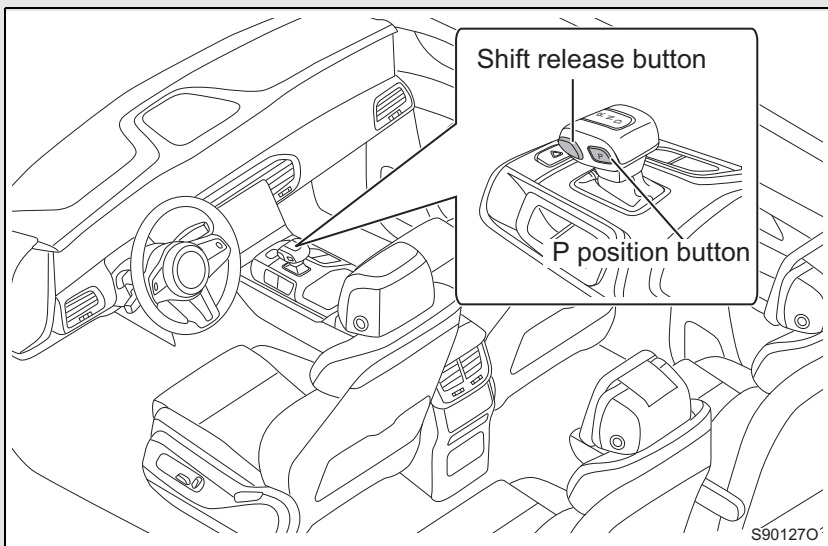
#### ■ When the "READY" indicator lamp is off

- If the "READY" indicator lamp is still not illuminated after the correct start procedures of vehicle are performed, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately.

## 4-2. Driving specifications

### Gearshift control

**Choose a gear suitable for driving conditions.**



Gently operate the shift lever and make sure that the gearshifting is correct.

After each gearshifting, release the shift lever to reset it.

#### ■ Gear shifting

When the power (ignition) switch is switched to ON mode, you can perform shift operations as follows.

- Switch from P to D: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever downward to the first or second travel.
- Switch from P to N: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the first travel.
- Switch from P to R: Depress the brake pedal, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the second travel.
- Switch from N to D: When the vehicle is stationary, operate the shift lever downward to the first or second travel\*.

- Switch from N to R: When the vehicle is stationary, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the first or second travel\*.

\*: If N gear engagement time is more than 1 second, it is required to depress the brake pedal for gear shifting; if N gear engagement time is less than 1 second, there is no need to depress the brake pedal for gear shifting.

- Switch from D to N: Operate the shift lever upward to the first travel.  
It is impossible to switch when the vehicle speed is greater than 50 km/h.
- Switch from D to R: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary, press the unlock button, and operate the shift lever upward to the second travel.
- Switch from R to N: Operate the shift lever downward to the first travel.
- Switch from R to D: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary, and operate the shift lever downward to the second travel.
- Switch from N/D/R to P: Depress the brake pedal until the vehicle is stationary, and press the P position button.

When selecting the gear, ensure that the desired gear is displayed on the instrument cluster.

■ Gear/function

| Gear | Function                                                          |
|------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| P    | Parking (vehicle E-PARK locks)                                    |
| R    | Reverse                                                           |
| N    | Neutral (the vehicle has no power output, and E-PARK is unlocked) |
| D    | Drive                                                             |

E-PARK: The control unit drives the actuator motor to mechanically lock the intermediate shaft of the reducer to park the vehicle at P gear.



## Gear description

### ► P (Parking) position

P position can be used to lock the reducer and prevent the wheels from rotating.



## WARNING

### ■ First operation of shift lever

This vehicle adopts electronic shift mechanism, which needs to be operated according to the gear information on the cluster instrument and information display screen and the above gear operation description, and cannot be operated by intuition and consciousness to avoid danger.

### ■ Be sure to set the shift lever to P position and apply the parking brake

It is very dangerous to set the shift lever to P position without applying the parking brake. If P position cannot hold the vehicle still, it will move, thus causing an accident.

### ► R (Reverse) position

When the shift lever is in R position, the vehicle can only move backwards. The vehicle must come to a complete stop before shifting to or out of R gear.

### ► N (Neutral) position

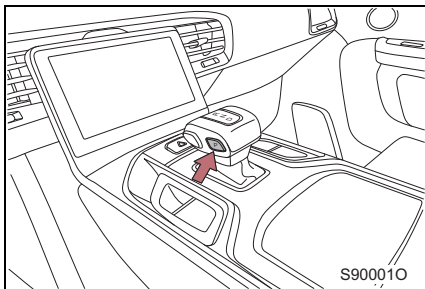
When in N gear, the motor drive system will be in servo state, and the wheels and drivetrain are not locked. During parking on a gentle slope, you should depress the brake pedal or apply the parking brake; otherwise, the vehicle may slide freely.

### ► D (Drive) position

D position is commonly used during driving, which controls the vehicle to move forward.

### P position button

#### ■ When shifting to P position



You can shift to P position by using the P position button.

When the vehicle is stationary, press the P position button.

When P gear is engaged, the gear information on the instrument cluster is displayed as P.

If the vehicle speed is higher than 3 km/h, it will be impossible to shift to P position.

#### ■ When shifting to another position from P position

- Press the unlock button while depressing the brake pedal firmly, and operate the shift lever. If the shift lever is operated without depressing the brake pedal, the gear shifting is prohibited.
- When changing gears, ensure that the gear information on the instrument cluster is displayed as the required gear.

#### ■ The vehicle will switch to P position automatically under the following conditions

- When the power (ignition) switch is set to OFF mode, the vehicle will automatically switch to P position.
- When the vehicle speed is lower than 2 km/h, if the driver unfastens the seat belt, releases the brake pedal and opens the door, the vehicle will switch to P position.
- When the vehicle is charging, it automatically switches to P position, and does not respond to any shift operations by the driver.

#### ■ Pedestrian warning system

When the driver switched the gear to D or R, and the vehicle speed is 0-30 km/h, the pedestrian warning system will emit a warning sound. In D position, the sound level changes with the vehicle speed; In R position, the warning sound does not change.

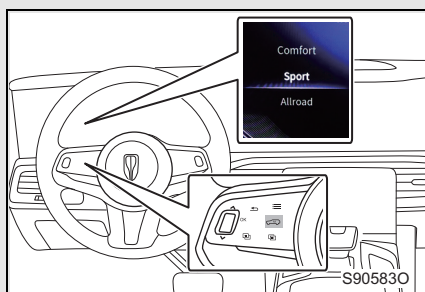
**WARNING****■ During driving on a slippery road**

Be careful during sudden acceleration and deceleration; otherwise, it may cause vehicle sideslip or wheel slipping.

### Driving mode

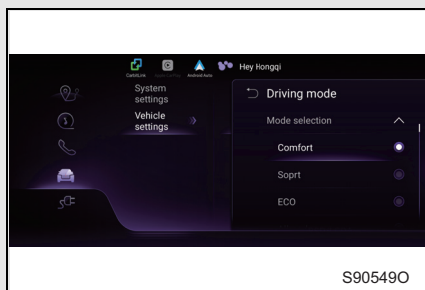
This vehicle is equipped with a driving mode switching system which can provide different driving modes: LBL, comfort, sport, all-terrain, off-road, custom and extreme. In different modes, the vehicle has unique driving performance to meet the driving needs of driver.

#### ■ Driving mode selection



Method 1: Driving mode selection button

Press the driving mode selection button on the steering wheel to enter the driving mode selection interface; select the corresponding driving mode using the scroll wheel on the steering wheel.



Method 2: Multimedia display

Corresponding driving mode can be selected through the vehicle settings interface of the multimedia system.

#### LBL mode

In LBL mode, the vehicle has good endurance and is suitable for common urban pavement.

#### ■ Driving characteristics in LBL mode

- Power output is gentle.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [dynamic level], and the height of suspension will be adjusted according to the speed. (See P. 152)

- For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is moderate and the road feel is relatively balanced.

## Comfort mode

In comfort mode, the vehicle has good comfort and is suitable for common urban pavement.

### ■ Driving characteristics in comfort mode

- Power output is balanced.
- The steering feel is light.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [normal level], and the height of suspension will be adjusted according to the speed. (See P. 152)
- For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is relatively soft with high comfort.

## Sport mode

In sport mode, the vehicle has good power performance and is suitable for highways or common urban pavement.

### ■ Driving characteristics in sport mode

- Power output is strong.
- Movement sense is strong during turning.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [dynamic level], and the height of suspension will be adjusted according to the speed. (See P. 152)
- For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is relatively firm and the road feel is strong.

## All-terrain mode

The all-terrain mode is suitable for low-adhesion roads, wet grass and gravel roads after snow.

### ■ Driving characteristics in all-terrain mode

- The power output is stable and gentle, reducing vehicle skidding.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [off-road height 1].
- For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is moderate and the road feel is relatively balanced.

### Off-road mode

The off-road mode is suitable for urban road shoulders and light off-road pavements.

The off-road mode should be entered at relatively low vehicle speed. When the vehicle is running in off-road mode at a high speed, the driving mode will be automatically switched to all-terrain mode.

#### ■ Driving characteristics in off-road mode

- The power output is stable and gentle, reducing vehicle skidding.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [off-road height 2].
- For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is moderate and the road feel is relatively balanced.

Note: You can switch to off-road mode when the vehicle speed is relatively low. When the vehicle speed is relatively high, it will automatically switch to all-terrain mode.

### Extreme mode\*

The extreme mode provides users with the extreme driving experience. In extreme mode, the vehicle has strong power characteristics and is suitable for well-paved roads.

In sport mode, if the power battery temperature is relatively low and battery level is high, the extreme mode can be activated by pressing the scroll wheels on both sides of the steering wheel simultaneously for 3 seconds or in the in-vehicle infotainment system.

The single usage time of extreme mode cannot exceed 10 minutes, the driving mode can be actively switched to sport mode to exit extreme mode.

#### ■ Driving characteristics in extreme mode

- The power is quite strong.
- The movement sense of the steering system is strong.
- For vehicles equipped with air suspension, the height of vehicle will be automatically adjusted to [dynamic level], and the height of suspension will be adjusted according to the speed. (See P. 152)
- For vehicles equipped with CDC shock absorber, the shock absorber is relatively firm and the road feel is strong.

## Custom mode

To satisfy the individual driving needs, in addition to the above driving modes, the driver can also choose a custom mode.

In custom mode, the user can set the acceleration mode, coasting energy recovery level, steering characteristics and suspension comfort.

Driving characteristics in custom mode can be set through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 271)

### ■ Setting conditions of driving mode switching

- Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.
- This system and related systems have no fault.

### ■ Working state of driving mode system

- When selecting the driving mode, the driver can know the current working condition of the driving mode system through the information displayed on the instrument cluster.



## CAUTION

- **Do not use special driving modes (such as off-road and all-terrain) on common urban pavement or highways, such driving modes are only designed for special road conditions. Long-term use on these roads may damage the drivetrain.**

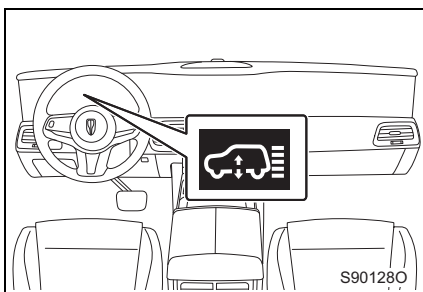
### ■ Precautions during switch of driving modes

- To ensure driving safety, switch the driving modes during parking or driving at a low speed on good roads.
- The driving mode switching system has self-protection function. If operating conditions for the corresponding driving mode are not met, activating the driving mode may damage the vehicle and affect the driving safety. When the driver switches the driving mode, failure to switch to the target mode may be caused by the self-protection function of the system, which is normal.
- If the driving mode system still cannot work normally when operating conditions for the driving mode are met, immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the vehicle.
- Since the driving mode system cannot replace the driver's judgment on driving environment, the driver must always keep control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.

### Air suspension\*

**The vehicle can be maintained at different height levels by adjusting the driving mode, thus making different ground clearances to achieve the better trafficability.**

#### Adjustment of air suspension



The vehicle height can be adjusted in the process of adjusting a driving mode, and it will also be automatically adjusted according to the driving mode and speed during driving. During the adjustment, the air suspension indicator lamp on the instrument cluster flashes and prompts the vehicle in lifting/lowering state. After the adjustment is completed, the indicator lamp stops flashing and displays the current height level.

#### Adjustment of air suspension system

The air suspension has different height levels and damping characteristics by adjusting different driving modes.

The vehicle height can be automatically adjusted with the vehicle speed, and can be adjusted to all height levels below the corresponding height of the current driving mode.

##### ■ Air suspension characteristics in off-road mode

- In this mode, the shock absorber is automatically set to the balanced damping characteristic, and the vehicle height is automatically set to [off-road height 2] (+60 mm).
- This mode can be activated when the vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h. When the vehicle speed is more than 40 km/h, the driving mode is automatically adjusted from the off-road mode to the all-terrain mode, and the vehicle height is decreased to [off-road height 1] accordingly.



#### ■ Air suspension characteristics in all-terrain mode

- In this mode, the shock absorber is automatically set to the damping characteristic suitable for slippery roads, and the vehicle height is automatically set to [off-road height 1] (+25 mm).
- When the vehicle speed is more than 80 km/h, the vehicle height will automatically decrease to [normal level]; when the vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h, the vehicle height will automatically return to [off-road height 1].

#### ■ Air suspension characteristics in comfort mode

- In this mode, the shock absorber is automatically set to the comfortable damping characteristic, and the vehicle height is automatically set to [normal level] (+0 mm).
- When the vehicle speed is greater than 100 km/h for more than 30 seconds, the vehicle height will automatically decrease to [dynamic level]; when the vehicle speed is less than 70 km/h for 120 seconds, the vehicle height will automatically return to [normal level]. When the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h, the vehicle height will immediately return to [normal level].

#### ■ Air suspension characteristics in LBL mode

- In this mode, the shock absorber is automatically set to the balanced damping characteristic, and the vehicle height is automatically set to [dynamic level] (-15 mm).
- When the vehicle speed is more than 140 km/h for 20 seconds, the vehicle height will automatically decrease to [highway level] (-30 mm); when the vehicle speed is less than 110 km/h for 20 seconds, the vehicle height will automatically return to [dynamic level]; when the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h, the vehicle height will immediately return to [dynamic level].

#### ■ Air suspension characteristics in sport and extreme mode

- In two modes, the shock absorber is automatically set to rigid damping characteristic, and the vehicle height is automatically set to [dynamic level] (-15 mm).
- When the vehicle speed is more than 140 km/h for 20 seconds, the vehicle height will automatically decrease to [highway level] (-30 mm); when the vehicle speed is less than 110 km/h for 20 seconds, the vehicle height will automatically return to [dynamic level]; when the vehicle speed is less than 35 km/h, the vehicle height will immediately return to [dynamic level].

---

### ■ When adjusting suspension

- If the power (ignition) switch is set to OFF during the adjustment of suspension, the adjustment will be interrupted immediately until the power (ignition) switch is switched to ON again, where the suspension will be automatically adjusted to the height corresponding to the current driving mode.
- If the current vehicle speed is not suitable for vehicle height adjustment, the vehicle height shall not be adjusted. Once the desired speed is reached, the vehicle will be automatically adjusted to the height corresponding to the driving mode.
- If any door is opened during adjustment of vehicle height, the adjustment will be interrupted immediately, and the suspension will be automatically adjusted to the height corresponding to the current driving mode after all door are closed.

### ■ Automatic adjustment with engine shutdown

After the automatic adjustment with engine shutdown is activated, if the vehicle is in off-road or all-terrain mode before the power off, the vehicle height will automatically decrease to [normal level] immediately after power off, to facilitate getting on/off. If the vehicle is in other driving modes before power off, the vehicle height will automatically decrease to [highway level] after power off, to facilitate getting on/off.

The automatic adjustment with engine shutdown can be turned on and off through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 269)

Note: After turning on this function, please pay attention to the parking environment for the vehicle before power off every time, so as not to damage the chassis due to the lowered vehicle height.

### ■ Easy access

Via the easy access, the air suspension can be manually adjusted to [highway level], to facilitate getting on/off.

Easy access function can be set through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 269)

**WARNING**

- **When the air suspension system fails, the warning lamp on the instrument cluster will come on with corresponding prompt message.**

Ignoring the warning lamp and prompt message may lead to an accident and personal injury.

If the air suspension system fails, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the vehicle immediately.

**CAUTION**

- **Suspension height level failed to be adjusted normally**

When a certain driving mode is selected, in order to ensure the safety of occupants, the air suspension system will determine whether to respond to the request according to the current driving conditions. When the system determines that the current working conditions are not suitable for adjustment, the suspension will not be adjusted, which is normal.

**Lifting mode**

**You must turn on the lifting mode before you use a jack or lifter to raise the vehicle.**

After the lifting mode is entered, all air suspension adjustment functions will be disabled. When the maintenance is completed, you must exit the lifting mode.

- **Entering lifting mode**

With the power (ignition) switch in ON mode, press and hold [lifting mode] button on the suspension adjustment interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system, and the instrument cluster will display the prompt message "Air suspension system in lifting mode", which indicates that the lifting mode is entered.

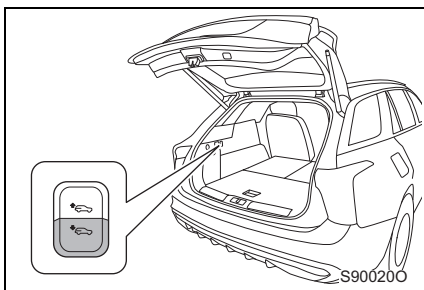
- **Exiting lifting mode**

With the power (ignition) switch in ON mode, and the vehicle in the lifting mode, touch the [exit] button on the suspension adjustment interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system to exit the lifting mode, and the prompt message "Air suspension system in lifting mode" will disappear; when the vehicle speed is more than 5 km/h, the vehicle will automatically exit the lifting mode.

### Loading mode

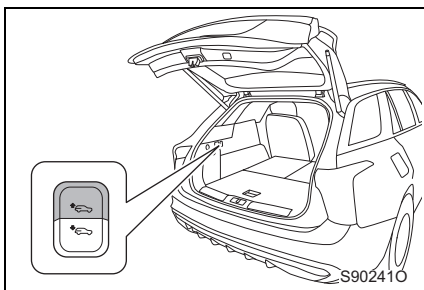
The vehicle has a loading mode, in which the height of rear suspension can be lowered to (-45 mm) to facilitate loading and unloading of goods.

#### ■ Entering loading mode



Close all doors, apply EPB, open the trunk lid and press the air suspension lowering button to enter the loading mode.

#### ■ Exiting loading mode



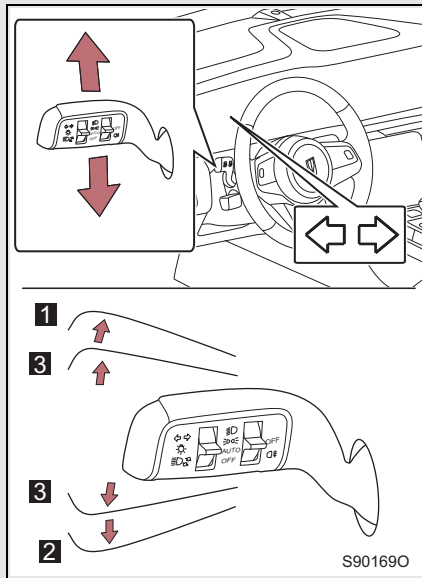
Press the air suspension rising button in the trunk or close the trunk lid to exit the loading mode. When the vehicle speed is more than 5 km/h, the vehicle will automatically exit the loading mode.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Precautions for using the loading mode

- When using the loading mode, leave enough space under the vehicle.
- When exiting the loading mode, leave enough space above the vehicle and the opened trunk lid.

### Turn signal lamp control lever



- 1** Right turn
- 2** Left turn
- 3** Comfort flashing

When the control lever is set to non-self-locking position once, the left/right turn signal lamp will flash three times; when the control lever is set to non-self-locking position continuously, the left/right turn signal lamp will flash continuously until the control lever is released.

#### ■ Operating conditions of turn signal lamps

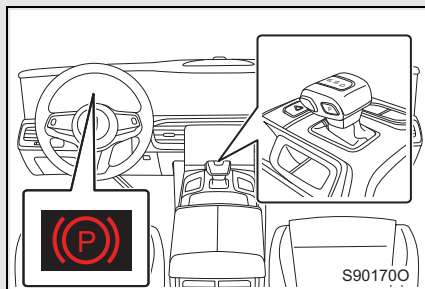
Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

#### ■ Control of turn signal lamp and hazard warning lamp

When the turn signal lamp is on, if the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed, the left and right turn signal lamps will flash at the same time; if the hazard warning lamp switch is pressed again, the turn signal lamp will return to the working state.

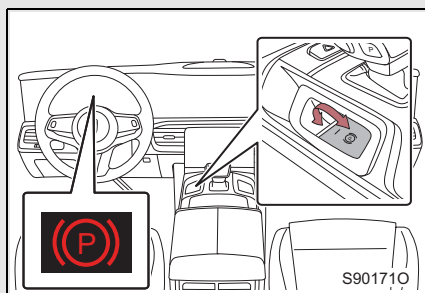
When the hazard warning lamp is on and power (ignition) switch is switched to ON mode, activating the turn signal will deactivate the hazard warning lamp while the turn signal lamp is operating. Once the turn signal is deactivated, the hazard warning lamp will resume its operation.

# Electronic parking brake (EPB)



### Automatic application/release of EPB

Depress the brake pedal, and set the shift lever to P position, so the EPB is automatically applied; set the shift lever to D/ R position to automatically release the EPB.



### Manual application/release of EPB

Depress the brake pedal and confirm that the vehicle is stationary, lift the EPB switch up to apply the EPB; set power (ignition) switch to ON mode, depress the brake pedal, and press the EPB switch to release the EPB.

### ■ Other features of EPB

- HHC: the driver fastens the seat belt and closes the door. Before the engine starts, if the EPB is applied, the system will automatically release the EPB according to the torque balance principle, so that the vehicle will not slip down the slope and start smoothly.
- CDP: When the vehicle is running, continuously lift the EPB switch up, so the vehicle will brake until it stops.

### ■ AUTO HOLD after power-off

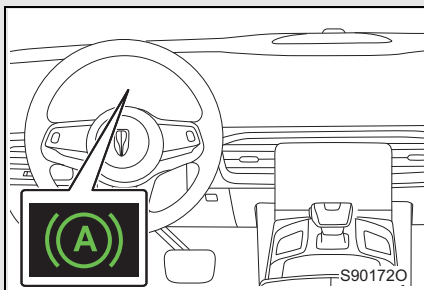
When the driver stops the vehicle and turns off power (ignition) switch, the EPB is automatically applied.

**CAUTION****■ Precautions before driving**

- In case of failure (e.g., electrical failure), the rear brake disc locked by the EPB can only be unlocked by mechanical method. It is recommended that you contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for handling.
- When the EPB is not released, the red indicator lamp is on. Driving the vehicle at this time will cause the brake components to overheat, thus affecting the braking performance and aggravating the wear of the brake.
- If the road condition is not suitable for parking, the instrument cluster multifunction display will prompt "Steep slope, not suitable for parking".

# AUTO HOLD

In the AUTO HOLD ready state, depress the brake pedal deeply again after the vehicle is stopped or directly depress the brake pedal deeply until the vehicle stops so as to activate AUTO HOLD. At this time, the vehicle will hold the brake when the brake pedal is released. When the brake pedal or accelerator pedal is depressed with the gear in D/R, the AUTO HOLD will be deactivated by the system.



When the AUTO HOLD is activated, the AUTO HOLD indicator lamp of the instrument cluster comes on.

### ■ Turning on and off AUTO HOLD

The AUTO HOLD can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 271)

### ■ AUTO HOLD function

- AUTO HOLD can also serve as a Hill Hold Control (HHC) function. However, on steep slopes, the AUTO HOLD may not stop the vehicle. In this case, it is necessary to apply the brake manually.
- After the AUTO HOLD is activated for a period of time, the EPB will take over the AUTO HOLD.

### ■ Operating conditions of AUTO HOLD

- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The AUTO HOLD function in the in-vehicle infotainment system is set to on.
- Depress the brake pedal deeply again after the vehicle is stopped; or directly depress the brake pedal deeply until the vehicle stops and then release the brake pedal.



**WARNING****■ Parking on slippery roads**

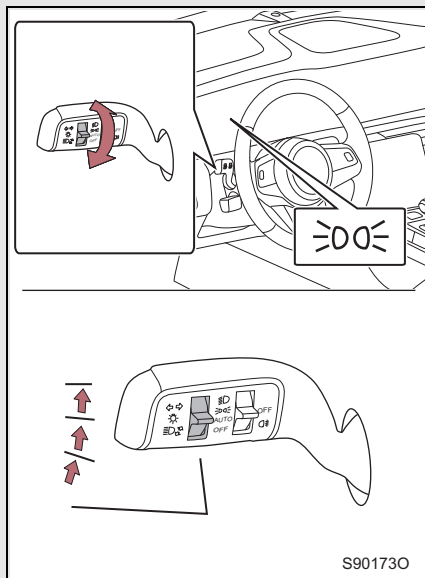
The AUTO HOLD does not prevent the vehicle from moving if the ground grip of the tires is exceeded. Do not use this system on slippery roads.

**CAUTION****■ When parking**

The AUTO HOLD cannot be used for long-term parking. If the vehicle needs to be parked for a long time, please apply the EPB.

## 4-3. Operating lamps and wipers

### Headlamp switch



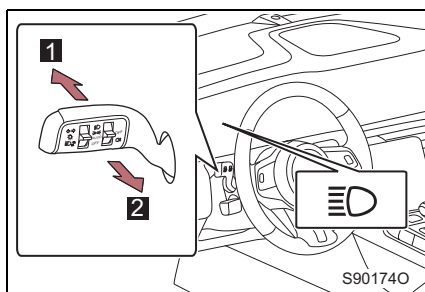
 The headlamp (low beams) and all following lamps are illuminated.

 Front position lamp, rear position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on.

AUTO The headlamp (low beam), position lamp, license plate lamp and instrument panel backlight come on and go out automatically.

OFF Turn off.

### Turning on high beam



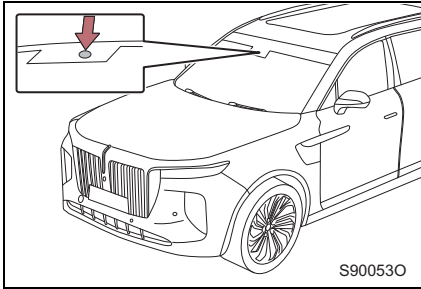
**1** When the headlamp (low beam) is turned on, push the lighting control lever forward to turn on the high beam; pull the lever back to its original position to turn off the high beam.

**2** Pull the lighting control lever backward to turn on the high beam; release the lighting control lever to turn off the high beam.

#### ■ Daytime running lamp system

During daytime driving, to make your vehicle more visible to other drivers, if power (ignition) switch is set to ON mode and the position lamps are off, the daytime running lamps will be turned on automatically.

#### ■ Rain/light sensor



If an object is placed on the sensor or adherent matter on the windshield obscures the sensor, the sensor may work abnormally. The above situations will affect the sensor's detection on ambient light intensity, which may prevent the automatic headlamp and automatic wiper from working properly.

#### ■ Automatic headlamp leveling system

The automatic headlamp leveling system can automatically adjust the headlamp beam height according to the number of occupants, the vehicle load and the road environment, so as to ensure that the headlamp will not interfere with other road users.

### Getting-off lighting system\*

With the power (ignition) switch placed in the ON mode and the low beam illuminated, the lamp continues to illuminate for a period of time after the power (ignition) switch is switched to OFF mode and then automatically goes off. The ON/OFF and lighting time of getting-off lighting can be set through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 273)

### Boarding lighting system\*

With the power (ignition) switch placed in the ON mode, the lamp switch set in the auto position and the low beam illuminated, lock the doors after switching to OFF mode, and the lights will illuminate for a period of time and then automatically goes off when unlocking the doors again. The turn-on/off and running time of boarding lighting can be set through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 273)

### Corner lamp

When the vehicle runs at a low speed with the headlamps turned on, if the driver operates the turn signal lamp switch or steering wheel for turning, the corner lamp on the corresponding side will automatically come on to assist the driver in driving. When the R gear is engaged, if the driver operates the turn signal lamp switch or steering wheel for turning, the corner lamps on both sides of the vehicle will come on at the same time to improve the lighting effect of surrounding area during reversing.

# ADB intelligent high beam control\*

The ADB IHC can automatically control the corresponding LED particles in the high beam to turn on or off according to the surrounding road conditions when the vehicle speed is greater than 40 km/h, thus providing the best view and ensuring the driving safety.

## IHC indicator lamp

- When the ADB system working indicator lamp  (white) on the instrument cluster multifunction display comes on, it indicates that IHC is on but does not meet the operating conditions and is standby.
- When the ADB system working indicator lamp  (blue) on the instrument cluster multifunction display comes on, it indicates that the intelligent high beam control is turned on and working.

## Enabling/disabling IHC

The IHC can be enabled and disabled through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 273)

### ■ Operating preconditions of IHC:

When all of the following conditions are met, IHC can work normally.

- The Intelligent high beam lamp is set to ON in the in-vehicle infotainment system.
- Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.
- Headlamp switch is set to AUTO position.
- The high beam switch handle is in the "high beam off" position.
- Rain/light sensor has no fault.
- ADB system has no fault.

### ■ Standby conditions of IHC

When any of the following conditions is met, the system enters the standby state and the high beam is completely turned off.

- The vehicle speed is less than 20 km/h.
- There are too many obstacles ahead, and ADB has failed to adjust adaptively.
- The low beam is turned off (automatically turned off at AUTO position, not manually turned off).

- The system recognizes that the environment is foggy.
- The area in front of the vehicle is brighter.

### ■ **Operating conditions of IHC:**

When all the following conditions are met, the system enters the working state, the high beam is turned on, and the lighting area is automatically adjusted.

- The vehicle speed is higher than 40 km/h.
- The low beam is turned on (automatically turned on at AUTO, not manually turned on);
- The system recognizes that there is no fog in the environment.
- The area in front of the vehicle is dark.
- There is no vehicle ahead with tail lamps on.
- There is no oncoming vehicle with headlamps on.
- There is no traffic sign on the road ahead.

### ■ **Under the following circumstances, the system may not accurately detect the ambient brightness level, which may prevent the IHC from working properly. In this case, switch the high beam and the low beam manually.**

- The rain/light sensor or ADAS camera is faulty.
- The front windshield is blurred by moisture, ice, dirt, etc.
- The front windshield is broken or damaged.
- The front view is unclear due to fog, heavy rain, snow and other reasons.
- The camera is deformed or dirty.
- The camera temperature is extremely high.
- The ambient brightness is equivalent to the brightness of headlamps, tail lamps or fog lamps.
- The headlamps or tail lamps of vehicle ahead are turned off, dirty, discolored or incorrectly aimed, or one of them is turned on.
- The vehicle runs through an area with intermittent changes in brightness.
- The vehicle runs on uphill and downhill roads, bumpy roads or uneven roads (e.g. stone-paved roads, and gravel roads) frequently or repeatedly.
- The vehicle makes turns or runs on winding roads frequently or repeatedly.
- There are highly reflective objects in front of the vehicle, such as signs or mirrors.
- The back of vehicle ahead is highly reflective, such as a container on the truck.
- Wet roads, snow roads, ice roads, etc. are reflective.
- The headlamps of the vehicle are damaged, dirty or incorrectly aimed.

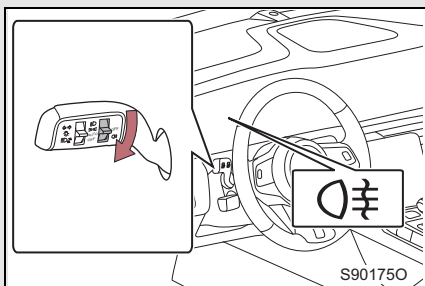
- The headlamps of opposite vehicle are turned off and its fog lamps are turned on.
- The vehicle is inclined due to flat tire, towing a trailer, etc.
- The high beam and low beam are switched repeatedly in an abnormal way.
- There is a lamp similar to the headlamps or tail lamps in front of the vehicle.

**WARNING**

- **Do not rely on the automatic high beam too much. Be sure to drive safely, observe the surrounding environment, and turn on or off the high beam manually if necessary.**

### Fog lamp switch

**The fog lamps improve visibility under unfavorable driving conditions, such as rainy days or fogging.**



Toggle the fog lamp switch down to turn on the rear fog lamp, toggle the switch again to turn off the rear fog lamp

---

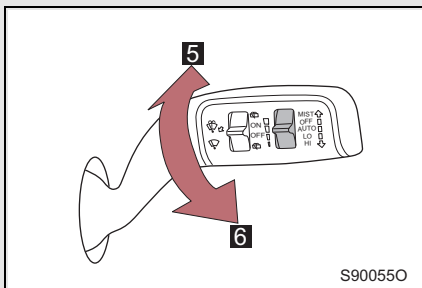
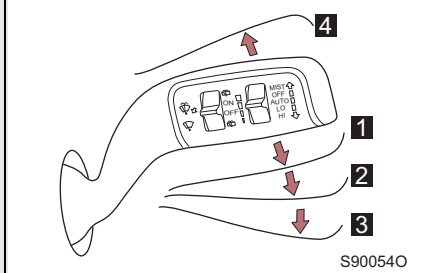
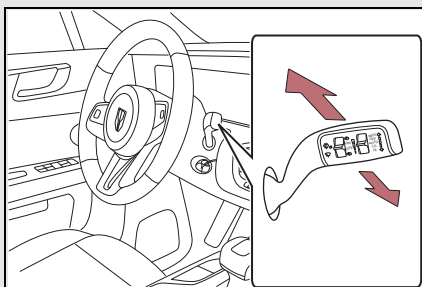
#### ■ Operating conditions of fog lamp

The power (ignition) switch is set to ON mode and the headlamps are turned on.



### Front windshield wiper & washer

**When the wiper control lever is in AUTO position, the wiper will automatically work if the rain/light sensor detects rain. The system automatically adjusts the wiper speed according to the rainfall and vehicle speed.**



**1** AUTO position - The wiper speed is automatically adjusted according to the rainfall.

**2** LO position - The wiper works at a low speed.

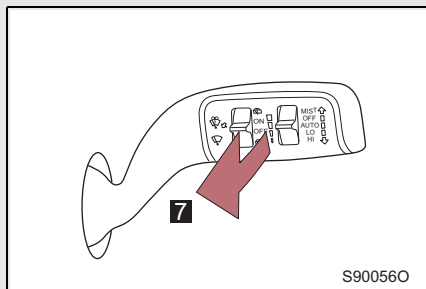
**3** HI position - The wiper works at a high speed.

**4** MIST position - The wiper works at a low speed for 1 cycle.

When the front compartment cover is open, the wiper will not work even if the control lever is pulled.

**5** The sensitivity on rainfall increases.

**6** The sensitivity on rainfall decreases.

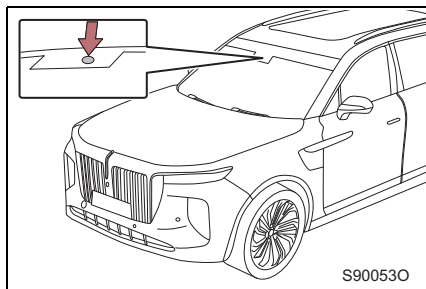


- 7** Cleaning/wiping operation.  
Pull back the wiper control lever to wash the front windshield.

### ■ Operating conditions of front windshield wiper & washer

The power (ignition) switch is set to ON mode and the front compartment cover is closed.

### ■ Rain/light sensor



The rain/light sensor determines the amount of rain.

### ■ If the windshield washer fluid cannot be sprayed out

Check whether there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir.  
Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked.

### ■ If the front windshield wiper blade needs to be replaced

- Set the wiper to the service position through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 269)
- Turn off the power (ignition) switch and switch the wiper control lever to MIST position within 10 seconds to set the wiper to the service position.
- When the wiper is in the service position, set the power (ignition) switch to ON mode, and move the wiper control lever to a position other than MIST or disable the wiper service position through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system, so as to disable the service position.

**WARNING****■ Warnings for using front windshield wiper in AUTO mode**

In AUTO mode, the front windshield wiper may work unexpectedly if the sensor is touched, the interior rearview mirror is pulled with force or the front windshield is strongly vibrated (for example, the front windshield is knocked with force). Be careful that your fingers or anything else are not pinched by the front windshield wiper.

**■ Precautions for use of washer fluid**

In cold weather, do not use the washer fluid before the front windshield is warmed. The washer fluid may freeze on the front windshield, resulting in reduced visibility. This may cause an accident that could result in serious injury or even death.

**■ Only the windshield washer fluid can be placed in the washer fluid reservoir**

It is dangerous to use coolant as washer fluid. If it is sprayed onto the windshield, it will stain the windshield, which could obstruct your view and may cause an accident.

**■ In freezing weather, always use windshield washer fluid mixed with antifreeze**

It is very dangerous to use windshield washer fluid without antifreeze in freezing weather, because it may freeze on the windshield, obstructing your view and thus causing an accident. In addition, before spraying washer fluid, make sure to fully heat the windshield with the defroster.

**■ The wiper blade should be replaced in time**

The use of worn or dirty wiper blade will greatly reduce the clarity of the front view and affect the driving safety. Therefore, it is necessary to replace the damaged or worn and inoperative wiper blade in time.



### CAUTION

■ **When the front windshield is dry**

Do not use the wiper; otherwise, the wiper blade may be damaged.

■ **When the washer fluid cannot be sprayed out of the nozzle**

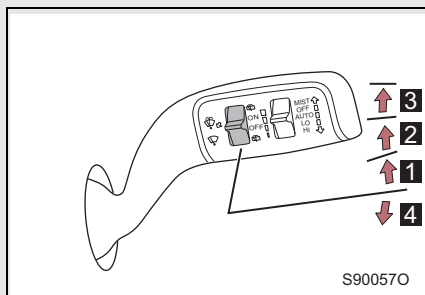
If the wiper control lever is pulled backward and held for a long time, it may cause damage to the washer fluid pump.

■ **When the nozzle is blocked**

Do not use needles or other objects to remove foreign matters without permission; otherwise, the nozzle will be damaged.

# Rear windshield wiper & washer

The wiper and washer can be operated by rotating the rear windshield wiper control lever to different positions.



- 1 Turn off.
- 2 Turn on the rear wiper.
- 3 Cleaning operation.  
After releasing the control lever, the wiper position is automatically restored.
- 4 Cleaning/wiping operation.  
After releasing the control handle, the off position is automatically restored.

### ■ Operating conditions of rear windshield wiper & washer

The power (ignition) switch is set to ON mode and the trunk lid is closed.

### ■ Automatic wiping in R gear

When the front windshield wiper is working, the rear windshield wiper is automatically turned on after the R gear is shifted.

### ■ If the windshield washer fluid cannot be sprayed out

Check whether there is washer fluid in the windshield washer fluid reservoir. Check that the washer nozzle is not blocked.



### WARNING

- It is forbidden to use windshield washer fluid with ethanol content exceeding 10%

In a high temperature environment, the windshield washer fluid with ethanol content exceeding 10% will corrode the tail lamps and cause cracks.



### CAUTION

■ **When the rear windshield is dry**

Do not use the wiper; otherwise, the wiper blade may be damaged.

■ **When the washer fluid cannot be sprayed out of the nozzle**

If the wiper control lever is rotated to washing position and held for a long time, it may cause damage to the washer fluid pump.

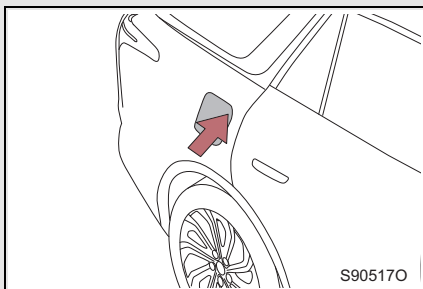
■ **When the nozzle is blocked**

Do not use needles or other objects to remove foreign matters without permission; otherwise, the nozzle will be damaged.

# Opening charging port cover

**Perform the following steps to open or close the charging port cover.**

## ■ Opening charging port cover

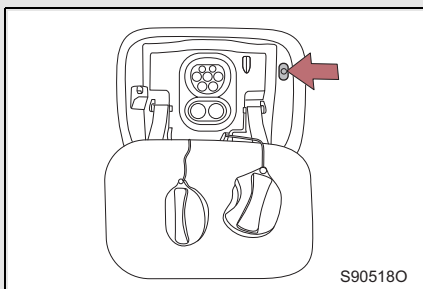


**Method 1:** When the vehicle is locked and the power (ignition) switch is set to OFF mode, carry the smart key with you, press the front end of the charging port cover, and it will open automatically; when the vehicle is unlocked, press the front end of the charging port cover, and it will open automatically.



**Method 2:** Touch the charging port cover switch in the charging settings of the multimedia system, and the charging port cover will open automatically.

## ■ Closing charging port cover



**Method 1:** Press the charging port cover close button, and the charging port cover will automatically close.



Method 2: When the charging port cover is opened, touch the charging port cover switch in the charging settings of the multimedia system, and the charging port cover will close automatically.

### CAUTION

#### ■ Precautions for opening/closing the charging port cover

- Do not push or pull forcefully during the opening and closing of the charging port cover, so as not to damage the charging port cover.
- When the charging port cover fails to reach the desired position, works reversely during the opening/closing process or does not act after pressing open button, press and hold the open/close button for 3 seconds to initialize. If the problem still cannot be solved after initialization, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- When the charging port cover cannot be opened due to icing around the cover caused by freezing rain, melting snow, or vehicle washing, it is recommended to move the vehicle to a warm environment to defrost and open it. If the problem cannot be solved, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

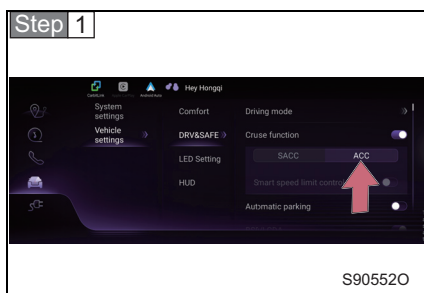


## Adaptive cruise control (ACC)

**ACC can comprehensively control the vehicle speed and the distance to the target vehicle within the speed range of 0~140 km/h, thus reducing the burden on the driver and increasing driving comfort. In addition, the system can automatically switch between cruise control and following cruise control based on the presence of a moving vehicle ahead. Because the actual driving environment is complex, in some cases, the driver can also intervene with the vehicle at any time as needed, and actively control the distance between the vehicle and the target vehicle. If necessary, ACC will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms.**

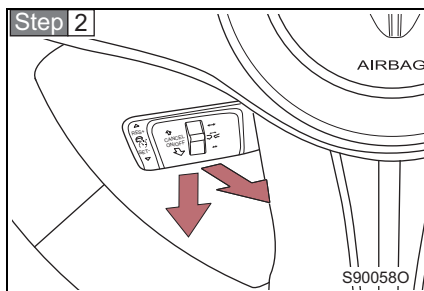
If ACC detects that the distance to the vehicle ahead is less than the set following distance, this vehicle automatically decelerates; if the vehicle ahead accelerates or leaves the lane, the vehicle can accelerate to the set cruising speed.

### ACC setting



The cruise function can be turned on through the vehicle settings interface of the multimedia system and set to ACC.

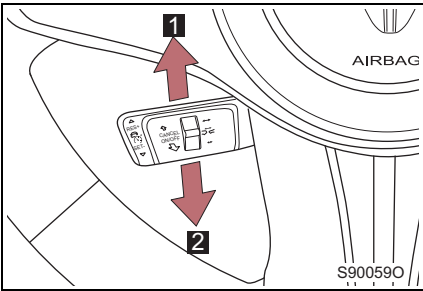
The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactivated.



When ACC white indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, accelerate or decelerate to the required vehicle speed, move the cruise control lever down to the "SET-" position or pull the cruise control lever backwards to the "ON/OFF" position, then release the lever. The ACC green indicator lamp

comes on, and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruising speed.

■ Adjusting vehicle speed

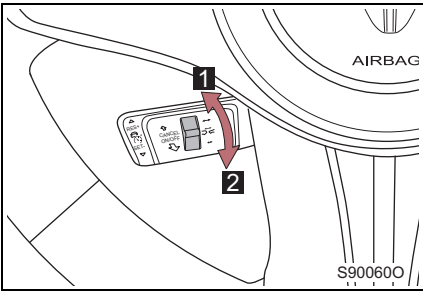


- 1 Increasing vehicle speed**  
Move: Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed increases by 5 km/h;  
Move and hold: After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h continuously.

- 2 Reducing vehicle speed**  
Move: Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed decreases by 5 km/h;  
Move and hold: After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h continuously.

Note: If the currently set vehicle speed is not a multiple of 5 when the lever is moved, it will automatically change to a multiple of 5 at first during adjustment.

■ Setting following distance



- 1 Increasing following distance**
- 2 Decreasing following distance**  
The system provides four distance modes. Each time the control lever is moved, one mode is switched.



### 1 Set cruising speed

### 2 ACC indicator lamp

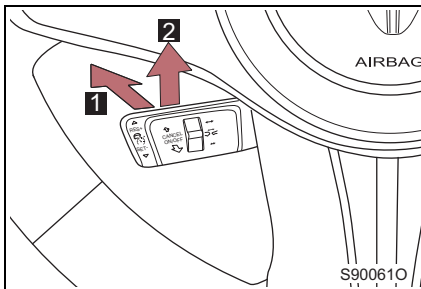
White: The system is enabled, the set conditions are met, and cruise control setting can be carried out.

Green: The system is working, and the cruise control mode is entered.

### 3 Set following distance

The default following distance is "Distance 4".

## Canceling and resetting ACC



### 1 Cancel

Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control lever forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release it to cancel the cruise control.

### 2 Reset

To reset the cruise control and return to the set speed, move the control lever upward to the "RES+" position and then release it.

## Noise during automatic deceleration by ACC

During automatic deceleration by ACC, noise may occur, which is normal.

## Following distance

The following distance is "Distance 4" by default.

## Setting conditions of cruise control

- The ESC is enabled.
- All doors and the front compartment cover are closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The D gear is engaged.
- The driver does not depress the brake pedal.
- The ADAS cameras are not blocked and function properly.

- ACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/HCU has no fault.
- AEB/APA is not activated.
- The vehicle is in long range/sport/comfort driving mode.

### ■ **Conditions of canceling cruise control**

- Move the cruise control lever to the "CANCEL" position.
- Depress the brake pedal or apply the EPB.
- Open any door or the front compartment cover.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- Depress the accelerator pedal for more than 1 minute.
- Set the shift lever to a position other than D.
- ESC is turned off.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/APA is activated.
- The relevant function of the system fails.

### ■ **ACC fault**

In the event of an alarm due to ACC fault, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for vehicle inspection.

### ■ **After turning off power (ignition) switch**

After the power (ignition) switch is turned off, the set cruising speed or following distance will be deleted.

### ■ **Adjusting or calibrating ACC**

Adjust or calibrate the ACC under the following conditions, otherwise the ACC may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

**WARNING**

- **To ensure driving safety, it is recommended that the set cruising speed should not exceed 140 km/h. It is very dangerous to use the cruise control during high-speed driving, so the driver is recommended to drive actively.**
- **Prevent accidental activation of ACC**  
When this function is not used, deactivate the cruise control.
- **Situations where ACC should not be used**  
To avoid the possibility of losing control of the vehicle and causing serious injury or death, do not use the ACC under any of the following conditions:
  - Traffic jams.
  - Complicated road conditions.
  - Sharp turns.
  - Winding roads.
  - Slippery roads (such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow).
  - Steep slopes.
  - There is a stationary obstacle in front of the vehicle.
  - Weather such as snow, rain, ice and dense fog.
  - Insufficient road illumination at night.
- **The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle, whose control on the vehicle takes precedence over the ACC. Even if the vehicle is in ACC mode, when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal or brake pedal, the vehicle will be under the control of the driver. The driver must always keep control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.**
- **ACC is only a driver assistance system. If necessary, the driver should immediately deactivate the ACC and drive by himself/herself. When using ACC, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions at that time.**



### WARNING

- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the ACC may not work properly.
- When leaving the driver seat for a long time, be sure to disable the ACC to avoid accidents caused by misoperation.
- When this vehicle follows the target vehicle for driving, the ACC mainly controls the following distance, and the actual speed of this vehicle may be lower than the set cruising speed.
- If the distance from the vehicle ahead is too close (for example, due to the sudden emergency braking of the vehicle ahead) in ACC mode, the system will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms through the instrument cluster, and the driver should pay attention to the distance and take over the vehicle at this time.
- When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal for active acceleration, the cruising speed icon displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display will flash, which is normal. At the same time, when the driver moves the cruise control lever to "SET-" position immediately after releasing accelerator pedal, the current vehicle speed can be set as the target cruising speed.
- When this vehicle enters or exits a curve or changes the lane, or when the vehicle ahead is stationary, the ACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle.
- The ACC cannot detect other sides than tail of the vehicle, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects or apply the brake for them. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.
- The ACC has limited braking capacity. It may have no time to slow down to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead when the vehicle ahead suddenly decelerates, stops or enters your lane. If a danger is felt, please actively depress the brake pedal for braking.
- During driving, the driver must remain fully attentive and always be prepared to take action and apply brake.
- The driver should adjust the following distance and reasonably set the ACC according to the traffic ahead and the current weather conditions (such as rain and snow). The driver needs to ensure that the vehicle can be decelerated to a stop within their field of view at all times.

**WARNING**

- The ACC can only recognize motor vehicles (such as vehicles and trucks) with legal license plates and be capable of driving on highways. If vehicles head have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle at any time according to the actual situation.
- The ACC may not accurately recognize large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle at any time according to the actual situation.
- The ACC cannot accurately determine the passing width of front lane. Therefore, if the driver feels that the front lane is too narrow for normal passage, they immediately deactivate the ACC through braking intervention and control the vehicle.
- Do not use the ACC on steep slopes. The ACC may not detect vehicles in the same lane, so the driver usually needs to control the acceleration and braking of the vehicle. If the brake is applied, the ACC will be deactivated.
- When a vehicle traveling in the same direction in the same lane is detected, a symbol of vehicle ahead will be displayed on the instrument cluster. If this symbol indication is inconsistent with the actual situation observed by the driver, the driver is responsible for taking over the vehicle and driving according to the actual situation.
- If a foot is placed on the accelerator pedal, the ACC may not automatically apply the brake, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead, so the driver should keep focused.
- The front bumper must not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!



## **WARNING**

- Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of ACC. In such weather, the driver must disable the ACC.
- If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the ACC may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.
- Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.
- When vehicles in the adjacent lane move in front of the direction of travel of this vehicle, if they do not enter the monitoring area, they could not be detected, thus resulting in a response lag of ACC. The driver should pay close attention to movements of vehicles in the adjacent lane and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly (for emergency stop), the ACC may be unable to respond or respond too slowly to the vehicle ahead, thus resulting in a risk of delayed braking. In this case, the driver may not receive a takeover request. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- When this vehicle follows the target vehicle and stops in ACC mode, it may start suddenly due to the blocked target vehicle, pedestrians passing by, etc. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.



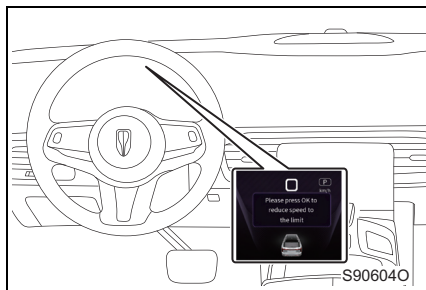
**CAUTION**

- **The ACC will control this vehicle at the set following distance from the target vehicle. If the target vehicle decelerates or stops, the ACC will control this vehicle to decelerate or stop automatically.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for no more than 3 seconds, this vehicle will start automatically under the control of ACC.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for more than 3 seconds but no more than 10 minutes, a message of resuming cruise control will be shown on the instrument cluster multi-function display of this vehicle, and the driver can resume the ACC by gently depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the cruise control lever to the "RES+" position, thus realizing automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to the front traffic conditions, so as to determine whether the vehicle can be safely started.**
- **When this vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the ACC will be automatically deactivated.**
- **The ACC cannot keep the vehicle braked for a long time. Do not leave the vehicle when the ACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Before leaving the vehicle, be sure to engage the P gear.**
- **During driving through a curve with ACC, pay attention to the followings:**
  - In sharp curves, the ACC may be deactivated or limit the speed.
  - On curves, the ACC may respond to vehicles in another lane, have no time to respond to vehicles in the same lane, make the vehicle collide with the front, or lose control of the vehicle; especially during driving on ramps, the ACC may lose its target due to large curve, thus causing acceleration. On curves, the driver must take extra care and always be ready for braking when necessary. During driving on curves, choose a proper speed.
- **When this vehicle passes through an intersection with traffic lights while following the vehicle ahead, the driver should pay attention to the change of traffic lights and actively intervene with the vehicle when necessary to avoid violating traffic rules.**
- **When this vehicle is in dense fog, rain, snow and other weather conditions, or when there are frost and dirt marks in the inspection window area of ADAS cameras, or when this vehicle is running in the direction of the sun (or strong light source), a message reading "Since the ADAS camera is blocked, please clean the windshield" may be displayed on the instrument cluster due to "limited field of view" of camera, and the ACC cannot work at this time.**

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Intelligent speed control system (IACC)

When cruise function of vehicle is activated, if the set cruise speed exceeds the road speed limit, IACC will remind the driver through the instrument cluster display. After manual confirmation, the road speed limit value will be used as the new cruise speed, which can reasonably control the vehicle driving speed and improve driving safety.



When the instrument cluster displays a pop-up window "Press OK, slowdown to the speed limit value", you can confirm that the current road speed limit is set to the ACC cruise speed by pressing the "OK" button on the steering wheel. If the vehicle speed has decreased to the current road speed limit or below before pressing the "OK" button, or if the "OK" button is not pressed after 5 seconds of the pop-up window, the pop-up window will automatically disappear.

#### Enabling/disabling intelligent speed control system (IACC)

The IACC can be enabled and disabled through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 272)

**WARNING**

- The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle, and must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- For scenes like heavy snow or rain, strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the IACC may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.
- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of IACC may degrade or fail.
- If front camera is shifted due to collision, IACC function may not work normally. Please calibrate the IACC system by driver in time.
- When traffic speed limit sign does not conform to the specified style or is not placed in the location specified by regulations, the system will fail to recognize it properly.

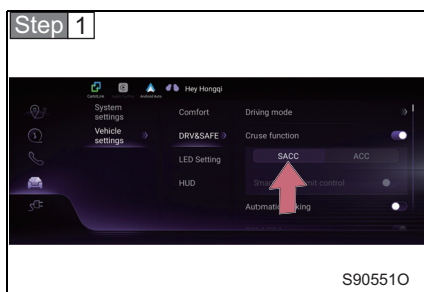
## 4-5. Using other driving systems

# Super adaptive cruise control (SACC)

Based on the ACC, SACC not only perform cruise and following functions, but also identify the lane markings through the ADAS camera. It can control the vehicle to drive along the center line of the lane, enhancing both driving comfort and safety.

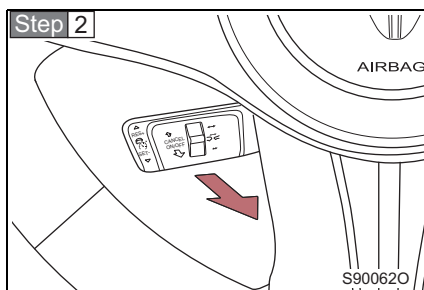
If SACC detects that the distance to the vehicle ahead is less than the set following distance, this vehicle automatically decelerates; if the vehicle ahead accelerates or leaves the lane, the vehicle can accelerate to the set cruising speed.

## SACC setting



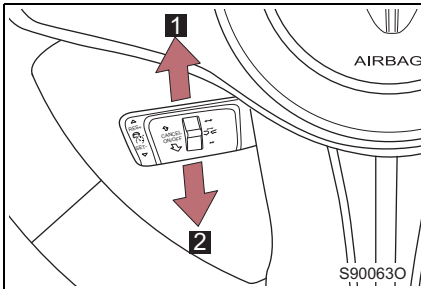
The cruise function can be turned on through the vehicle settings interface of the multimedia system and set to SACC.

The cruise mode can only be set when the system is inactivated.



When SACC white indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, accelerate or decelerate to the required vehicle speed, continuously pull the cruise control lever backwards twice to the "ON/OFF" position, and then release the lever, SACC green indicator lamp comes on, and the current vehicle speed can be set as the cruising speed.

## ■ Adjusting vehicle speed



### 1 Increasing vehicle speed

**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed increases by 5 km/h;

**Move and hold:** After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h continuously.

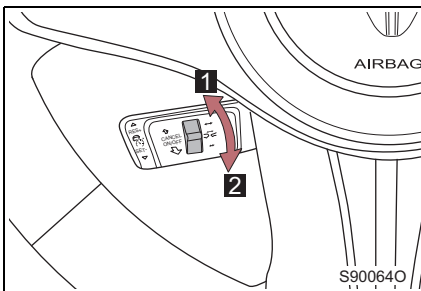
### 2 Reducing vehicle speed

**Move:** Each time it is moved, the vehicle speed decreases by 5 km/h;

**Move and hold:** After the system confirms that the moving and holding is valid, the vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h continuously.

**Note:** If the currently set vehicle speed is not a multiple of 5 when the lever is moved, it will automatically change to a multiple of 5 at first during adjustment.

## ■ Setting following distance



### 1 Increasing following distance

### 2 Decreasing following distance

The system provides four distance modes. Each time the control lever is moved, one mode is switched.



- 1 Set cruising speed
- 2 SACC indicator lamp

(Off) (off): System is in standby and does not meet the setting conditions.

(Off) (white): System turns on and ACC setting can be performed.

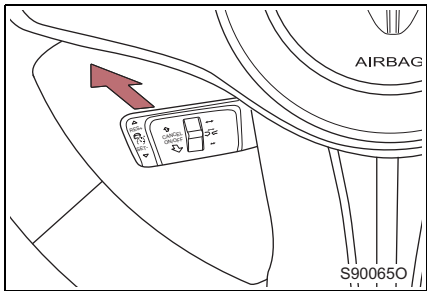
(White) (white): System turns on and SACC setting can be performed.

(Off) (green): System operates and enters ACC mode.

(Green) (green): System operates and enters SACC mode.

- 3 Set following distance  
The default following distance is "Distance 4".

Canceling SACC



Depress the brake pedal or push the cruise control lever forward to the "CANCEL" position and then release it to cancel the cruise control.

### ■ Switching between SACC and ACC

When ACC is working and SACC setting conditions are met, continuously pull the cruise control lever backwards twice to the "ON/OFF" position to switch to SACC mode.

When SACC is working, if driver operates the steering wheel or turn signal lamp switch, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if camera fails to recognize the lane markings ahead, and there is no stable following target in front, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if a sharp curve suddenly appears, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

When SACC is working, if camera detects that the lane markings are too wide or too narrow, and there is no stable following target in front, it will automatically switch to ACC mode.

### ■ Noise during automatic deceleration by SACC

When SACC performs automatic deceleration, noise may be produced, which is normal.

### ■ Following distance

The following distance is "Distance 4" by default.

### ■ Setting conditions of SACC

- The ESC is enabled.
- The cruise mode is set to SACC in the in-vehicle infotainment system.
- All doors and the front compartment cover are closed.
- The driver has fastened the seat belt.
- The D gear is engaged.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The ADAS cameras are not blocked and function properly.
- The lane markings are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.
- SACC/ESC/AEB/TCS/ABS/EPS/HCU has no fault.
- AEB/APA is not activated.
- The vehicle is in long range/sport/comfort driving mode.

### ■ Conditions of suspending SACC

- When overtaking, depress the accelerator pedal deeply and briefly for no more than 1 minute and resume SACC after releasing the accelerator pedal.

### ■ Conditions of canceling SACC

- Operate the cruise control lever to the "CANCEL" position.
- Depress the brake pedal or apply the EPB.
- Open any door or the front compartment cover.
- The driver unfastens the seat belt.
- The system judges that both hands are off the steering wheel for a certain period of time.
- Depress the accelerator pedal for more than 1 minute.
- Set the shift lever to a position other than D.
- ESC is turned off.
- ABS/TCS/ESC is activated.
- AEB/APA is activated.
- The relevant function of the system fails.

### ■ SACC fault

In the event of an alarm due to SACC fault, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for vehicle inspection.

### ■ After turning off power (ignition) switch

After the power (ignition) switch is turned off, the set cruising speed or following distance will be deleted.

### ■ Adjusting or calibrating SACC

Adjust or calibrate the SACC under the following conditions, otherwise the SACC may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



**WARNING**

■ **Prevent accidental activation of SACC**

When this function is not used, deactivate the cruise control.

■ **The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle, whose control on the vehicle takes precedence over the SACC. Even if the vehicle is in SACC mode, when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, brake pedal or operates the steering wheel, the vehicle will be under the control of the driver. The driver must always keep control of the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.**

■ **When driving on a repaired asphalt road or a road with strong light reflection, the vehicle may deviate from the driving lane. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.**

■ **Situations where SACC should not be used**

To avoid the possibility of losing control of the vehicle and causing serious injury or death, do not use the SACC under any of the following conditions:

- Traffic jams.
- Complicated road conditions.
- Sharp turns.
- Winding roads.
- Slippery roads (such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow).
- Steep slopes.
- There is a stationary obstacle in front of the vehicle.
- Weather such as snow, rain, ice and dense fog.
- Insufficient road illumination at night.
- The lane markings are not clear.

■ **When SACC is working, the driver should hold the steering wheel firmly with both hands to ensure driving safety.**

■ **SACC is only a driver assistance system. If necessary, the driver should immediately deactivate the SACC and drive by himself/herself. When using SACC, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road and weather conditions at that time.**

■ **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the SACC may not work properly.**



### WARNING

- When leaving the driver seat for a long time, be sure to disable the SACC to avoid accidents caused by misoperation.
- When this vehicle follows the target vehicle for driving, the SACC mainly controls the following distance, and the actual speed of this vehicle may be lower than the set cruising speed.
- If the distance from the vehicle ahead is too close (for example, due to the sudden emergency braking of the vehicle ahead) in SACC mode, the system will prompt the driver by audible and visual alarms through the instrument cluster, and the driver should pay attention to the distance and take over the vehicle at this time.
- When the driver takes over steering wheel for a short time or the lane markings disappear for a short time, the steering assist working indicator lamp on the instrument cluster multi-function display will flash, which is normal.
- Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.
- When the driver depresses the accelerator pedal for active acceleration, the cruising speed icon displayed on the instrument cluster multifunction display will flash, which is normal. At the same time, when the driver moves the cruise control lever to "SET-" position immediately after releasing accelerator pedal, the current vehicle speed can be set as the target cruising speed.
- When this vehicle enters or exits a curve or changes the lane, or when the vehicle ahead is stationary, the SACC may lose the target vehicle or misidentify the target vehicle.
- The SACC cannot detect other sides than tail of the vehicle, children, pedestrians, animals or other objects or apply the brake for them. At this time, the driver must drive carefully.
- The SACC has limited braking capacity. It may have no time to slow down to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead when the vehicle ahead suddenly decelerates, stops or enters your lane. If a danger is felt, please actively depress the brake pedal for braking.
- During driving, the driver must remain fully attentive and always be prepared to take action and apply brake.

**WARNING**

- The driver should adjust the following distance and reasonably set the SACC according to the traffic ahead and the current weather conditions (such as rain and snow). The driver needs to ensure that the vehicle can be decelerated to a stop within their field of view at all times.
- The SACC can only recognize motor vehicles (such as vehicles and trucks) with legal license plates and be capable of driving on highways. If vehicles head have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle at any time according to the actual situation.
- The SACC may not accurately recognize large trailers. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle at any time according to the actual situation.
- The SACC cannot accurately determine the passing width of front lane. Therefore, if the driver feels that the front lane is too narrow for normal passage, they immediately deactivate the SACC through braking intervention and control the vehicle.
- Do not use the SACC on steep slopes. The SACC may not detect vehicles in the same lane, so the driver usually needs to control the acceleration and braking of the vehicle. If the brake is applied, the SACC will be deactivated.
- When a vehicle traveling in the same direction in the same lane is detected, a symbol of vehicle ahead will be displayed on the instrument cluster. If this symbol indication is inconsistent with the actual situation observed by the driver, the driver is responsible for taking over the vehicle and driving according to the actual situation.
- If a foot is placed on the accelerator pedal, the SACC may not automatically apply the brake, resulting in a collision with the vehicle ahead, so the driver should keep focused.
- The front bumper must not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!



### WARNING

- Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of SACC. In such weather, the driver must disable the SACC.
- If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the SACC may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.
- When vehicles in the adjacent lane move in front of the direction of travel of this vehicle, if they do not enter the monitoring area, they could not be detected, thus resulting in a response lag of SACC. Meanwhile, when the lane marking information quality of this lane is poor and this vehicle follows the vehicle ahead in SACC mode, the system may not be able to detect nearby vehicles on the left and right sides. The driver needs to pay close attention to the movements of vehicles in adjacent lane and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly (for emergency stop), the SACC may be unable to respond or respond too slowly to the vehicle ahead, thus resulting in a risk of delayed braking. In this case, the driver may not receive a takeover request. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- When this vehicle follows the target vehicle and stops in SACC mode, it may start suddenly due to the blocked target vehicle, pedestrians passing by, etc. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.

**CAUTION**

- **The SACC will control this vehicle at the set following distance from the target vehicle. If the target vehicle decelerates or stops, the SACC will control this vehicle to decelerate or stop automatically.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for no more than 3 seconds, this vehicle will start automatically under the control of SACC.**
- **When the target vehicle restarts or leaves the lane after stopping for more than 3 seconds but no more than 10 minutes, a message of resuming cruise control will be shown on the instrument cluster multifunction display of this vehicle, and the driver can resume the SACC by gently depressing the accelerator pedal or moving the cruise control lever to the "RES+" position, thus realizing automatic starting. At this time, the driver should pay attention to the front traffic conditions, so as to determine whether the vehicle can be safely started.**
- **When this vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the SACC will be automatically deactivated.**
- **The SACC cannot keep the vehicle braked for a long time. Do not leave the vehicle when the SACC keeps the vehicle stopped. Before leaving the vehicle, be sure to engage the P gear.**
- **During driving through a curve with SACC, pay attention to the followings:**
  - In sharp curves, the SACC may be deactivated or limit the speed.
  - On curves, the SACC may respond to vehicles in another lane, have no time to respond to vehicles in the same lane, make the vehicle collide with the front, or lose control of the vehicle; especially during driving on ramps, the SACC may lose its target due to large curve, thus causing acceleration. On curves, the driver must take extra care and always be ready for braking when necessary. During driving on curves, choose a proper speed.
  - In a curve, too small road radius may affect the judgment of SACC on the lane markings. Drive with caution on curves.



### CAUTION

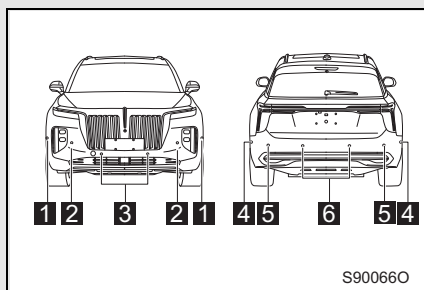
- When this vehicle passes through an intersection with traffic lights while following the vehicle ahead, the driver should pay attention to the change of traffic lights and actively intervene with the vehicle when necessary to avoid violating traffic rules.
- When this vehicle is in dense fog, rain, snow and other weather conditions, or when there are frost and dirt marks in the inspection window area of ADAS cameras, or when this vehicle is running in the direction of the sun (or strong light source), a message reading "Since the ADAS camera is blocked, please clean the windshield" may be displayed on the instrument cluster due to "limited field of view" of camera, and the SACC cannot work at this time.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Front and rear parking radar

The front and rear parking radar system comprises of a control unit and ultrasonic sensors. These sensors can measure the distance between the vehicle and obstacles. According to the change of the distance from obstacles within the detection area, the speaker sounds at different frequencies, and at same time, the multimedia display screen displays information about the distance and orientation of the obstacle. When using the system, be sure to pay attention to the surrounding area.

#### ■ Sensor type



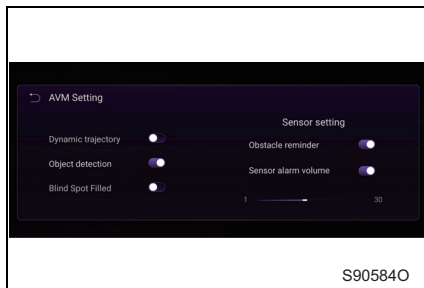
- 1 Front side radar sensor
- 2 Front corner radar sensor
- 3 Front central radar sensor
- 4 Rear side radar sensor
- 5 Rear corner radar sensor
- 6 Rear central radar sensor

#### ■ Turning on and off parking radar



When the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, press the radar/image button, the button comes on and parking radar is turned on; press the radar/image button again, the button goes off and parking radar is turned off.

### Radar setting



The radar alarm volume and the automatic radar can be set in the AVM interface of multimedia system.

#### ■ When setting the automatic radar to ON

- When the shift lever is set to D/N position and the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, if there are obstacles within 80 cm, the radar warning screen will pop up on the multimedia display. Click the Back button to exit the radar prompt. At this time, the automatic turn-on function of the front radar is disabled during this ignition cycle.

Note: The radar does not give an alarm when the shift lever is in N position and the vehicle is stationary.

- When the shift lever is set to R position, the parking radar system is turned on. At this time, the parking radar system can be turned off by pressing the radar/image button.
- After the parking radar system is turned on, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit. When the vehicle speed is lower than 10 km/h, the parking radar system will work again.

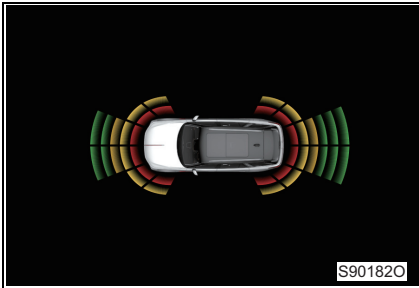
#### ■ When setting the automatic radar to OFF

- When the shift lever is set to R position, the parking radar system is turned on. At this time, the parking radar system can be turned off by pressing the radar/image button.
- After the system is turned on and the shift lever is set to R position, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit and when the vehicle speed is lower than 10 km/h, the parking radar system will work again; if the shift lever is set to D position, when the vehicle speed is higher than 15 km/h, the system will exit and do not automatically resume.



## Display

- When an obstacle is detected



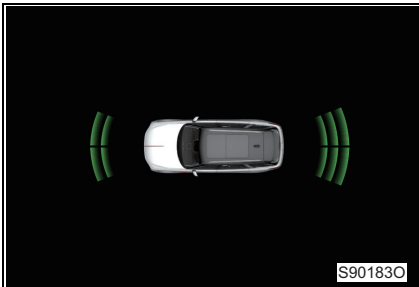
When the radar sensor detects an obstacle, corresponding image is displayed on the multimedia display according to the position and distance to the obstacle.

The slow-moving area, warning area and danger area are indicated in green, yellow and red respectively.

## Obstacle distance detection

When an obstacle is detected, the color block corresponding to the sensor will continuously illuminate.

- Parking slow-moving area information indication of central radar sensor



Front central radar sensor

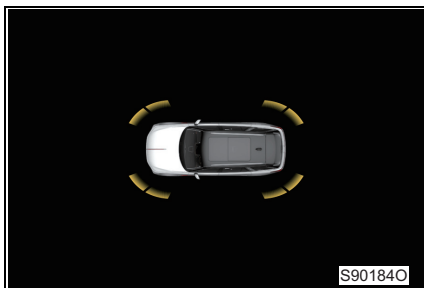
The distance from the obstacle is 80 ~ 120 cm

Rear central radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 80 ~ 150 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a green indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

- Warning area information indication of side/corner radar sensor for parking



### Corner radar sensor

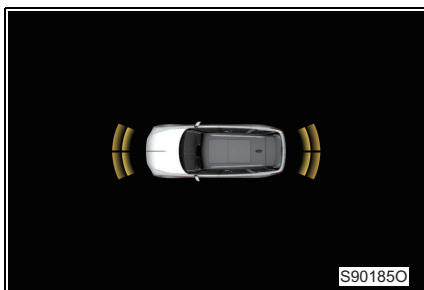
The distance from the obstacle is 40 ~ 60 cm

### Side radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 30 ~ 60 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a yellow indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

- Parking warning area information indication of central radar sensor

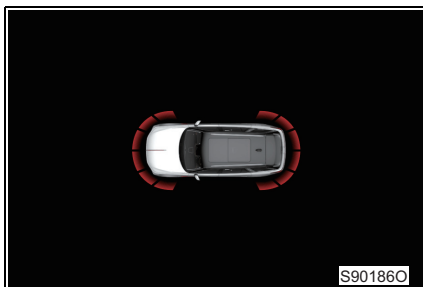


### Central radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is 40 ~ 80 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a yellow indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker sounds to warn the driver.

## ■ Parking danger area information indication of radar sensor



Central/corner radar sensor

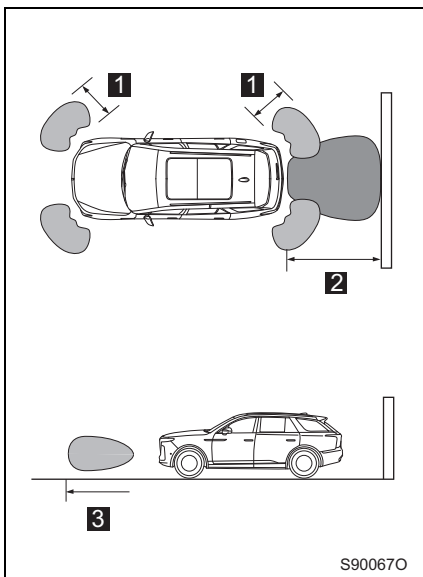
The distance from the obstacle is  
1 ~ 40 cm

Side radar sensor

The distance from the obstacle is  
1 ~ 30 cm

If the obstacle is detected within these range, a red indicator bar is indicated on the multimedia display screen and the speaker continuously sounds to warn the driver.

## Farthest detection distance of sensors



**1** About 60 cm

**2** About 150 cm

**3** About 120 cm

The figure shows the farthest distance detected by radar sensors. (Note: Radar sensors cannot detect obstacles that are extremely close to the vehicle.)

Depending on the shape of the obstacle, the detection range of the radar sensors may vary.

---

### ■ Detection information of sensors

- Certain vehicle conditions and surrounding environments may affect the sensor's ability to correctly detect obstacles. For example:
  - There is dirt, snow or ice on the sensors.
  - Sensors are obscured.
  - The vehicle is obviously tilted.
  - The vehicle is on particularly bumpy roads, slopes, gravel roads or grass.
  - There is a lot of noise in the vicinity of the vehicle, such as sounds from vehicle horns, motorcycle engines and pneumatic braking of large vehicles or other strong noises that can produce ultrasonic waves.
  - There is another vehicle equipped with parking assist sensors nearby, and the sensors are working.
  - The vehicle is equipped with a fender antenna mast or wireless antenna.
  - The vehicle is equipped with a towing eye.
  - Bumpers or sensors are strongly impacted.
  - The vehicle is approaching a high or bent curb.
  - In hot or cold weather.

In addition to the above cases, traffic signs and other objects may sometimes be judged by sensors as being closer than their actual distance due to their specific shape.

- The shape of an obstacle may prevent the sensors from detection, especially the following obstacles.
  - Wires, fences, ropes, etc.
  - Cotton, snow and other materials that absorb radio waves.
  - Objects with sharp edges and corners.
  - Low obstacles.
  - High obstacles with the upper part extending toward the vehicle.

**WARNING****■ Warnings for using the front and rear parking radar**

To avoid accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not install anything within the working range of the sensors.
- Parking radar system is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully. When necessary, intervene proactively to avoid danger.
- The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle, and must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- When the vehicle speed is too fast, the system will exit. The driver must drive carefully.

**CAUTION****■ Precautions for vehicle washing**

Do not flush the sensors with water or steam. Otherwise, the sensors may fail.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Around view monitor (AVM)

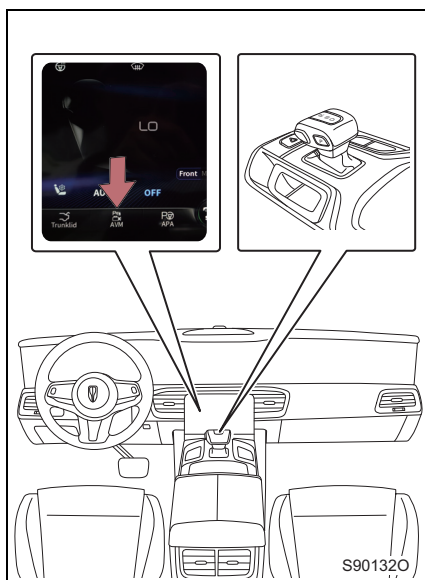
The AVM gives indications through in-vehicle infotainment system display, which is convenient for the driver to clearly view and understand the surrounding conditions of the vehicle, and at the same time judge the relative orientation and distance of obstacles, so as to achieve safe and easy parking.

The images used in this section are examples only and may differ from those actually indicated in the vehicle.

#### Activating and deactivating AVM

##### ■ Activation

There are two methods to enter the AVM:



Method 1: Set the shift lever to R position to activate the AVM.

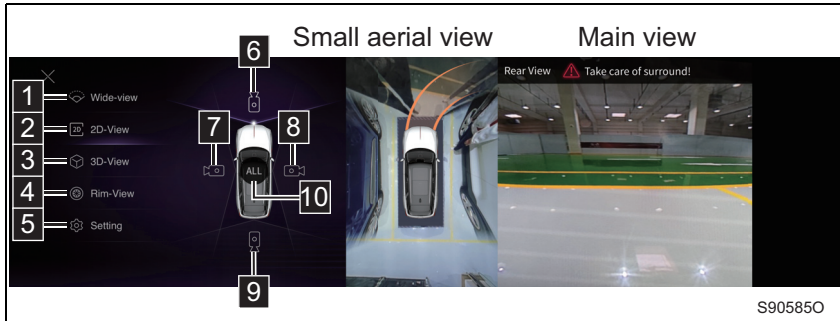
Method 2: When the vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h, press the radar/image button to activate the AVM.

##### ■ Deactivation

Press radar/image button or touch screen button  $\times$ , or vehicle speed exceeds 15 km/h when shift lever is in D/R, exit the AVM.

## Screen modes of AVM

The AVM features several screen modes. The driver can choose the corresponding mode based on specific needs.



### 1 Wide-angle view

It is selectable in the front and rear view modes, switch the main view and small aerial view to wide-angle view after selecting, in which you can see a nearly 180° picture.

### 2 2D view

Display plane image, in 2D mode, the front view, rear view, left view, right view and large aerial view can be checked.

### 3 3D view

Display the 360° stereo image around the vehicle, and drag to display.

### 4 Tire view

It is selectable in the front and rear view modes, and left view, right view and small aerial view are displayed after selecting.

### 5 Setting

The alarm sound switch, dynamic trajectory, object detection, underbody blind spot filling, automatic radar and radar alarm volume can be set.

- Turn at low speed triggers AVM: When shift lever is set to D/R/N and the vehicle speed is lower than 15 km/h, turning on the turn signal lamp or turning the steering wheel will wake up the AVM and enter the top view and wheel side view interfaces.
- Dynamic trajectory: Parking assist line will be displayed after selecting.

- **Object detection:** After turning on, it can detect the dynamic objects within 3 m in the front and behind the vehicle and 5 m to the left and right.
- **Underbody blind spot filling:** After enabled, as the vehicle moves, the blind spot under the vehicle is filled with visual image to achieve the visual effect at the bottom.
- **Obstacle reminder at low speed:** Set whether the front radar automatically gives an alarm during driving.
- **Radar alarm volume:** Select to turn on or off the radar alarm tone. After turning it on, the volume of radar alarm tone can be adjusted by dragging.

### 6 Front view

Display the front view and aerial view.

### 7 Left view

Display the left view and aerial view.

### 8 Right view

Display the right view and aerial view.

### 9 Rear view

Display the rear view and aerial view.

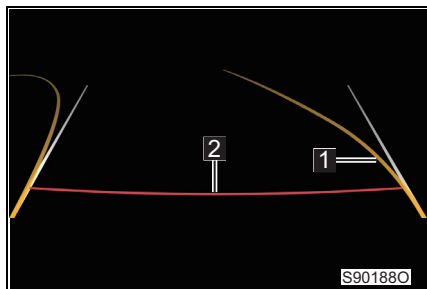
### 10 Large aerial view

Switch the main view and small aerial view to large aerial view.

When the turn signal lamps are turned on, the screen mode is automatically switched to the corresponding left and right views and aerial view. When the turn signal lamps are turned off, the previously selected screen mode is restored.

## Parking assist line

The indication on the screen assists the driver in complete parking, and the parking guide lines are dynamically adjusted according to different angles of the vehicle.



### 1 Parking guide line

It represents the expected vehicle trajectory as the steering wheel rotates.

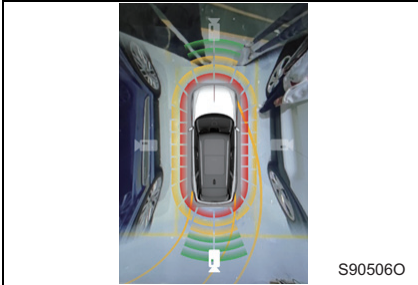
### 2 Distance guide line

Indicates the distance line 50 cm from rear edge of bumper.



## Side collision prevention object recognition

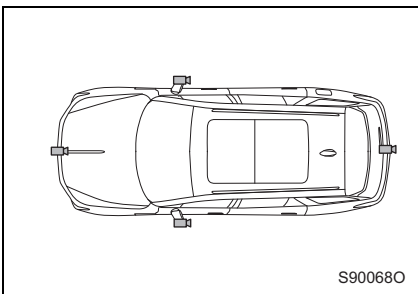
After activating the image system, drive the vehicle at low speed. When the radar sensor detects an obstacle, the vehicle calculates and displays the corresponding alarm images based on information such as the position of obstacle, distance to the obstacle and the current vehicle speed.



When the distance between the obstacle and the side of vehicle is 30 - 60 cm, the system displays a second level alarm (yellow).

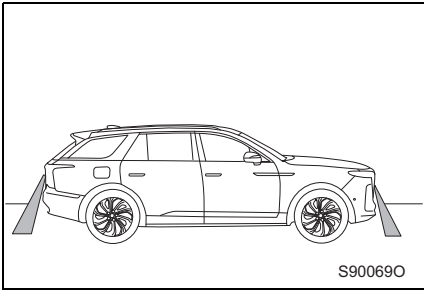
When the distance between the obstacle and the side of vehicle is less than 30 cm, the system displays a first level alarm (red).

## Around view camera



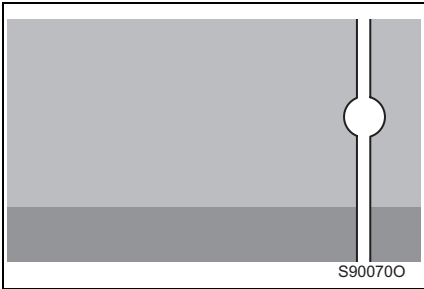
Around view cameras are installed at the front grille, trunk lid and left and right external rearview mirrors respectively.

When the image cannot be spliced normally due to door opening, the corresponding area is grayed out for prompting. When the camera cannot transmit the image normally, the corresponding area is blacked out with a prompt message.



The area that the camera can monitor is limited. Objects near the corners of the bumpers or under the bumpers are not displayed on the screen.

The area displayed on the screen may change with the vehicle direction or the road conditions.



If the cameras receive strong light (for example, sunlight reflected by the vehicle body), they may produce the smear effect\*<sup>1</sup> unique to the camera.

\*<sup>1</sup>: When the cameras are used to transmit images, the light source seems to have a vertical stripe extending up and down.

**WARNING****■ The AVM is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much.**

- The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle, and must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- Please drive carefully and visually confirm the situation around the vehicle. It is very dangerous to reverse only by observing the display screen, which may lead to accidents or collisions with objects. The AVM is only a visual auxiliary system. The image on the display screen may be different from the actual situation.

**■ When using AVM**

Please observe the following precautions to avoid serious personal injury or even death.

- Do not rely solely on the AVM when reversing.
- Visually check and confirm through the rearview mirror that the selected path is clear.
- The displayed distance between the object and the plane may be different from the actual distance.
- The aerial view of AVM can only show close objects, and the cameras will not show objects outside the field of view.
- The object detection function can only detect low-speed moving objects, and some objects may be missed during detection. Please remain vigilant during driving.
- Do not use this system when the cameras can not work normally.



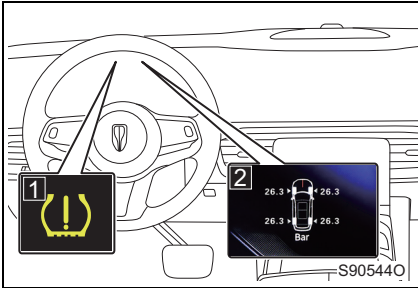
### WARNING

#### ■ Conditions affecting AVM

- If the vehicle is hit, the position and mounting angle of the camera may change. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for vehicle inspection.
- If the temperature changes sharply, for example, when the vehicle is splashed with hot water in cold weather, this system may not work properly.
- If the camera is dirty, it may not transmit a clear image. Rinse it with water and wipe it clean with a soft cloth. If the camera is very dirty, clean it with neutral detergent and wipe it.
- When the system temperature is low, the displayed image may darken and the moving image may be slightly distorted.
- Under the conditions of rain, snow, fog and low visibility, the camera image may not be clear.
- Situations where AVM should not be used
  - On icy, slippery or snowy roads.
  - Tire chains or an emergency spare tire are used.
  - On an uneven or bended road, such as a bend or slope.
- If the tire is changed, the guide line position indicated on the display screen may deviate. For tire change, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Depending on the vehicle conditions (number of occupants or luggage, etc.), the guide line position indicated on the display screen may change. Before operation, make sure to visually check the conditions behind and around the vehicle.

# Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS)

The TPMS can monitor and check the tire pressure, and automatically issue an alarm when the tire pressure is lower than the limit.



- 1 Tire pressure abnormal/ system fault warning lamp
- 2 Tire pressure information

## Operating condition of system

| Vehicle status            | Alarm                                                                                                 |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Tire pressure is abnormal | The system fault warning lamp makes an alarm                                                          |
| The TPMS is not working   | The system fault warning lamp comes on, and accompanied by a text indication that the TPMS is invalid |

### Tire pressure sensor matching

After wheel replacement or tire rotation, it is necessary to configure the TPMS. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions for TPMS

- This system cannot prevent tire deflation and bursting. It is mainly used to give an alarm when it monitors that the tire pressure is lower than a set value.
- In winter, the tire pressure should be adjusted in time. Because the atmospheric temperature drops in winter, the tire pressure may decrease or fall below the alarm value. When the tire pressure decreases below the alarm value, an alarm will be issued.

#### ■ Situation in which TPMS cannot work properly

This system can make judgments based on subtle changes in tires. However, it sometimes cannot work properly under the following conditions.

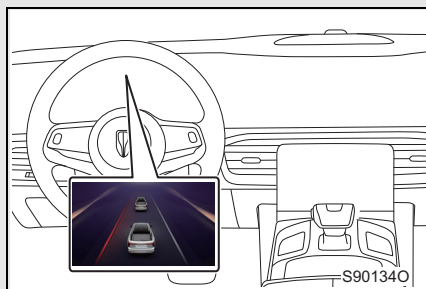
- Four tires are not of the same size, manufacturer, brand and pattern, or they have significantly different wear degrees (the same for winter tires).
- Emergency tires, snow tires and tire chains are used.
- Tires with pressure significantly higher than the specified value are installed, or tire pressure drops rapidly due to tire burst (rupture).

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Lane departure warning/lane keeping assist (LDW/LKA)

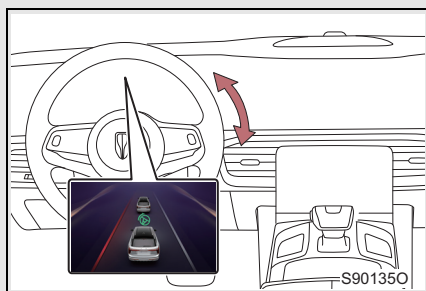
The LDW/LKA can detect the driver's status and the vehicle's driving status when the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h. When the LDW/LKA judges that the driver's non-subjective intention (such as chatting, distraction, operating in-vehicle infotainment system, etc.) causes the vehicle to depart from the lane, it will give a warning or alarm and correction prompt to prevent danger and traffic violation.

#### ■ Lane departure warning (LDW)



When the system judges that the vehicle departs from the lane, the line on the corresponding side turns red and flashes, and a warning sound is issued at the same time.

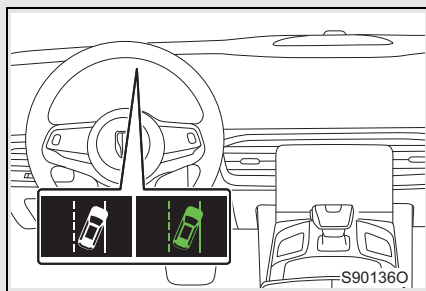
#### ■ Lane keeping assist (LKA)



When the system judges that the vehicle departs from the lane, the line on the corresponding side turns red and flashes, and at the same time, a warning sound is issued and the steering wheel also corrects automatically.

### ■ LDW/LKA settings

The LDW/LKA can be turned on/off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. After the system is turned on, the alarm mode can be selected as alarm only or alarm + correction and the LDW sensitivity can be set at the same time. (See P. 271)



When the system is turned on, the LKA indicator lamp (white) on the instrument cluster comes on. When the system is turned off, the indicator lamp goes out.

When the system is turned on, the vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h, and the system recognizes a valid lane marking, the LKA indicator lamp (green) on the instrument cluster comes on.

### ■ Operating conditions of LDW/LKA:

- The vehicle speed is higher than 60 km/h.
- The lane markings are clear and meet the requirements of national standards.
- The system cameras are not blocked.

### ■ The system will suppress the alarm even if the vehicle departs from the lane under the following conditions:

- The driver turns the steering wheel to pass a bend.
- The vehicle keeps driving on the lane marking.
- Within 3 seconds after the previous alarm is issued.
- The turn signal lamp switch is turned on or returned within 3 seconds.

### ■ The system will not make corrections automatically even if the vehicle departs from the lane under the following conditions:

- The driver operates the turn signal lamps and steering wheel.
- The lane marking on one side or both sides disappears.



■ **The LDW/LKA may not work properly under the following conditions:**

- Cameras are blocked by snow, ice, dust or stains on the front windshield.
- The weather causes low visibility, such as heavy fog, heavy rain, heavy snow, etc.
- The road is covered by vehicles or other obstacles.
- The road has a narrow width or the bend curvature is too large.
- The line of sight of the system cameras is blocked.
- When driving towards strong light.
- In complex lane marking conditions, such as diverging/merging, construction area, etc.
- Misrecognition may be caused when there are bridge cables or tree shadows on the road surface.
- When the light is dim or the lane markings are blurred at night.
- The vehicle speed is less than 60 km/h.
- The lane markings do not meet the requirements of national standards.
- The brightness of the external environment of the vehicle suddenly changes, for example, entering a tunnel.

■ **When the ADAS camera unit or front windshield are replaced or when the four-wheel alignment is performed, the system needs to be recalibrated, otherwise it will not work normally. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**



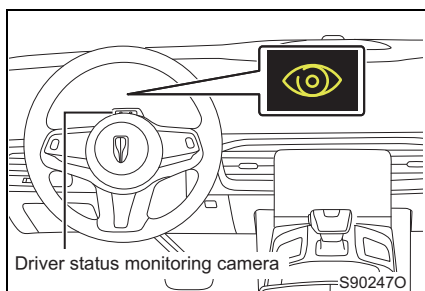
## **WARNING**

- The LDW/LKA is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle, whose control on the vehicle takes precedence over the LDW/LKA. The driver must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.
- Stop using the system when road and environmental factors may cause the system not to work properly.
- To prevent disturbance to the driver, the system will not give an alarm when the activation conditions of the LDW/LKA are not met.
- Incorrect calibration of the LDW/LKA may result in misrecognition of other lanes, and even cause accidents.
- The LDW/LKA can recognize lane markings and curbs with certain contrast. However, it may not recognize lane markings and curbs accurately or even fail to do so if they are blurred or stained, and may make false recognition of some wheel traces, watermarks or shadows exhibiting significant color differences and contrast on the road.

### Driver status monitor (DSM)\*

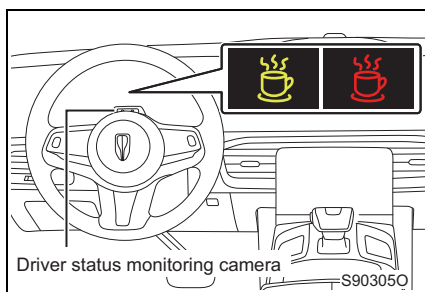
**DSM mainly judges the current state of the driver through comprehensive information related to vehicle. Vehicle equipped with DSM camera can also perform further judgment in combination with the current facial state of driver. When signs of driver fatigue or lack of attention are detected, it will give timely alarm to reduce the risk of road traffic accidents.**

#### ■ Distraction alarm



When the system determines that the driver has a distracted intention, the yellow indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, and sound and text reminders will be given at the same time.

#### ■ Fatigue alarm



When the system determines that the driver may be in a relatively light abnormal driving status at present, the yellow indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on, and sound and text reminders will be given at the same time.

When the system determines that the driver may be in a serious abnormal driving status at present, the red indicator lamp on the instrument cluster flashes, and sound and text reminders will be given at the same time.

### Turning on/off DSM

The DSM can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 273)

#### ■ Operating conditions of DSM

DSM is activated when all of the following conditions are met:

- DSM is set to ON in the in-vehicle infotainment system;
- Sit in the driver seat correctly;
- Shift lever is in D;
- The vehicle speed is not less than 15 km/h;
- DSM related systems have no fault.

#### ■ The system will not give an alarm even if DSM is turned on under the following conditions:

- The eyeglass frame can easily block the sight, resulting in unrecognizable eye information and function may be limited at this time.
- The vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h or drops below 10 km/h after exceeding 15 km/h.
- The head deviates from the camera area and no facial features of the driver are detected.
- The steering wheel angle is too large to block the camera.

#### ■ DSM has limited functionality under the following special working conditions:

- When strong light shines on the driver's glasses, the lens reflects onto the infrared area of the camera, causing the loss of eye coordinates and limiting the DSM function.
- When the camera is obstructed, the instrument cluster prompts a camera fault message. This situation is not a system fault, and if the obstruction disappears in a short period of time, the system will restore its function; If it is obstructed for a long time, it will cause the system to turn off automatically.
- During the current driving cycle, if DSM turns off automatically due to other related systems, when other system faults are repaired, DSM will turn on automatically.

#### ■ When the ADAS camera unit or front windshield are replaced or when the four-wheel alignment is performed, the system needs to be recalibrated, otherwise it will not work normally. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

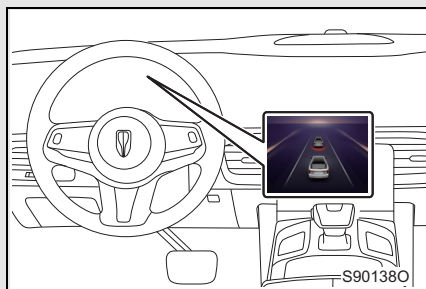
**WARNING**

- The DSM is only a driver assistance system. It can only give warnings for the abnormal driving status of the driver, but cannot directly interfere with the vehicle. The driver must consider the warnings and control the steering wheel by himself/herself to ensure the normal driving of the vehicle.
- Due to road and environmental factors, the DSM may not normally judge the driver's abnormal driving status. The driver must abide by traffic regulations, stop and rest in time according to own conditions to ensure driving safety.
- If the DSM is not calibrated correctly, it may cause misjudgment and even cause accidents.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Forward collision warning (FCW)

The system automatically judges the collision risk level through the relative distance, relative speed and relative acceleration between the vehicle and the target vehicle. If the conditions are met, the system will give an alarm.

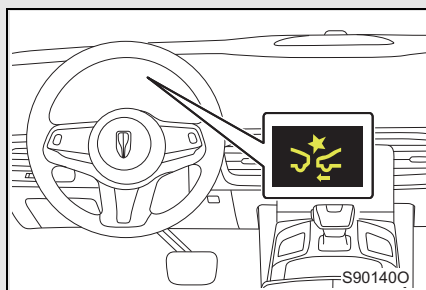


When the system judges that collision may occur, the instrument cluster displays alarm information and issues an audible alarm.

For the target vehicle, when the collision risk level goes up, the system will provide a braking reminder similar to the snub braking effect.

#### ■ Turning on/off FCW

The FCW can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. It is turned on by default. (See P. 271)



When the system is turned off, the instrument cluster will display the FCW OFF indicator lamp.

### ■ Adjusting or calibrating FCW

Adjust or calibrate the FCW under the following conditions, otherwise the FCW may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### WARNING

- To ensure driving safety, occupants in the vehicle must fasten their seat belts!
- The FCW is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the FCW too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The FCW only gives an early warning of collision danger. The driver must control the brake pedal or steering wheel to prevent collision.
- The FCW may not recognize modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- As the FCW obtains information by recognizing the rear of other vehicles, it will not give an alarm for oncoming vehicles and front crossing vehicles.
- In complex traffic conditions, the FCW may experience delays in recognizing vehicles, leading to delayed alarms.
- On curved roads, hill roads or extremely bumpy roads, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead. The driver must drive carefully.
- The FCW system is a warning system. It cannot detect other vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of a vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of a vehicle is unusual (e.g., an overloaded vehicle carrying trees), the rear of a vehicle is seriously damaged, etc.
- The FCW may not recognize narrow objects such as pedestrian or bicycle.
- When rain, snow, ice, fog or dust blocks the sensors, the performance of system may degrade or fail. The driver must drive carefully.



## WARNING

- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the FCW may degrade or fail.
- If cameras are shifted due to collision, the FCW may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the FCW by driver in time.
- Never use an FCW that is incorrectly calibrated.
- For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the FCW may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.
- If the chassis of the preceding vehicle is high, or the goods protrude from the rear of the preceding vehicle, please pay attention to the danger that may occur.
- The FCW may not recognize targets such as cyclist.
- The front bumper must not be painted, modified or blocked by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!
- Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather conditions, the driver must use the FCW carefully.
- If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the FCW may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.
- Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.



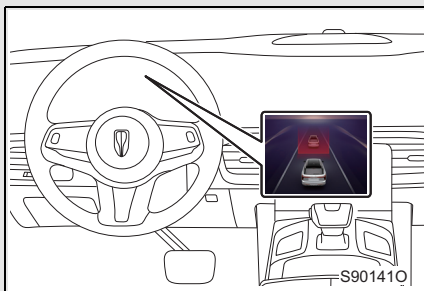
## CAUTION

- In order to avoid disturbing the driver by false alarms, no alarms will be given under the following conditions:
  - The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
  - The vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.
  - The previous alarm is issued not more than 4 seconds.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.



# Autonomous emergency braking (AEB)

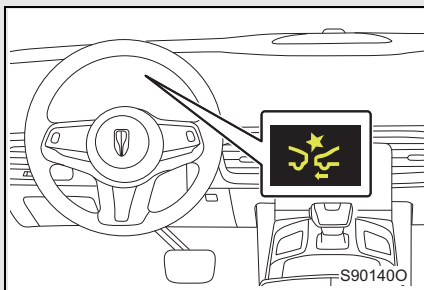
The working range of the AEB is 8 km/h ~ 80 km/h. When the vehicle may collide with the preceding vehicle in case of emergency, if the driver fails to perform emergency braking or emergency steering to avoid danger in time, the system will assist the driver in applying brake to avoid or reduce the collision injury.



When the AEB works, the instrument cluster displays alarm information and an audible alarm is issued.

### ■ Turning on/off AEB

The AEB can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 271)



When the system is turned off, the instrument cluster will display the AEB OFF indicator lamp.

### ■ Adjusting or calibrating AEB

Adjust or calibrate the AEB under the following conditions, otherwise the AEB may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The ADAS camera unit or forward millimeter wave radar mounting bracket is removed and then refitted.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The front bumper is hit or deformed.

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### **WARNING**

- To ensure driving safety, occupants in the vehicle must fasten their seat belts.
- The AEB is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the AEB too much. The driver must drive carefully.
- The AEB may not be able to recognize modified or decorated vehicles with special appearance.
- On curved roads, hill roads or extremely bumpy roads, the system may not detect the vehicles ahead. The driver must drive carefully.
- The AEB may not recognize targets such as cyclist.
- The braking function of the AEB system will not be activated when the ESC is off or faulty.
- If there is heavy snow or rain, the system may not work properly.
- For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the AEB may not work normally. The driver must drive carefully.
- If the vehicle is towing another vehicle or a trailer, turn off the AEB. When brakes are controlled under towing conditions, the safety of the vehicle deteriorates.
- If the chassis of the preceding vehicle is high, or the goods protrude from the rear of the preceding vehicle, please pay attention to the danger that may occur.
- The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of AEB may degrade or fail.
- If cameras are shifted due to collision, the AEB may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the AEB by driver in time.
- Never use an AEB that is incorrectly calibrated.

**WARNING**

- As the AEB obtains information by recognizing the rear of other vehicles, it will not give an alarm for oncoming vehicles and front crossing vehicles.
- The AEB is an auxiliary system. It cannot detect other vehicles in all cases. For example, the rear of a vehicle is seriously blocked, the shape of a vehicle is unusual (e.g., an overloaded vehicle carrying trees), the rear of a vehicle is seriously damaged, etc.
- When the vehicle is driving in a curve, the AEB may not be able to accurately judge the state of stationary objects in the driving direction, so the system may not carry out autonomous emergency braking assistance.
- The AEB does not always help the driver in all environments. Therefore, the driver shall not rely on the system completely, and must concentrate on observing road conditions to ensure driving safety.
- The AEB is an active auxiliary safety system. However, it cannot completely guarantee collision avoidance with vehicles in front under any conditions. The driver is responsible for driving and avoiding dangerous conditions. In case of emergency, the driver should brake as soon as possible.
- If the AEB is activated, the driver should promptly take control of the vehicle after it comes to a stop to prevent unintended restarting, which may lead to the vehicle slipping.
- The front bumper must not be painted, modified or blocked by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of forward millimeter wave radar sensors may degrade or fail!
- Severe extreme weather conditions such as heavy snow, rain, ice and fog may lead to the performance degradation or failure of forward millimeter wave radar sensors. In such weather, the driver must use the AEB carefully.
- If the forward millimeter wave radar sensors are shifted due to collision, the AEB may degrade or fail. The driver shall calibrate the forward millimeter wave radar sensors in time.
- Do not use forward millimeter wave radar sensors that are incorrectly calibrated.



## CAUTION

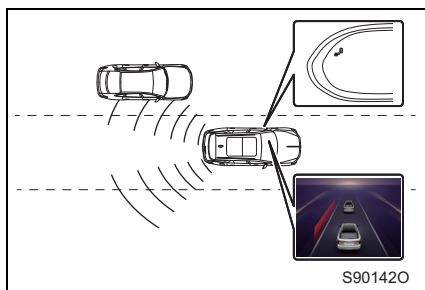
- **In order to avoid disturbing the driver by false alarms, no alarms will be given under the following conditions:**
  - The vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.
  - The previous alarm is issued not more than 4 seconds.
- **When the AEB works, it will be deactivated if any of the following conditions are met:**
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.
  - The speed reduction exceeds the threshold of 45 km/h.
- **When any of the following conditions are met, the AEB will not be triggered, allowing the driver to maintain control of the vehicle without unnecessary interference:**
  - ESC/TCS/ABS function is activated.
  - The R gear is engaged.
  - Any door is not closed.
  - The front compartment cover is not closed.
  - The driver unfastens the seat belt.
  - The automatic parking function is turned on.
  - The previous alarm is issued not more than 4 seconds.
  - The vehicle speed is less than about 8 km/h.
  - The driver turns the steering wheel too fast or by a large angle.
  - The driver slams on the accelerator pedal, causing a large pedal position.

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

### Blind spot detection (BSD)

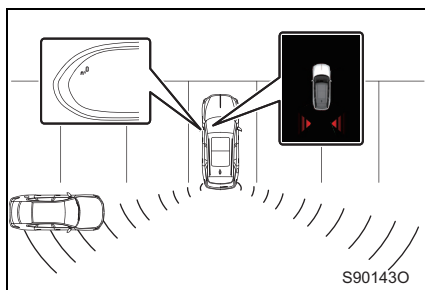
The system has the functions of blind spot detection, lane change assistance, rear cross traffic alert, door opening warning and rear collision warning to assist the driver in driving.

#### Blind spot detection and lane change assistance



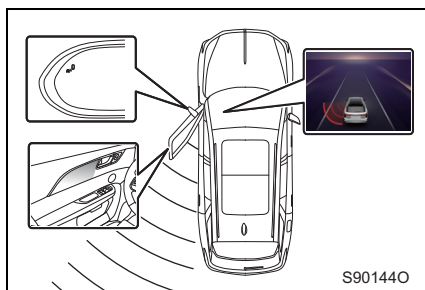
When the vehicle is set to a gear rather than R and the vehicle speed is greater than 15 km/h, if a rear side vehicle within the blind spot of 3 m behind the vehicle or within the interval of 3~70 m meets the collision condition, the warning indicator lamp on the exterior rearview mirror on the corresponding side comes on and the instrument cluster displays the alarm information. If the turn signal lamp switch on the corresponding side is turned on at this time, the warning indicator lamp flashes and a warning sound is issued at the same time, prompting the driver that there is danger in changing lanes. The function is turned off when the vehicle speed is less than 13 km/h.

### Rear cross traffic alert



When the vehicle is set to R gear and the vehicle speed is 0~15 km/h, if there are crossing vehicles, electric bicycles, bicycles and other targets in the lateral direction behind the vehicle, the system will determine whether there is a collision risk and the level of collision risk for the relevant targets. If there is a risk, the exterior rearview mirror warning indicator lamp on corresponding side will come on, and the in-vehicle infotainment system display will display an alarm message to avoid collision.

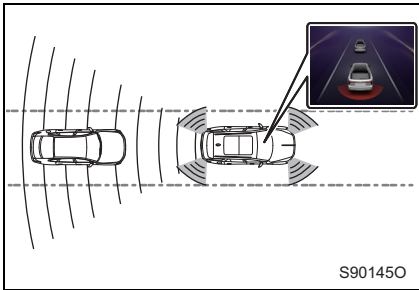
### Door opening warning



When the shift lever is not set to R position and the vehicle speed is 0~3.6 km/h, if another vehicle approaches within 2.5 m transversely and 50 m longitudinally behind the vehicle and the door unlocks, exterior rearview mirror warning indicator lamp on the corresponding side and door ambient lamp on corresponding side will come on in red, and the instrument cluster will display alarm information. At this time, when the door is opened, exterior rearview mirror warning indicator lamp on the corresponding side and door ambient lamp on the corresponding side will flash, and the system will issue a

warning sound simultaneously to remind the driver that there is a danger when opening the door. When the vehicle speed is greater than 5 km/h, the function is turned off.

## Rear collision warning



When the shift lever is not set to R position and the vehicle speed is greater than 0 km/h, if a rear vehicle is within 31 m from this vehicle, system will monitor the driving status of the following vehicle behind the vehicle to judge the possibility of rear-end collision. When there is a danger, the instrument cluster displays alarm information and triggers the hazard warning lamp to flash to remind the driver and the following vehicle that there is a risk of collision.

## Turning on/off BSD

Each function of the BSD can be turned on and off through the driving settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 271, P. 273)

### ■ The BSD and lane change assistance may not give an alarm or may give a delayed alarm under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is driving on a steep slope.
- The vehicle is navigating the mountain top or a hill road.
- There is a height difference between the driving lane and the adjacent lane.
- The turning radius is small.
- The vehicle is driving on snow-covered roads for a long time.
- A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.

- **The BSD and lane change assistance may advance the alarm or expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**
  - If two lanes are too narrow, an alarm will occur in the adjacent lane.
  - The vehicle drives on roads with fixed obstacles near the side of the vehicle for a long time (e.g., tunnel wall, cement barrier of viaduct, metal billboard, etc.).
- **The rear cross traffic alert may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**
  - The vehicle is parked at an oblique angle.
  - The reversing speed exceeds 15 km/h.
  - A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
  - The speed and yaw angle of the target vehicle are constantly changing in the detection area.
  - Another vehicle directly approaches this vehicle from the rear.
- **The front cross traffic alert may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**
  - A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
  - The speed and yaw angle of the target vehicle are constantly changing in the detection area.
- **The door opening warning may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**
  - A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
  - There are fixed obstacles on the side of the vehicle (e.g., tunnel wall, cement barrier on viaduct, metal billboard, etc.).
- **The rear collision warning may not give an alarm or may expand the alarm range under the following conditions:**
  - A large amount of snow or ice gathers near radar sensors.
  - The speed and yaw angle of the target vehicle are constantly changing in the detection area.



**CAUTION**

- Be careful not to impact the bumper during parking. Otherwise, the sensors in the bumper may be shifted or damaged, which may cause the system to shut down automatically or affect the system function.
- In order to ensure the normal operation of the system, the sensors in the bumper must be kept clean and not be covered by other objects.
- Only the paint approved by our company can be applied to the bumper. Other types of paint may cause limited functions or failure of the BSD.
- If the BSD does not work normally, turn it off immediately, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for repair.
- After the BSD is repaired, it needs to be calibrated. For details, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- The BSD is only an auxiliary reminder, and cannot completely avoid vehicle collision in blind spots. Before changing lanes, please check the rearview mirrors, give a glance to rear areas and use the turn signal lamps.
- Under special working conditions such as wet weather and high vehicle speed, the BSD may give false alarms or miss alarms, which are normal phenomena.
- When the rear BSD radar is blocked, the BSD will not work. Therefore, it needs to be cleaned in time.
- As the BSD is limited by physical laws and working conditions, it may not correctly recognize traffic conditions under some driving conditions. For example:
  - In a sharp turn lane.
  - In a lane with varying width.
  - On a bumpy road in the mountain.
  - In bad weather.
  - Near some special buildings on the roadside, such as high or scattered highway guardrail.

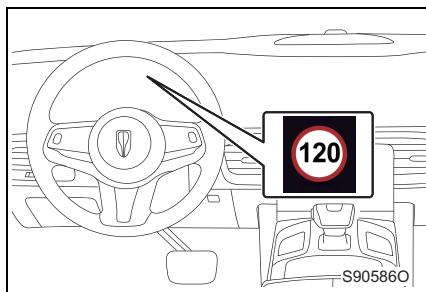


### WARNING

- **The BSD is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on it too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle. The BSD is only an auxiliary reminder. The driver must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.**
- **Turn off the radar detection system when there is a trailer or some accessories (e.g., bicycle carrier) are installed at the rear. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked, resulting in abnormal operation of the system.**
- **The BSD can detect targets such as vehicle, electric bicycle and bicycle etc. If target vehicles have characteristics such as irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians, animals or other objects cannot be guaranteed too. In such cases, the driver must drive carefully.**
- **The BSD utilizes intelligent technologies that adhere to the laws of physics, and it operates within specific system limitations. Therefore, the driver should concentrate on observing road and traffic conditions to prevent accidents.**
  - Be sure to adjust the vehicle speed and maintain the safe distance from the vehicle ahead based on current visibility, weather conditions, road and traffic conditions.
  - Always hold the steering wheel with both hands while driving, and be ready to turn it at any time.
  - Pay attention to the indicator lamps on exterior rearview mirrors and the information displayed on the multifunction display screen of the instrument cluster, and take appropriate actions in response to the indications.
  - The BSD may react to specific roadside structures (e.g., high or skewed guardrail) and thus give false alarms.
  - Always pay attention to the road conditions and surrounding conditions of the vehicle.
  - Do not use the BSD when the sensors are dirty or damaged, as this may impact the functions of the BSD.
  - When the sun shines directly, the field of view of exterior rearview mirrors may be limited.
  - During driving, be sure to strictly follow the instructions provided by warning lamps/indicator lamps and related text information. Otherwise, accidents are prone to occurring and serious personal injuries will be caused.

# Intelligent speed limit warning system (ISA)

**ISA can accurately recognize the speed limit sign and speed limit release sign ahead during the driving. ISA includes speed limit information display and speed limit warning functions, which remind drivers when the vehicle exceeds the speed limit to ensure driving safety.**



When the system recognizes a speed limit sign, if the vehicle speed is less than the speed limit value, the instrument cluster will only display the current speed limit requirement through the indicator lamp; and if the vehicle speed is more than the speed limit value, the instrument cluster will remind the driver of overspeed through sound/icon.

## Enabling/disabling intelligent speed limit warning system (ISA)

The ISA can be enabled and disabled through the vehicle settings interface of the in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 272)

### ■ Overspeed alarm mode setting:

- Off: Only display the current road speed limit information, when vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit value, there are no speed limit icon flashing prompt and sound alarm.
- Only visual: When vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit value, there is only speed limit icon flashing prompt without sound alarm.
- Visual + sound: When vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit value, there is speed limit icon flashing prompt and sound alarm.

### ■ Adjusting or calibrating ISA

Adjust or calibrate the ISA under the following conditions, otherwise the ISA may not work properly:

- The front windshield is damaged or replaced.
- The four wheels are aligned.
- The ADAS camera unit is replaced.

For calibration, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### **WARNING**

- **ISA is only a driver assistance system. Do not rely on the ISA too much. The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The driver is the most important controller of the vehicle, and must always have control on the vehicle and take full responsibility for the vehicle.**
- **If there is heavy snow or rain, ISA may not work properly (it may give false alarms or miss alarms).**
- **For scenes like strong backlighting, road reflection, insufficient ambient lighting, etc., the ISA may not work properly (it may give false alarms or miss alarms). The driver must drive carefully.**
- **The front windshield shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of ISA may degrade or fail (it may give false alarms or miss alarms).**
- **If cameras are shifted due to collision, the ISA may degrade or fail. Please calibrate the ISA by driver in time.**
- **When the sign is not in a specified style or placed at a position that conforms to regulations, ISA will fail to recognize it properly (it may give false alarms or miss alarms).**

## 4-5. Using other driving systems

# Auto parking assist (APA)

APA measures the length of the parking spaces on both sides of the road using ultrasonic waves and cameras. After the appropriate parking space is selected, the system will automatically control the vehicle to perform parking to park in the selected parking space. APA includes auto parking-in and auto parking-out. They can be selected through the multimedia display.

Before using the APA, be sure to check the automatic parking steps, precautions and warnings described in this section to prevent accidents.

### Entering APA



Press the APA button to enter the automatic parking selection interface.



The parking mode can be selected as parking-in or parking-out in the parking selection interface.

Auto parking-in

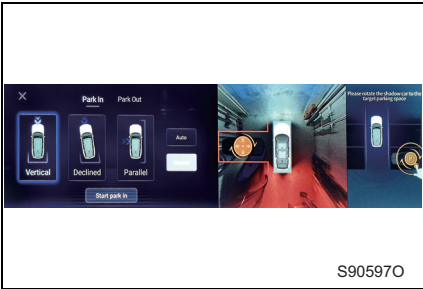
■ Selecting the parking space type



You can search parking spaces in automatic mode and manual mode. And in each mode, there are three types of parking spaces available: Vertical parking, inclined parking, and parallel parking.

When the vehicle speed is not zero, the system defaults to automatic mode. Only when the vehicle speed is zero, the manual mode can be selected.

■ Selecting parking space



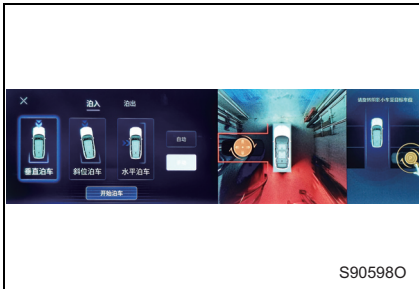
Method 1: Automatic mode selection

When the automatic mode is selected, it defaults to all parking space type, and all parking space types can be searched. If the user has selected a type, the search success rate of single parking space type can be improved. The system will recognize the parking spaces of the same type as that selected by the user on both sides of the driving direction while driving. The system defaults the preferred parking space as the target parking space; and you can also touch other optional parking spaces on the display as the target parking space.

Red: Unavailable parking space

Yellow: Available parking space

Green: Preferred parking space



### Method 2: Manual mode selection

After selecting the manual mode and the parking space type, the corresponding target parking space frame will appear on the display, which can be dragged and rotated by user. When the vehicle in the parking space frame is shown in red, it means that the vehicle cannot be parked in the area, the position and orientation of the target parking space frame on the display needs to be adjusted.

### ■ Parking control

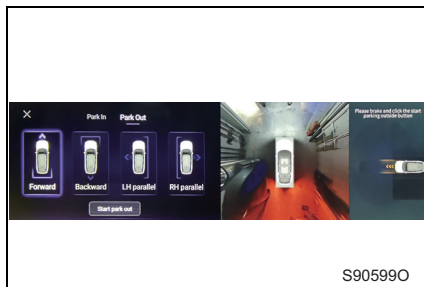
**Method 1:** With the target parking space confirmed, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start parking-in" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking.

**Method 2:** With the target parking space confirmed, shift the gear to P, apply the EPB and touch the "Start parking-in" button to start parking.

The parking process can be controlled through the display during the parking.

### Auto parking-out

#### ■ Selecting the parking-out type



Four types of parking-out can be selected through the in-vehicle infotainment system: Vertical backwards, vertical forward, parallel leftwards, and parallel rightwards.

#### ■ Parking-out control

Method 1: With the parking-out type selected, depress the brake pedal, touch the "Start parking-out" button, and release the brake pedal to start parking-out.

Method 2: With the parking-out type selected, shift the gear to P, apply the EPB and touch the "Start parking-out" button to start parking-out.

---

#### ■ Parking operating conditions:

- In the process of searching a parking space, the vehicle speed should be less than 20 km/h; when it exceeds 20 km/h, slowdown will be prompted
- No one is operating the steering wheel during parking
- ESC OFF switch is not activated
- ESC/ABS/TCS is not working
- All doors and the front compartment cover are closed
- Camera/ultrasonic radar is not blocked and has no faults
- The parking space lines are clear and meet the requirements of national standards
- The size of parking space is sufficient, and the surrounding area of the parking space is clear and obstruction-free
- This system and related systems have no fault
- Advanced driver assistance function is not activated
- The driving mode is set to "Comfort" and air suspension is at standard height



### ■ **Parking exit conditions:**

- The vehicle speed is more than 30 km/h during the process of searching a parking space
- The driver operates the steering wheel
- Opening door or charging port cover
- The parking canceling button is pressed
- The APA button on A/C display is pressed
- Parking is not completed beyond the maximum number of movements after the automatic parking is activated
- SACC is activated
- ESC OFF switch is activated
- ESC/ABS/TCS functional intervention
- This system and related system have fault
- Vehicle stopped for too long time
- Vehicle slipping/excessive road slope
- Exterior rearview mirror folding
- Applying EPB
- Depress the brake pedal continuously
- Tire pressure too low
- SOC too low
- Vehicle speed too fast
- Advanced driver assistance function is activated
- Path planning failed
- Too close to obstacles
- Insufficient parking space

■ **During the automatic parking process, it is necessary to observe the surrounding conditions of the vehicle throughout the entire process. When an emergency situation occurs and braking is required, the driver needs to touch the parking canceling button or depress the brake pedal or pull the EPB switch to stop the vehicle.**

### ■ **The following situations may cause failure of parking:**

- Insufficient parking space
- Steep slope
- Wet and slippery road surface
- Uneven road surface, steps or low obstacles
- In the process of parking, the driver operates the pedals, shift lever and steering wheel



### CAUTION

- **To ensure the success rate and safety of parking system, the system needs to be used in the following environmental conditions:**
  - The road surface is flat, and the slope should not too steep.
  - The parking space lines are clear and the parking space is large enough.
  - The weather is good, with bright light and no bad weather such as rain, snow, fog, slippery and icy road surfaces
  - The driving road is dry and non-slip.
- **In the process of automatically searching for parking spaces, the following situations should be paid attention to:**
  - The vehicle needs to move close to the parking space. Failure to do so may cause the parking space not to be recognized.
  - The steering angle of the vehicle should not be excessive, otherwise it may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
  - The vehicle speed should not be more than 20 km/h, otherwise it may cause failure of the parking space recognition.
  - Rain, snow, fog or dark light conditions may reduce the recognition rate of parking spaces.
  - When the parking space is too small, the parking space lines are not clear, or the parking space is irregular, it may cause failure of parking space search.
  - In the process of searching for a parking space, the image can only assist the driver, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.

**CAUTION**

- **In the process of automatically parking, the following situations should be paid attention to:**
  - The distance prompting function may have blind spots, and the driver needs to pay attention to the surrounding environment in real time.
  - When driving on a repaired asphalt road or a road with strong light reflection, the vehicle may not be able to accurately recognize the position of the parking space. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
  - The vehicle cannot attach any other objects protruding from the vehicle body.
  - Do not store dangerous objects in vehicle, such as gasoline, batteries, etc.
  - The system may not detect children, pedestrians, animals, oncoming vehicles or other objects and apply brakes. Drivers should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
  - The APA has limited braking capacity. It may have no time to slow down to avoid a collision with the vehicle ahead when the vehicle ahead suddenly decelerates, stops or enters your lane. If a danger is felt, please actively depress the brake pedal for braking.
  - During automatic parking, the driver always needs to concentrate fully, and should always be ready to take measures and apply the brake.
  - The driver needs to ensure that the vehicle can be decelerated to a stop within their field of view at all times.
  - If vehicles head have characteristics of irregular shape, modification, painted surface, etc., the recognition effect cannot be guaranteed. The recognition of pedestrians and narrow vehicles (such as bicycles and motorcycles) cannot be guaranteed too. At this time, the driver should take over the vehicle at any time according to the actual situation.
  - If the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly (for emergency stop), the system may be unable to respond or respond too slowly to the vehicle ahead, thus resulting in a risk of late braking. In this case, the driver may not receive a takeover request. The driver should keep focused, and take the initiative to intervene when necessary.
- **If a tire needs to be replaced, please make sure that the size of the replacement tire is exactly the same as that of the original tire, and check the four-wheel alignment parameters.**



### CAUTION

#### ■ Fault handling:

- During the use of system, there may be vehicle faults, unrecognizable/unprocessed scenarios, and so on, that prevent the system from completing its functions properly.
- After receiving the vehicle takeover notice, please take over in time within the required time limit.



### WARNING

- When the APA is operating, drivers should pay attention to the road traffic environment to ensure driving safety.
- The driver is the primary controller of the vehicle, and the APA is only a driver assistance system. Although the system can provide assistance to the driver during parking, it should not replace the driver to park the vehicle and the driver must be responsible for the parking. During parking, the driver should pay attention to the surrounding environment of the vehicle and control the vehicle if necessary to avoid danger.
- When using APA, please comply with relevant local laws and regulations, and adapt to the traffic, road conditions at that time.
- All responsibilities and consequences arising from the user's violation of the user manual (such as using in incorrect situations, failure to take over the vehicle in time, etc.) shall be borne by the user.
- The location of vehicle camera and radar shall not be modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the system may not work properly. The front and rear bumpers must not be painted, modified or covered by any auxiliary equipment. Otherwise, the performance of radar sensor may degrade or fail.
- Due to the blind spot of the sensor, pay attention to low and small obstacles, corners and sides of the vehicle during parking.
- For specific limitations of the sensor, please refer to the relevant description of the parking radar.
- Pay attention to whether there is enough space opposite when parking.
- There is a delay in the parking brake, so the driver should make a judgment in advance and stop the vehicle if the danger is found.

**WARNING**

- Please pay special attention to people, animals and various obstacles around the vehicle, the sensor has a blind spot that cannot be detected.
- When searching for a parking space or during parking, please be aware that there are no obstacles in the parking space, such as stones, thin poles or tow bars, as the system may not detect such obstacles.
- The system may not recognize the surface or structure of certain objects (e.g., wire fences, fluffy snow, angular pillar, etc.). Therefore, please re-check that there is enough space in the parking space and surroundings before parking the vehicle.
- If the parking radar system detects an obstacle, the obstacle may disappear from the sensor detection range after the vehicle approaches (this is highly likely to happen when detecting obstacles that are too high and too low), thus not detecting these items. Do not ignore the warning from the parking distance warning system, otherwise the vehicle may be at risk of collision.
- Due to the influence from various external sound field and electromagnetic field (e.g. other vehicles using ultrasonic ranging, air pressure, engine noise, electric control gears, induction loops, etc.), the system cannot achieve absolute immunity to interference.
- The immunity to interference and detection performance of ultrasonic ranging may be reduced by environmental conditions and obstacle reflection properties, which are determined by the physical properties of ultrasonic propagation.
- The installation position of the sensor has an important impact on the system performance, which is reflected in the reflection from the vehicle bumper surface itself, ground echo reflection and detection range.
- Avoid cleaning the sensor with a high pressure washer or steam cleaner to prevent damaging the sensor. When cleaning the vehicle, you should use a smaller water flow to rinse the sensor surface for a short time and keep at least 10 cm away.



### WARNING

- **The propagation of sound waves in air is influenced by the physical properties of refraction and diffraction phenomena. Temperature differences in the air is one of the most important factors in generating a non-uniform propagation medium, leading to acoustic diffraction.**
- **The detection performance of ultrasonic detection equipment can be affected by the following factors:**
  - Hot vehicle exhaust.
  - High temperature asphalt road.
  - Summer breeze.
  - Temperature stratification.
- **When there is a temperature difference between the bumper and the ambient air (common in winter), temperature stratification may occur. This can lead to acoustic wave diffraction, and in certain bumper structures may pose a risk of false alarms due to reflected echoes.**
- **Some important factors that can lead to reduced detection range or failure of detection:**
  - Snow or sludge adhering to the bumper surface.
  - Plaster or ice adhering to the sensor surface.
  - Environments that cause high acoustic attenuation (such as in dry, hot environments).
  - In heavy rain or in foam.
  - Obstacles with wave-absorbing materials in the environment.
  - Flat type obstacles with angles facing the sensor and reflected echoes occurring only in a specific angular range.

# Driver assistance system

**The related functions integrated in the ESC vary slightly among different vehicle models. To improve the driving safety and performance of the vehicle, the following functions will work automatically based on various driving conditions. However, remember that these functions are only for auxiliary purpose. Do not rely on them too much during driving.**

■ **Antilock brake system (ABS)**

This system can prevent sideslip or pulling to one side of the vehicle due to locked wheels during driving on slippery roads or during emergency braking.

■ **Electronic brakeforce distribution (EBD)**

This system can dynamically distribute brake force proportionally between the front and rear wheels based on the change in vehicle load, road conditions and brake force, so as to improve the braking stability and maneuverability of the vehicle.

■ **Traction control system (TCS)**

This system can prevent the driving wheels from slipping and ensure the acceleration performance when the vehicle starts or accelerates on a slippery road.

■ **Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)**

This system can execute the braking force compensation when the brake pedal is depressed quickly, so as to effectively increase the brake force.

■ **Hydraulic brake booster (HBB)**

This system can execute the brake force compensation when electronic booster lacks of power, so as to effectively increase the brake force.

■ **Hill descent control (HDC)**

When the vehicle is descending a hill with a speed ranging from 8 to 35 km/h, the system applies corresponding brake force to the wheels to maintain a stable speed during downhill driving.

HDC can be set to on and off using the HDC button.

### ■ Hill hold control (HHC)

When the vehicle is started on the slope, for a certain duration after the driver transitions from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal, this function will properly maintain the brake pressure applied by the driver to prevent the vehicle from slipping.

### ■ Electronic stability control (ESC)

This system can help the driver control sideslip during sudden or slippery road turns, so as to ensure the vehicle follows the correct driving track.

### ■ Controlled deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go (CDD-S)\*

This system can assist the ACC in achieving deceleration control of the vehicle.

### ■ Controlled deceleration for parking brake (CDP)

When the EPB switch is pulled up for a long time, the vehicle actively enters the deceleration state.

### ■ AUTO HOLD

When the vehicle is stationary, the AUTO HOLD applies the parking brake through the hydraulic system and maintains this state for a short time, and then the EPB performs parking.

### ■ Automatic brake prefill (ABP)

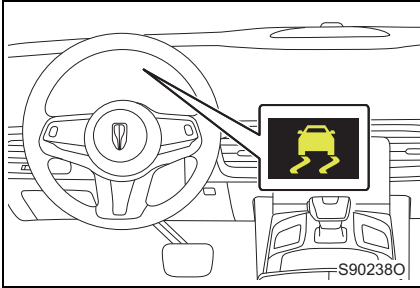
According to the request of the relevant control unit, the ESC actively pre-pressurizes the braking system to improve the response speed to braking.

## **Electric power steering (EPS)**

This system can use a motor to reduce the force required for turning the steering wheel.



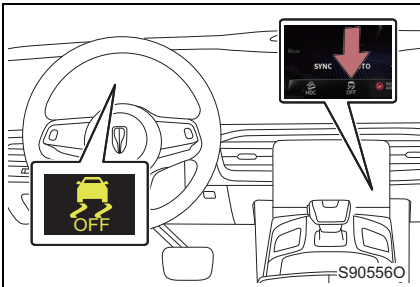
## When TCS/ESC works



If the vehicle skids or the driving wheels idle, the indicator lamp will flash to indicate that the TCS/ESC is working.

## Disabling ESC

If the vehicle is trapped in snow or mud, the ESC may reduce the power output from the power system to the wheels. Disabling the system can be beneficial for the vehicle to rock back and forth, aiding in getting out of the trapped situation.



The ESC can be turned on and off in the A/C operation panel. When it is turned off, the ESC OFF indicator lamp on the instrument cluster comes on.

### ■ Automatic response of ESC

After turning off ESC/TCS and restarting the vehicle, or if the vehicle speed exceeds 70 km/h, the system will be reactivated automatically.

### ■ Sound and vibration generated by ABS/HBA/TCS/ESC/CDP/CDD-S/HBB and AUTO HOLD

- Noises may be heard from the front compartment when the vehicle is powered on or just after the vehicle starts. This sound does not indicate a failure in these systems.
- Some normal conditions may occur during the operation of the above systems. These conditions do not indicate a fault.
  - Vibration may be felt through the vehicle body and steering wheel.

- The motor sound may be heard when the vehicle stops.



### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Handling of wheels and suspension**

Faulty wheels or modified suspension can have an impact on the driver assistance system and may lead to system failure.

#### ■ **ABS cannot work effectively under the following conditions:**

- The limits of ground grip of tires are exceeded.
- The vehicle skids when driving on slippery roads at high speed.

#### ■ **Braking distance of ABS on special road surface**

ABS is not designed to shorten the braking distance of the vehicle. Be sure to keep a safe distance from the vehicles driving ahead under the following conditions:

- The vehicle drives on muddy, gravel or snowy roads.
- The vehicle drives with tire chains.
- The vehicle drives on bumpy roads.
- The vehicle drives on cratered or uneven roads.

#### ■ **TCS may not work effectively under the following conditions:**

When the vehicle drives on slippery roads, even if the TCS works normally, it may not control the driving direction or meet the power requirements. Do not drive the vehicle under the condition that the vehicle may lose stability and power.

#### ■ **When ESC is activated**

If the indicator lamp flashes, be sure to drive carefully. Otherwise, accidents may occur easily.

#### ■ **When ESC is off**

Take special care and drive at a speed suitable for road conditions. In this case, the ESC can ensure the stability and driving force of the vehicle. If not necessary, do not turn off the ESC.

#### ■ **Replacement of wheels**

Ensure that all wheels have the same specifications, brand, tread pattern and load capacity. In addition, ensure that the tire pressure meets the requirements specified on the tire pressure label. If the vehicle is equipped with different wheels, the ABS and EPS may not work properly. For details of tire or wheel replacement, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

# Driving essentials in winter

**Before driving in winter, please make necessary preparations and inspections. Be sure to drive in a way suitable for the main weather conditions in winter.**

### ■ Preparations for driving in winter

- Use oil and fluids suitable for outdoor temperature.
  - Coolant
  - Washer fluid
- Ensure good battery performance.
- If necessary, install four snow tires or purchase a set of tire chains for driving wheels.

Make sure that all tires are of the same model and brand, and that the size of tire chains matches that of the tires.

### ■ Before driving

Take the following measures according to driving conditions:

- Do not force open the frozen windows or move the frozen wipers; pour warm water on the frozen parts to melt the ice, and wipe the water immediately to prevent freezing.
- To ensure the normal operation of the fan, clear the snow off the air inlet grille.
- Remove the ice accumulated on the chassis of the vehicle.
- Regularly check and remove the snow and ice that may accumulate on the wheelhouse or brake.
- Remove the snow or mud from soles of shoes before entering the vehicle.

### ■ During driving

Accelerate slowly and slow down appropriately according to the road conditions.

## Selection of tire chain

Use the correct tire chain size when installing tire chains.

The size of tire chain should be adjusted according to the size of each tire.

### Regulations on the use of tire chains

Depending on the location and type of road, the regulations regarding the use of tire chains will vary. Be sure to check local regulations before installing tire chains.

Install tire chains on the driving tires.

Re-tension the tire chains after driving 0.5-1.0 km.

#### ■ Tire chain

When installing and removing tire chains, please observe the following precautions.

- Install and remove tire chains in a safe place.
- Install tire chains on the driving tires.
- Follow the instructions provided in the manual attached to the tire chain.



#### **WARNING**

##### ■ Driving with snow tires

In order to avoid the possibility of losing control of the vehicle and causing serious personal injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Use the specified type of tire.
- Maintain the recommended tire pressure.
- Do not exceed the road speed limit or the prescribed speed limit for snow tires when driving.
- Snow tires should be fitted to all wheels.

##### ■ Driving with tire chains

In order to avoid the possibility of unsafe driving and serious personal injury or even death, and to reduce the risk of accidents, please observe the following precautions:

- Do not exceed the prescribed speed limit for tire chains when driving.
- Avoid driving on uneven or pitted roads.
- Avoid sharp turns or emergency braking.
- Slow down fully before entering the curve to ensure that the vehicle can be controlled.

### **5-1. Basic operation**

Multimedia display ...254

USB data interface ...259

### **5-2. Using multimedia system**

Vehicle .....261

Charging .....274

Travel .....275

Entertainment .....278

Bluetooth phone .....280

### **5-3. Operating on-board Bluetooth phone**

Hands-free system ...282

### **5-4. Using voice recognition**

Voice recognition .....285

### **5-5. Using mobile APP**

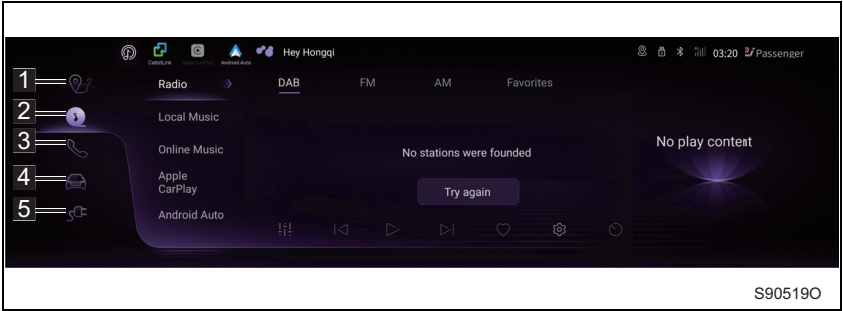
Hongqi Zhilian APP ..287

5-1. Basic operation

# Multimedia display

Users can operate the functions such as navigation, telephone, radio, music, vehicle settings through the multimedia display.

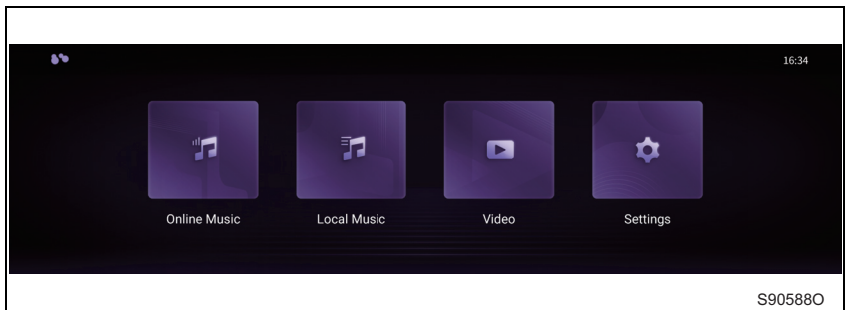
Front entertainment display



| No. | Name               | Function                                                                                                                             |
|-----|--------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1   | Travel             | Enter [Travel] interface<br>You can use on-board navigation system.                                                                  |
| 2   | Entertain<br>ment  | Enter [Entertainment] interface<br>You can use the entertainment functions such as station, music, Apple CarPlay, Android Auto, etc. |
| 3   | Bluetooth<br>phone | Enter [Bluetooth phone] interface<br>When Bluetooth phone is connected, Bluetooth phone function can be used.                        |
| 4   | Vehicle            | Enter [Vehicle] interface<br>You can view and operate system setting and vehicle setting.                                            |
| 5   | Charging           | Enter [Charging] interface<br>You can view and operate charging setting.                                                             |

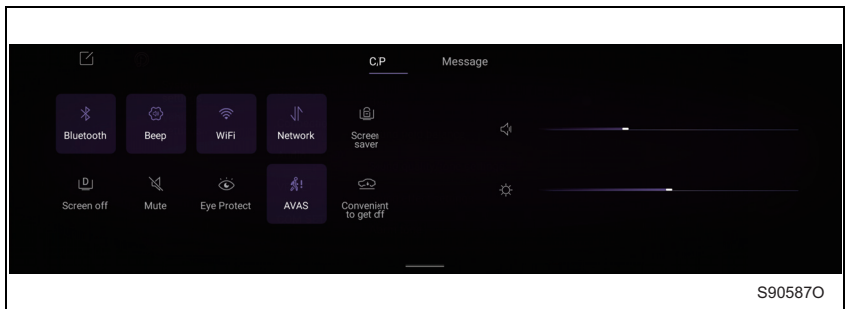
## Front passenger display\*

Users can view and operate the online music, local music, video and setting through front passenger entertainment display.



## Shortcut menu on entertainment display

With multimedia system on, swipe down on the screen to pull out the shortcut menu, and you can quickly access to some functions.



### ■ Preventing damage to the multimedia display

- During operation, touch the multimedia display gently with fingers. If the content shown on the multimedia display cannot be called out, it indicates that the content may not be available at the moment. Do not press the screen buttons excessively to avoid damage to the device.
- Do not use sharp or angular hard objects to touch the multimedia display; otherwise the multimedia display may be damaged.
- Do not spray liquid directly onto the multimedia display. If liquid leaks into the equipment, the electronic components may be damaged.
- When cleaning the surface of the multimedia display, set power (ignition) switch to OFF mode and wipe the screen with a soft and dry cloth. Do not use coarse rags, chemical rags or organic reagents (alcohol, benzene, disinfectant, etc.) for cleaning, as they can damage or deteriorate the panel.

### ■ When using the multimedia display

- If the multimedia display is cold, the display may be dark, or the system may seem to be operating slightly slower than normal.
- The display may be dark or difficult to see clearly when you wear sunglasses, so change the angle of the multimedia display or remove the sunglasses.
- Do not expose the multimedia display to sunlight for a long time.
- Do not expose the multimedia display to moisture, dust, oil smoke, etc.



**WARNING****■ When using multimedia system**

- Please avoid operating the system as much as possible while driving.
- The volume should be adjusted properly so that the situation outside the vehicle can be heard during driving. If the volume is adjusted too high to hear the situation outside the vehicle, an accident may be caused.
- Do not use the system in a fault state where there is no image or sound, as this may cause a traffic accident, fire, electric shock or fatal injury.
- Do not operate the system in no-parking areas, as this may result in traffic accidents.
- For the sake of safety, the use of this function shall never distract your attention or hinder safe driving. Ignoring road and traffic conditions can lead to accidents.

**■ Do not disassemble or modify this product without permission, as this may cause traffic accident, fire, or electric shock.****■ In case of abnormal conditions such as entry of foreign materials or water ingress, stop using the system immediately and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. If you continue to use the system, a fault may occur.**



### CAUTION

#### ■ Noise from the multimedia system

- Due to the high sensitivity of this system, the system may make interference noises when closing to TV towers, radio stations, power plants or other places with strong radio waves or electrical noise interference.
- During operation of multimedia system, the system may make interference noises when a mobile phone is used inside or near the vehicle.

#### ■ Preventing damage to the multimedia system

Be careful not to spill drinks or other liquids on the multimedia system. If liquid or other objects enter the unit, switch off the power immediately and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

#### ■ Compatibility

Some devices may not work properly due to their own compatibility.

#### ■ In case of a fault

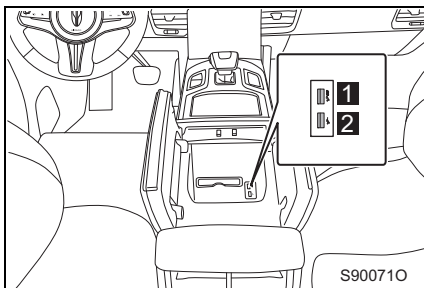
If the fault cannot be eliminated, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## 5-1. Basic operation

# USB data interface

A USB device may be operated via the multimedia system after connecting it to the USB data interface.

### Using USB data interface



Open the front center storage box cover, and connect an external multimedia source.

1 Type-c

2 USB

#### ■ USB memory

Connect a USB memory device.

If the USB memory is not started, turn on its power supply.



#### WARNING

##### ■ During driving

Do not connect the device or operate its control buttons to prevent accidents.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing damage to USB devices or their terminals

- Be sure to keep the interface clean. If foreign matter or liquid enters the interface, it may cause the multimedia system malfunction.
- Do not plug high-current USB devices other than U disk and mobile phone, such as mobile hard disks and portable powers.
- Do not leave the USB device in the vehicle, as the temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to the USB devices.
- Do not press or apply unnecessary pressure to the USB device when it is connected.
- Do not insert foreign objects into the interface.

#### ■ Compatibility

Some devices may not work properly due to their own compatibility.

#### ■ Ensuring proper system recognition

USB devices with poor quality may not be identified by the system, so it is recommended to use high-quality USB devices.

#### ■ When getting off the vehicle

Do not leave items such as mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to mobile phones.

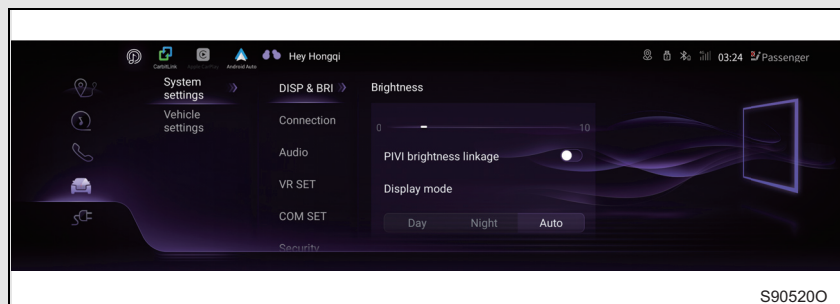
#### ■ Mobile phone data cable

The USB cables supplied with mobile phones are recommended for connection to ensure a stable connection.

## 5-2. Using multimedia system

# Vehicle

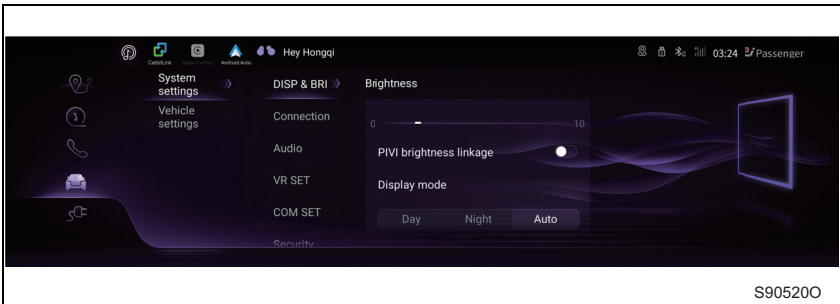
On the main menu interface, touch the [Vehicle] button on screen to enter the vehicle function interface.



### System setting

Display and brightness, network and connection, sound setting, voice setting and general setting can be operated in the system setting.

#### ■ Display and brightness



#### 1 Brightness

- Brightness adjustment: The brightness of screen can be adjusted.
- Front passenger screen brightness linkage: The brightness of front passenger screen can be set to adjust in sync with the central control screen.
- Display mode: Three display modes can be set: Day, night and auto.

#### 2 Wallpaper

- Wallpaper can be set as a mechanical clock or digital clock.

#### 3 Font size

- Language: The system can be set to Chinese, English, Norwegian, German, Swedish, and Dutch.
- Font size: Font size can be set to standard or large.
- Synchronization of font size on each screen: You can set whether the font size of each display is adjusted synchronously.

#### 4 Theme setting

- Three theme modes can be set: Technology, minimalism and sports.

**5** Screen on/off

- Set the ON/OFF of central control entertainment display (front entertainment display) and front passenger entertainment display.

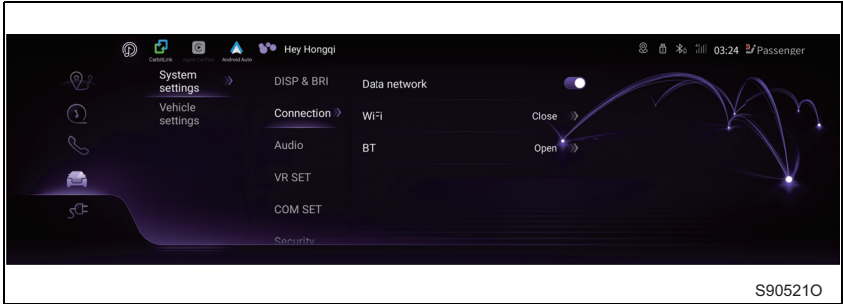
**6** Instrument cluster personalization area display

- Display contents on the expansion area of instrument cluster can be set.

**7** Eye protection mode

- Eye protection mode of the central entertainment screen can be turned on or off.

■ Network and connection



1 Data network

- The mobile data network can be turned on or off.

2 WiFi

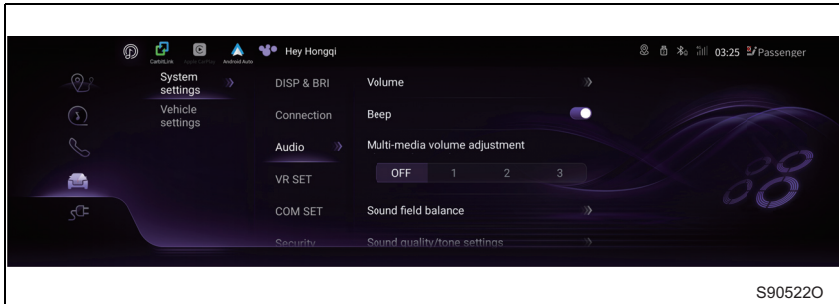
- WiFi can be turned on or off. When WiFi is turned on, my devices and available devices can be viewed, connected and deleted.

3 Bluetooth

- Bluetooth can be turned on or off. When Bluetooth is turned on, the saved devices and available devices can be viewed, connected and deleted, and the Bluetooth name can be set.



## ■ Sound setting



### 1 Volume

- The volume of multimedia, SOS, Bluetooth phone, voice broadcast, radar and other functions can be adjusted.

### 2 Key tone

- Set the ON/OFF of screen key tone.

### 3 Sound field balance

- By dragging the circular cursor, you can select the optimal sound field position, and reset the sound field.

### 4 Timbre setting

- The bass, mid and treble levels can be adjusted.

### 5 Sound effect setting

- Three modes (normal balance, driver seat priority, Centerpoint) can be set.

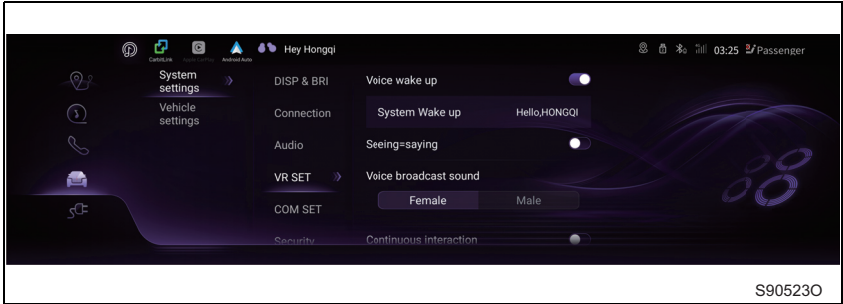
### 6 Alarm tone

- Alarm tone can be set to high, medium and low.

### 7 Audio source restoration

- Set the ON/OFF of audio source restoration.

■ Voice setting



1 Voice wake-up

- Set the ON/OFF of voice recognition.

2 Wake-up free

- Wake-up free can be set to ON/OFF. Speak out special command for voice control in any interface after it is turned on.

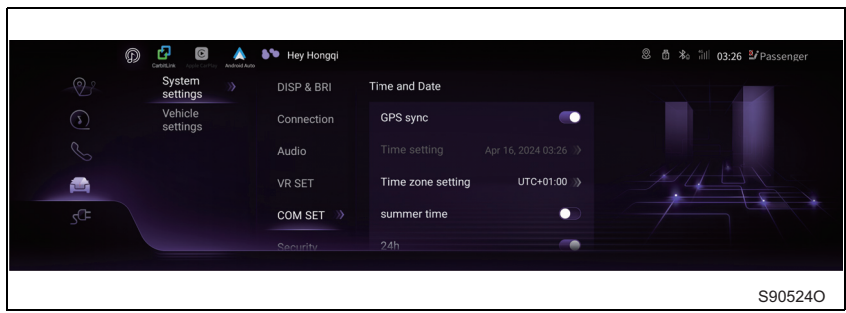
3 Voice broadcast sound

- It can be set as female voice and male voice.

4 Continuous interaction

- Continuous interaction can be set to ON/OFF. When the continuous interaction via voice recognition is turned on, the voice recognition function can be used without wake-up words, and the interaction duration can be set to 10 seconds, 30 seconds and 60 seconds.

## General setting



### 1 Time and date

- GPS synchronization: You can set whether to synchronize the network time or not.
- Time setting: When GPS synchronization is turned off, the time can be adjusted manually.
- Time zone setting: Select the current time zone based on the corresponding country or region.
- Daylight saving time: Set the ON/OFF of daylight saving time.
- 24h: 24h format is applied at power-on; 12h format is applied at power-off.

### 2 GPS

- GPS can be set to ON/OFF.

### 3 USB upgrade

- Multimedia system can be upgraded through USB data packet. Please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for specific operation.

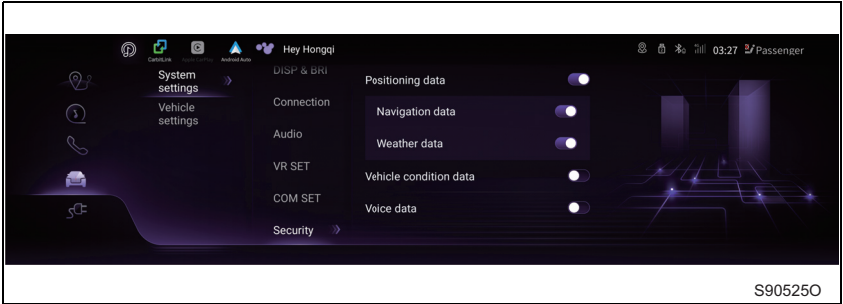
### 4 About the system

- System information can be viewed.

### 5 Restoring system setting

- System can be restored to factory setting.

■ Data security



1 Positioning data

- Can be turned on and off.
- Navigation data: Can be turned on and off.  
This function is limited when turning off.
- Weather data: Can be turned on and off.  
This function is limited when turning off.

2 Vehicle data

- Can be turned on and off.  
This function is limited when turning off.

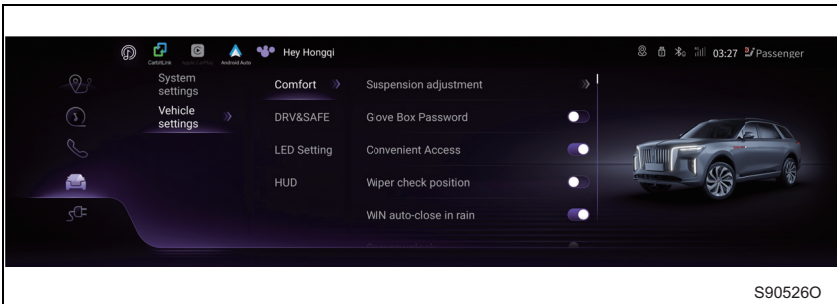
3 Voice data

- Can be turned on and off.  
This function is limited when turning off.

## Vehicle setting

Comfort setting, driving and safety, lighting setting, head up display and other functions can be set in the vehicle setting.

### ■ Comfort setting



#### 1 Suspension adjustment

- Auto adjustment at flameout: When the power (ignition) switch is turned off, the vehicle suspension is lowered.
- Easy exit: Adjust the vehicle suspension to the lowest position to facilitate occupants to exit.
- Lifting mode: Enter/exit the lifting mode.

#### 2 Glove box password

Set a password to open the glove box if necessary.

#### 3 Easy access

Set the ON/OFF of welcome function.

#### 4 Wiper service position

When the wiper service position function is turned on, place the wiper in the service position if conditions permit.

#### 5 Window auto closing in rainy days

Set the ON/OFF of windows and sunroof auto closing in rainy days.

#### 6 Secure unlocking

Set the ON/OFF of secure unlocking.

ON: Press the smart key unlock button once to unlock the driver door;  
Press the smart key unlock button twice consecutively to unlock all doors.  
OFF: Press the smart key unlock button once to unlock all doors.

### **7** Exterior rearview mirror auto folding when locking

Set the ON/OFF of auto folding function of exterior rearview mirror when locking.

### **8** Turning of rearview mirror at reversing

Set the ON/OFF of downward tilt function of right rearview mirror during reversing.

### **9** Auto proximity unlocking

Set the ON/OFF of auto proximity unlocking.

When this function is turned on, if the driver approaches the vehicle with the smart key carried, the vehicle will be unlocked automatically.

### **10** Automatic locking when leaving vehicle

Set the ON/OFF of automatic locking when leaving vehicle.

When this function is turned on, if the driver leaves away from the vehicle with the smart key carried, the vehicle will be locked automatically.

### **11** Vehicle mobilization reminder

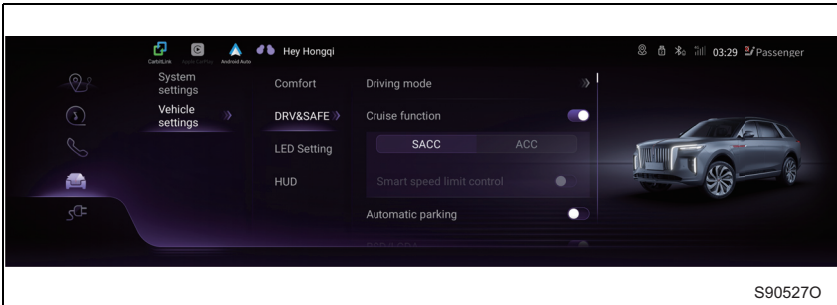
Set the ON/OFF of vehicle mobilization reminder.

When the function is turned on, if the vehicle is moved in locked status, the owner will be notified through the Hongqi Zhilian APP.

### **12** Ceremonial sense

Set the ON/OFF of ambient lamp when the vehicle is unlocked or locked.

## ■ Driving and safety



### 1 Driving mode

Seven driving modes can be set: Comfort, sport, long driving range, all-terrain, off-road, custom and extreme; the driving characteristics in custom mode can be set at the same time.

### 2 Cruise function

- Set the ON/OFF of cruise function. Cruise mode can be set to SACC or ACC after the function is turned on.
- Intelligent speed limit control: Set the ON/OFF of intelligent speed limit control function.

### 3 AUTO HOLD

Set the ON/OFF of AUTO HOLD function.

### 4 Blind spot detection/lane change assist

Set the ON/OFF of blind spot detection/lane change assist function.

### 5 Lane departure warning and assistance

Set the ON/OFF of lane departure warning. After the function is turned on, the alarm mode can be set to Lane Departure Warning (LDW), alarm + Lane Keeping Assist (LKA); At the same time, the alarm trigger sensitivity can be set.

When the SACC is turned off, the LDW sensitivity can be set.

### 6 Emergency correction assistance

Set the ON/OFF of emergency correction assistance function.

### **7** Rear cross traffic alert

Set the ON/OFF of rear cross traffic alert function. After the function is turned on, the alarm mode can be set to alarm or alarm + braking.

### **8** Front collision warning and assistance

Set the ON/OFF of front collision warning. After the function is turned on, the alarm mode can be set to Front Collision Warning (FCW) or alarm + Automatic Emergency Braking (AEB); At the same time, the FCW sensitivity can also be set.

### **9** Rear collision warning

Set the ON/OFF of rear collision warning function.

### **10** Intelligent speed limit alarm

- Set the ON/OFF of intelligent speed limit alarm. After the function is turned on, the overspeed alarm mode can be set to OFF/visual only or visual + sound.
- Speed limit information switching prompt: Set the ON/OFF of speed limit information switching prompt.

### **11** Security setting

Set the ON/OFF of driver attention monitoring function.

### **12** Front passenger's airbag

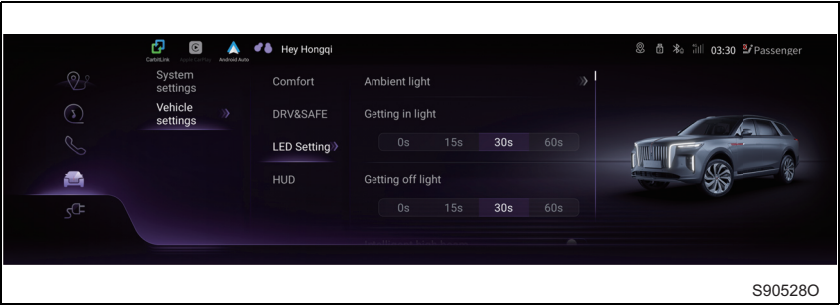
Set the ON/OFF of front passenger's airbag.

### **13** Door opening warning

Set the ON/OFF of door opening warning function.



■ Lighting setting



1 Ambient lamp

Set the ON/OFF of ambient lamp.

It can be used to adjust brightness and color, and let the ambient lamp color switch along with driving mode.

2 Boarding lighting

Set the ON/OFF and lighting time of boarding lighting.

3 Getting-off lighting

Set the ON/OFF and lighting time of getting-off lighting.

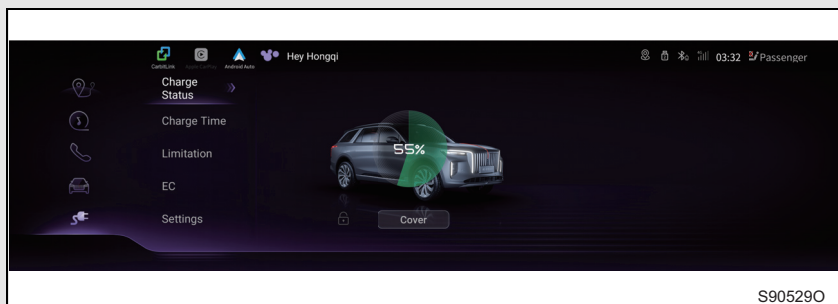
4 Intelligent high beam lamp

Set the ON/OFF of intelligent high beam control system.

## 5-2. Using multimedia system

# Charging

On the main menu interface, touch **【Charging】** button on the screen to enter charging function interface.



### Charging setting

User can check the current charging information of the vehicle through the charging setting interface.

#### 1 Charging status

- Charging port cover can be turned on/off.

#### 2 Charging time

- Scheduled charging function can be turned on/off, and the start and end time for scheduled charging can be set.

#### 3 Limit value

- Charging/discharging limit values can be set.

#### 4 Energy consumption

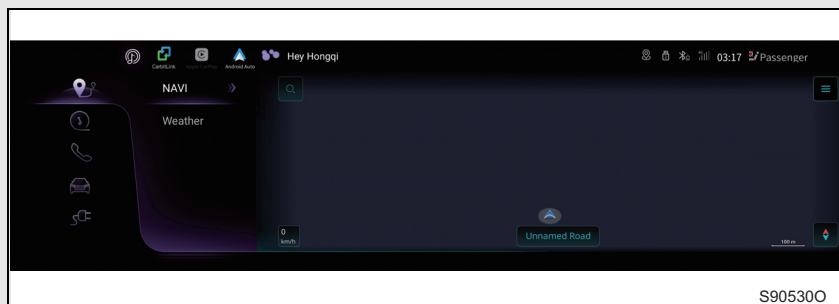
- Display the energy consumption value in a curve format.

#### 5 Setting

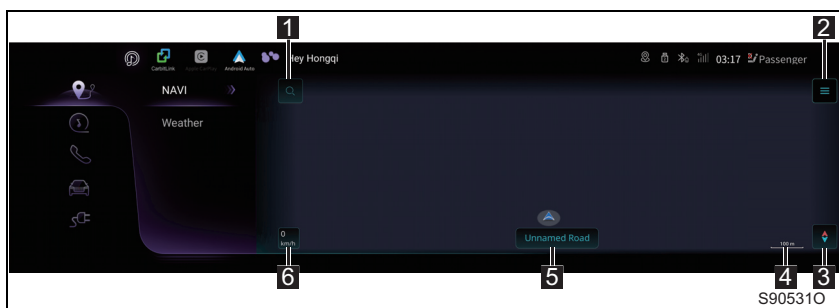
- Low battery reminder: The range of low battery reminder can be set on demand.

## 5-2. Using multimedia system Travel

On the main menu interface, touch [Travel] button on screen to enter the navigation function interface.



### Navigation



#### 1 Search

Touch to search for the destination.

#### 2 Setting

Touch to set map, navigation, update, etc.

#### 3 Map mode

Touch to switch map mode.

#### 4 Scale

Zoom in or out the map display scale.

#### 5 Current position

Display the current position of the vehicle.

### ⑥ Vehicle speed

Display the current vehicle speed Information.



#### **WARNING**

##### ■ **During driving**

- When navigating a route through the navigation system, please drive according to the actual traffic rules. Navigating according to path of navigation system may violate traffic rules sometimes, resulting in a traffic accident.
- During driving, driver should not perform operations such as address search, etc. Please operate after stopping the vehicle. Failure to observe the conditions ahead may lead to a traffic accident.



#### **CAUTION**

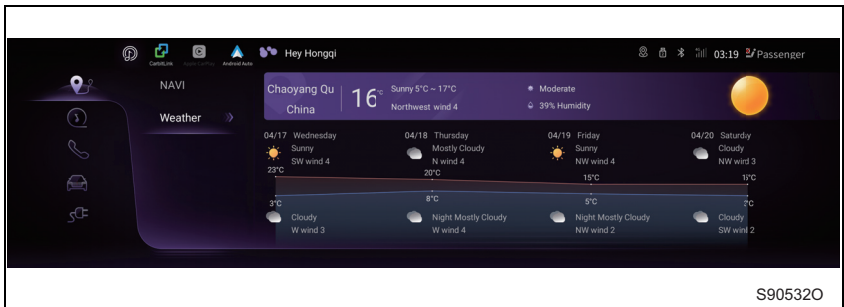
- **At present, all on-board navigation systems have certain limitations. Satellite conditions, road structure, vehicle conditions and other factors may affect the accuracy of vehicle positioning, which will affect the normal function of system. If you have any questions, please contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.**

##### ■ **Network connection quality**

The network connection quality will vary due to the constant change of antenna position, the difference in signal strength, and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitting stations), which make it difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.

- **Due to the continuous updating of navigation version, the actual operation interface may be different from the schematic diagram. Please refer to the latest version.**

Weather

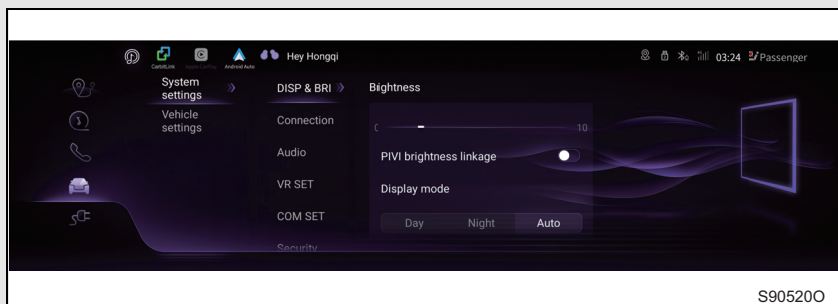


View the weather information, the weather and temperature trends for the next few days at current location.

## 5-2. Using multimedia system

# Entertainment

On the main menu interface, touch [Entertainment] button to enter the entertainment function interface.



### 1 Station

- Perform viewing and playback operations on FM/AM/DAB/favorites interface.
- Manually search for station to play.
- View the radio list, favorites, search for stations and adjust the sound effect setting, etc. on playback interface.

### 2 Local music

- Perform viewing and playback operations on Bluetooth, USB1, USB2, and preset interfaces.
- Touch the play icon below to enter the playback interface, where you can view the song list, switch the playing mode and adjust the sound effect setting, etc.

### 3 Online music

- Perform viewing and playback operations on recommendation interface and history interface of favorites.
- Manually search for music to play.
- Touch the play icon below to enter the playback interface, where you can view the song list, favorite the music, select the source quality, switch the playing mode and adjust the sound effect setting, etc.

**4 Apple CarPlay**

- Connect mobile phone with CarPlay function to use CarPlay function.

**5 Android Auto**

- Connect the Android mobile phone to the vehicle using a USB cable to start using Android Auto.

---

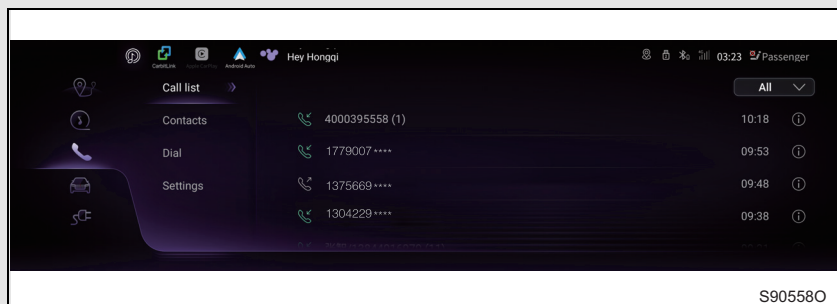
**■ Antenna**

The radio antenna is built into the shark fin antenna.

## 5-2. Using multimedia system

# Bluetooth phone

On the main menu interface, touch [Bluetooth Phone] button to enter the phone function interface.



### 1 Call history

View the call history.

### 2 Contact

View the contact list.

### 3 Dialing keyboard

Dial through the dialing keyboard.

### 4 Setting

Bluetooth can be turned on or off. When Bluetooth is turned on, the saved devices and available devices can be viewed, connected and deleted, and the Bluetooth name can be set.

### ■ Automatic Bluetooth connection function

When the Bluetooth is turned on, the paired Bluetooth device will be automatically connected.

### ■ Privacy protection

Contacts and call history of each mobile phone can only be displayed after the mobile phone is successfully connected. You cannot view the contacts and call history of any mobile phone if it is not connected.



**WARNING****■ During driving**

Do not use a mobile phone or connect a Bluetooth<sup>®</sup> system.

**CAUTION****■ When getting off the vehicle**

Do not leave items such as mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to mobile phones.

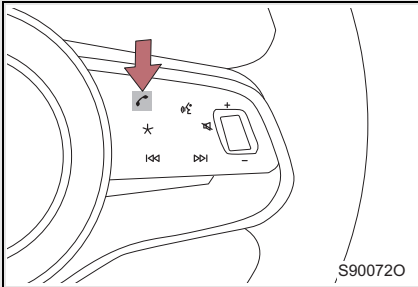
### 5-3. Operating on-board Bluetooth phone

## Hands-free system

**The hands-free system has the function of operating the phone without touching the mobile phone.**

This system support Bluetooth® mobile phones. Bluetooth® is a wireless data system that establishes wireless connection between the mobile phone and the hands-free system.

■ Phone button



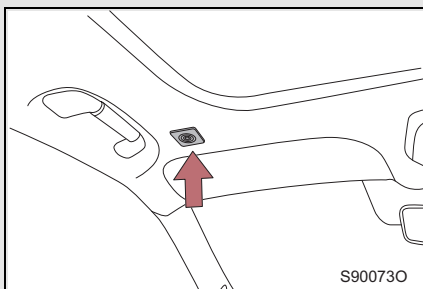
The phone button is located in the position shown in the figure.

**See the following table for specific functions:**

| Information description | Function                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Press                   | In case of an incoming call: Answer the current incoming call;<br>Call/dial-out state: Hang up the current call;<br>In case of no incoming call: Display the last call information, and pressing again will dial out. |
| Press and hold          | In case of an incoming call: Hang up the current call;<br>In case of no incoming call: Automatically dial out the last call number.                                                                                   |

Before using the hands-free system, you must bind a Bluetooth phone.

### ■ Bluetooth microphone



Located near each handle of the vehicle ceiling.

- If the volume of reception is too high, you may hear an echo.
- Try to face the microphone when speaking.
- Under the following circumstances, it may be difficult for the other party to hear the sound:
  - Phone signal is poor.
  - Drive on an unpaved road.
  - Drive at high speed.
  - Window is open.
  - The A/C outlet is facing the microphone.
  - The air volume of A/C blower is too high.

### ■ The system will be inoperative under the following conditions:

- The used phone does not support Bluetooth®.
- The mobile phone is turned off or in flight mode.
- The current location is outside the service area.
- The mobile phone is not connected.
- The mobile phone battery is low.

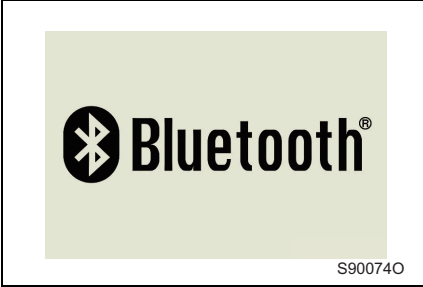
### ■ Bluetooth® antenna

If a mobile phone is placed in the storage box, or in contact with or covered by metal materials, its connection state may deteriorate.

### ■ Battery level/signal status

This display may not be exactly consistent with that of mobile phones.

■ About Bluetooth®



Bluetooth® is the trademark of Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

■ Compatible type

The Bluetooth hands-free system is only compatible with Bluetooth certified (SIG) phones sold through regular channels and of mainstream brands.

 **CAUTION**

■ When getting off the vehicle

Do not leave items such as mobile phones in the vehicle. The temperature inside the vehicle may rise, causing damage to mobile phones.

# Voice recognition

Users can realize the voice control of the system through the voice recognition.

The control functions mainly include: Bluetooth phone, A/C control, etc.

This vehicle supports four sound source localization, that is, the voice recognition system can be used in the first row and the second row. When the voice recognition system is triggered at one position, for other positions, the voice function cannot be used unless the voice recognition system is triggered again.

## Voice recognition trigger

Method 1: Press  button on the steering wheel to trigger the voice recognition system.

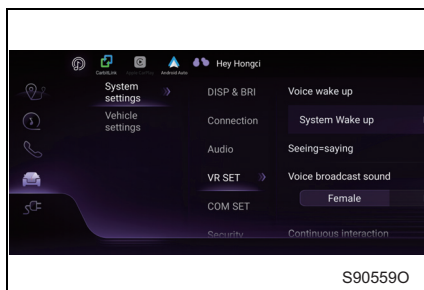
Method 2: Speak out the wake-up password to trigger the voice recognition system.

Method 3: Speak out the voice command directly to trigger the voice recognition system and execute the voice command.

The ON/OFF of the wake-up free can be set in the system settings of multimedia system. (See P. 266)

## Voice recognition help

After triggering the voice recognition, speak out "View help" to open the voice help interface, where you can learn about the common voice commands.



Look at the prompts in the voice interface to learn about common voice commands.

### Voice recognition exit

Method 1: After triggering the voice recognition system, if there are no recognition commands, the system will automatically exit the voice recognition.

Method 2: The system will exit the voice recognition after the normal execution of voice commands.

Method 3: The system will exit the voice recognition after touching «Σ» button on the steering wheel.

Method 4: Speak out the exit command to exit the voice recognition.

 **CAUTION**

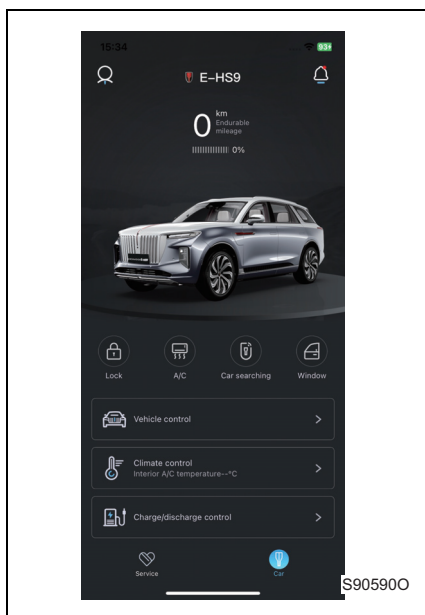
- **The voice recognition results are for reference only.**
- **Please use standard and clear Mandarin, and do not activate the voice recognition when the environment is noisy, so as to avoid incorrect recognition results.**
- **Try to avoid using the voice recognition while driving. If voice recognition is used in such case, please pay attention to the road conditions to prevent danger.**

## 5-5. Using mobile APP

# Hongqi Zhilian APP

**The vehicle can be remotely controlled and operated through the mobile APP.**

- Open the logged-in Hongqi Zhilian APP to access the APP home.



### 1 Service

Network query and other operations can be performed.

### 2 My vehicle

Information view: View driving range and remaining power.

Remote control: On the main interface, you can perform quick operations (lock, A/C, vehicle locating, window).

Through [Vehicle Control] on the main interface, you can enter the basic vehicle control interface, view the total mileage, tire pressure, doors, lights, front compartment cover and trunk, and operate the lock, window, sunroof and other functions.

Through [Parking Climate] on the main interface, you can enter the vehicle environment control interface, and operate functions such as A/C, seat heating and steering wheel heating.

Through [Charge Control] on the main interface, you can enter the vehicle charging control interface, and you can view the related status of vehicle charging and operate remote charging.

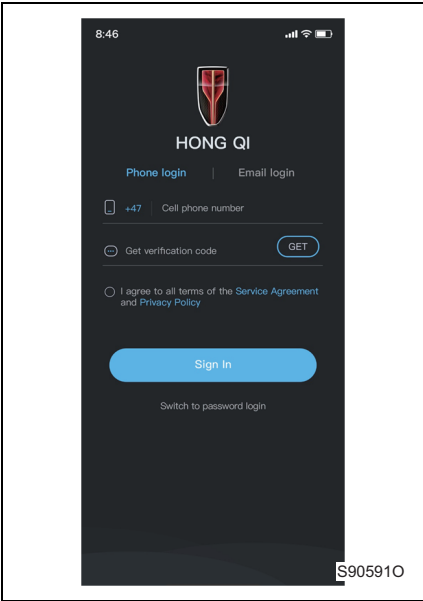
### 3 Message center

You can view messages.

4 Personal center

You can set and view user information, vehicle information, privacy rights, account and PIN code management, common questions and other functions on this interface.

Login



Phone login

Enter the area code and phone number to obtain the verification code. After entering the verification code, touch [Login] button on mobile phone screen to log in to the system.

Email login

After the first login, you can bind the email. Then you can use the email as the login certificate.

APP download

For download and installation of mobile APP, please consult the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Software version

As the software version is constantly updated, the actual operation interface may be different from the schematic diagram. Please refer to the latest version.



**WARNING****■ When mobile phone is lost**

If your mobile phone is lost, it will increase the risk of vehicle theft. Please keep it properly, and contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer if necessary.

**■ Network connection quality**

The network connection quality will vary due to the constant change of antenna position, the difference in signal strength, and the influence of nearby objects (such as trains and transmitting stations), which make it difficult to maintain perfect reception quality.

**CAUTION****■ Use permission**

When using APP, some functions need to be given corresponding permissions, and ensure that the third-party tools do not prohibit the network permissions of APP, otherwise the system may not operate properly.

**■ In case of a fault**

If the fault cannot be eliminated, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



**6-1. Using A/C system**

Automatic A/C  
system .....292

Automatic A/C system -  
front control  
system .....293

Automatic A/C system -  
second row control  
system .....303

Third row A/C  
control system .....309

Rear windshield  
heating .....313

**6-2. Using interior lamp**

Interior lamp list .....314

**6-3. Using storage  
compartments**

Storage compartments  
list .....317

Trunk device .....323

**6-4. Other equipment**

On-board wireless  
charging .....324

Sun visor .....326

Document  
holder .....327

Vanity mirror .....328

Power outlet .....329

220 V power  
outlet .....332

Seat temperature  
control\* .....334

Seat massage  
function\* .....336

Rear center  
armrest\* .....337

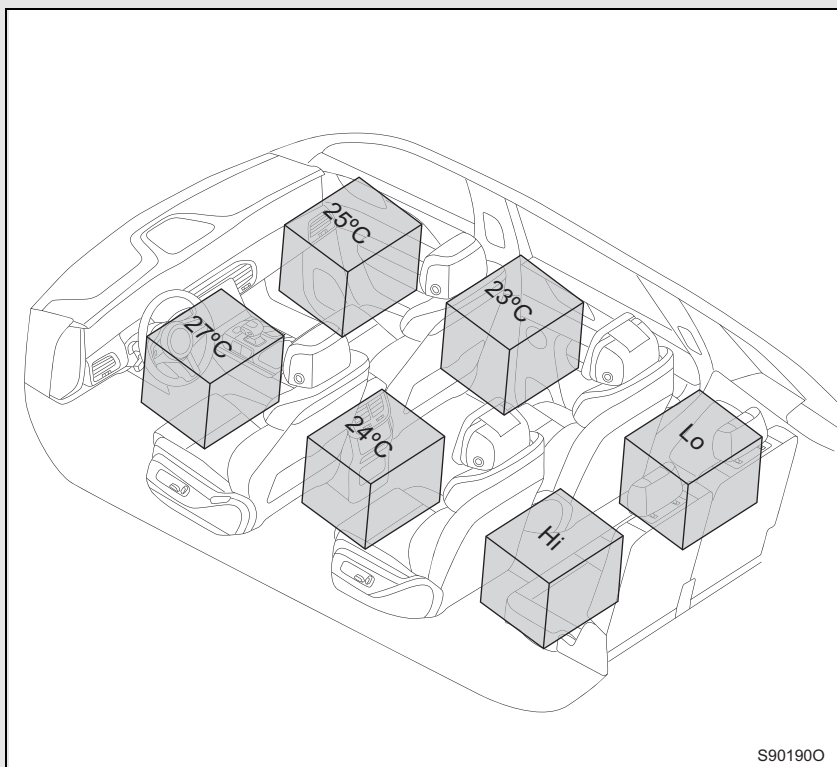
Roof grab handle .....338

Coat hook .....339

## 6-1. Using A/C system

### Automatic A/C system

The vehicle is equipped with a automatic A/C system with multi-temperature zone, which can automatically cool and heat according to the temperature set by users, and you can also manually set the air outlet mode and air volume for each seating position.

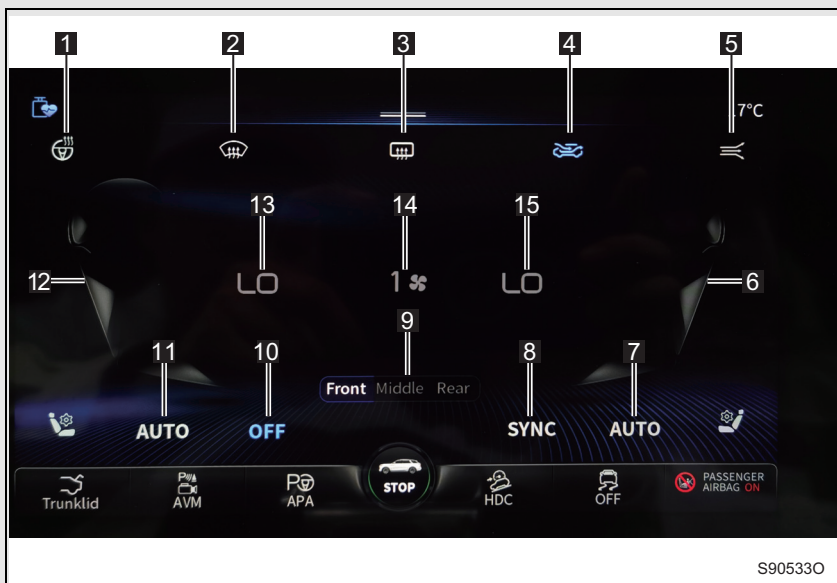


Note: This figure only takes six-seat model as an example.

# Automatic A/C system - front control system

According to temperature setting, air outlet is automatically selected and air volume is automatically adjusted.

► Operation display of front A/C



- 1 Steering wheel heating button
- 2 Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging button
- 3 Rear windshield heating button
- 4 Recirculation/double-layer flow/fresh air mode button
- 5 Natural ventilation button
- 6 Front passenger side air outlet mode button
- 7 Front passenger side AUTO button
- 8 SYNC button
- 9 Front/middle/rear switching button
- 10 OFF button
- 11 Driver side AUTO button
- 12 Driver side air outlet mode button
- 13 Driver side temperature setting button
- 14 Air volume setting button
- 15 Front passenger side temperature setting button

Using automatic A/C system



Touch the [AUTO] button, the working indicator lamp comes on and enters the automatic A/C mode.

Set the temperature by touching the temperature setting button according to your personal needs in automatic A/C mode, and the temperature display also shows the set temperature simultaneously.

■ Using automatic mode

The air volume is automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting and environmental conditions. Therefore, the following situations may occur.

- In summer, when the low temperature setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to the recirculation mode.
- When the switch is pressed, the blower may not turn immediately until the warm or cool air is ready for normal air supply operation.

## Manual adjustment setting

### ■ Adjusting air volume



Slide up/down the air volume setting value to adjust the air volume of the A/C system among level 1-7.

### ■ Adjusting temperature



Slide up/down the temperature setting value to set the temperature.

The temperature on the driver side and front passenger side can be adjusted separately.

### ■ Turning off A/C

Touch the [OFF] button to turn off A/C.

■ Switching temperature zone control mode



Touch the [SYNC] button, the indicator lamp will come on, the single-temperature-zone control mode will be activated, and the temperature and air outlet mode on front passenger side and the second row area will be synchronized to the temperature and air outlet mode on the driver side.

Touch the [SYNC] button again, the indicator lamp will go out, and the multi-temperature-zone control mode will be activated. At this time, the temperature and air outlet mode on driver side, front passenger side and the second row can be independently controlled. In the single-temperature-zone control mode, the multi-temperature-zone control mode will be activated by directly operating the temperature or air outlet mode setting button on front passenger side or second row.



## ■ Switching air outlet mode



Touch the air outlet mode button to select the corresponding air outlet mode, and touch it again to cancel the air outlet mode. The air outlet modes can be combined for selection.

-  : Face mode.
-  : Foot mode.
-  : Front windshield mode.
-  : Face and foot mode.
-  : Face and front windshield mode.
-  : Foot and front windshield mode.
-  : Face, foot and front windshield mode.

## ■ Switching recirculation/double-layer flow/fresh air mode

Touch the recirculation/double-layer flow/fresh air mode button to switch the circulation mode. When  button comes on, the recirculation mode is activated; when  button comes on, the double-layer flow circulation mode is activated; when  button comes on, the fresh air mode is activated.

When switching to automatic A/C mode, the A/C system automatically switches the circulation mode.

### WARNING

#### ■ Do not use the recirculation mode in cold or rainy weather

Using the recirculation mode in cold or rainy weather can cause the windows to fog up, which can obstruct your vision and could lead to a serious accident.

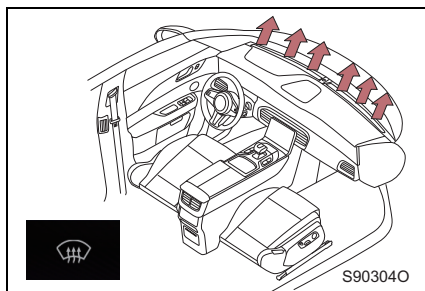
#### ■ When using recirculation mode

The windows may fog up easily if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.

#### ■ When cleaning the windows, the system will automatically switch to recirculation mode to prevent the smell of washer fluid from entering the vehicle, and If it is in front windshield forced defrosting/defogging mode, the double-layer flow circulation mode will be activated.

### Other functions

#### ■ Front windshield forced defrosting/defogging



Touch  button, the indicator lamp comes on, and the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging function is turned on.

If it is currently in recirculation mode, the system will automatically switch to fresh air mode, and it cannot be manually switched to recirculation mode.

Increase the air volume to defrost/defog the front/side windshield as soon as possible.

**CAUTION****■ The windows may fog up under the following conditions, please pay attention to driving safety**

- The windows tend to fog up when the inside humidity is high.
- In rainy weather, the windows may fog up.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.

**WARNING****■ Preventing windshield fogging**

- When the weather is extremely humid, do not use the front windshield forced defrosting/defogging mode during cooling operation. The temperature difference between the air outside the vehicle and the windshield may cause the outer surface of the windshield to fog up, obstructing your vision.
- Do not place any objects on the instrument panel that may cover the air outlets as this may block the airflow and hinder the front windshield defogging.

**■ Natural ventilation function**

Touch  button to activate the natural ventilation mode, the air inlet mode is switched to fresh air mode, and the air outlet mode is switched to face + foot mode. At this time, the compressor stops operating, thus saving energy.

**■ Auto defogging mode (ADS)\***

When the front windshield fogs up and has a tendency to affect driving safety, the A/C system will activate auto defogging mode, and the air volume will be appropriately increased and blown to the front windshield. When the tendency is disengaged, the A/C system will automatically switch back to the operating state before defogging. When the auto defogging mode is activated, operate the auto A/C ON button or the air outlet mode adjustment button to exit the auto defogging mode, and the A/C system will not repeatedly start this mode for a period of time.

Prompt: When the auto defogging mode is activated, the air volume of the A/C system will be large.

■ Deicing function

During vehicle charging, check whether there is icing through deicing detection cycle. If there is icing, the deicing mode will be automatically entered, and automatically exited after deicing. During deicing, it is temporarily impossible to heat the cab.

■ Battery cooling/heating function

If the battery needs to be cooled/heated, the vehicle will automatically cool/heat the battery. After the cooling/heating function is turned on, the A/C comfort in the vehicle may be poor.

Drop-down menu of front A/C display

Swipe down the front A/C display screen to pull out the setting menu to set fragrance system, environmental mode, key tone and screen brightness.

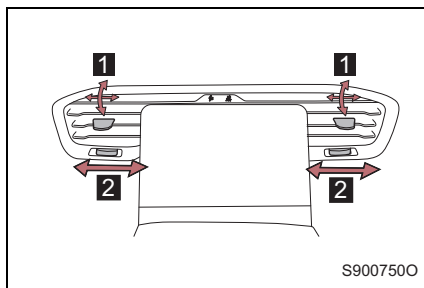
■ Fragrance system\*



After selecting the appropriate fragrance mode, the system will cooperate with the A/C to improve the interior environment of the vehicle for enhanced comfort of the driver and passengers.

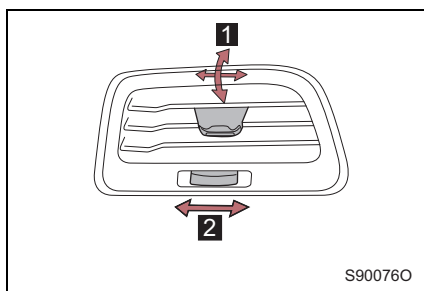
## Adjusting direction of air outlet, opening and closing air outlet

### ► Front center air outlet



- 1** Direct airflow to left or right, upper or lower side.
- 2** Toggle to open or close the air outlet.

### ► Front side air outlet



- 1** Direct airflow to left or right, upper or lower side.
- 2** Toggle to open or close the air outlet.

### ■ Circulation mode

- When driving on dusty roads (e.g. tunnels) or congested roads, switch to the recirculation mode. This effectively prevents outside air from entering the vehicle. When cooling, the set temperature can be achieved faster in recirculation mode.
- The windows may fog up if the recirculation mode has been in use for a long time.

### ■ Fragrance system

- If the fragrance system is turned on with A/C OFF, the A/C blower will be automatically turned on.
- When the fragrance system is turned on, it will automatically enter fresh air mode.

### ■ Windshield defroster

- The air volume may increase when the defrosting/defogging function is in operation, which helps defrost/defog the front windshield as soon as possible.

### ■ A/C odor

- During use, various odors from inside and outside the vehicle may enter and accumulate in the A/C system. This may cause odors to emanate from the air outlets.



### CAUTION

#### ■ A/C energy saving mode

When the vehicle is in the long range mode or the battery power is less than 10%, the A/C system will enter the energy saving mode. In this case, the cooling and heating effects will decrease, ion purification function and PM2.5 function will be disabled.

## 6-1. Using A/C system

### Automatic A/C system - second row control system

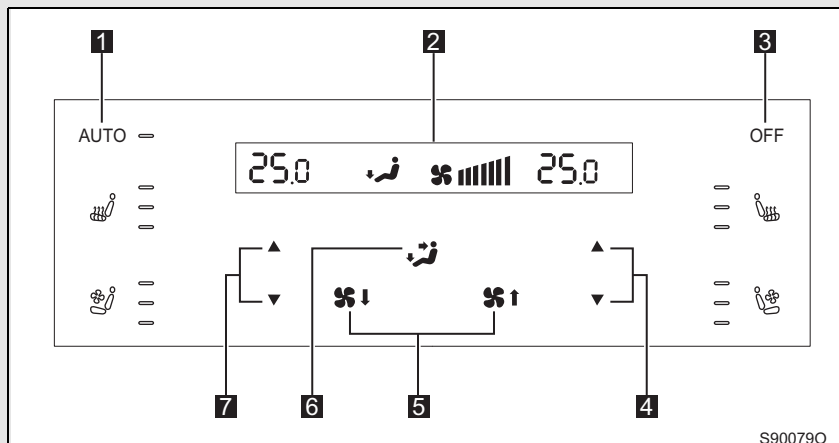
The second row A/C control system can synchronously or independently adjust the temperature and air outlet mode in the second row according to the needs of occupants, so as to improve the ride comfort.

► Operation display of front A/C



- 1 Air outlet mode setting button for second row occupants
- 2 Temperature setting button for left rear occupants
- 3 Air volume setting button
- 4 Temperature setting button for right rear occupants
- 5 AUTO button
- 6 Front/middle/rear switching button
- 7 OFF button

### ► Operation panel of second row A/C



**1** AUTO button

**2** Display

**3** OFF button

**4** Temperature setting button for right rear occupants

**5** Air volume setting button

**6** Air outlet mode setting button for second row occupants

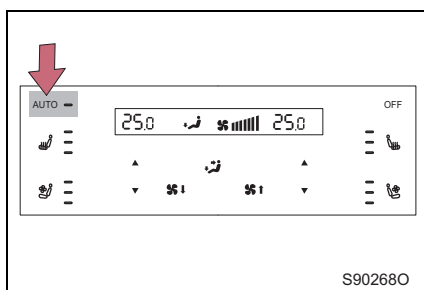
**7** Temperature setting button for left rear occupants



## Using automatic A/C system



Method 1: Touch [AUTO] button on the A/C operation display, and the indicator lamp will come on, and enters the auto A/C mode.



Method 2: Touch [AUTO] button on the operation panel, and the indicator lamp will come on, and enters the auto A/C mode.

Set the temperature by touching the temperature setting button according to your personal needs in automatic A/C mode, and the temperature display also shows the set temperature simultaneously.

### ■ Using automatic mode

The air volume is automatically adjusted according to the temperature setting and environmental conditions. Therefore, the following situations may occur.

- In summer, when the low temperature setting is selected, the system will automatically switch to the recirculation mode.
- When the switch is pressed, the blower may not turn immediately until the warm or cool air is ready for normal air supply operation.

Manual adjustment setting

■ Adjusting air volume



Method 1: Slide up/down the air volume setting value on operation display of A/C to adjust the air volume of A/C system among level 1-7.

Method 2: Operate  air volume setting button on the operation panel to adjust the air volume of A/C system among level 1-7.

■ Adjusting temperature



Method 1: Slide up/down the temperature setting value on operation display of A/C to set the temperature.

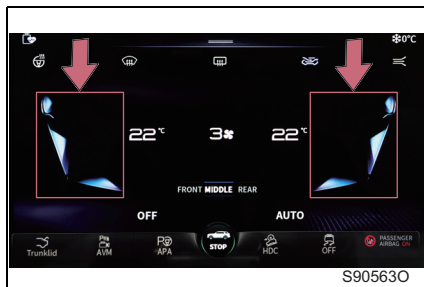
Method 2: Operate  temperature setting button on the operation panel to set the temperature.

The temperature of the left rear passenger and the right rear passenger can be adjusted independently.

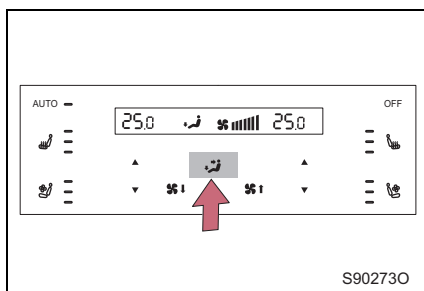
■ Turning off A/C

Touch [OFF] button on the display or [OFF] button on the operation panel to turn off the A/C system.

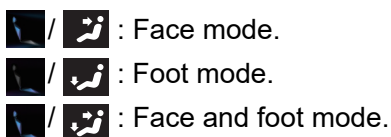
## ■ Switching air outlet mode



Method 1: Touch the wind direction indicator to select the corresponding air outlet mode, and touch it again to cancel the air outlet mode. The air outlet modes can be combined for selection.

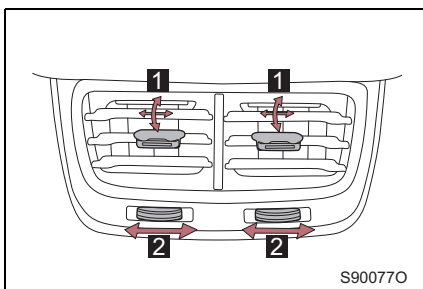


Method 2: Touch the air outlet mode setting button to switch the air outlet mode.



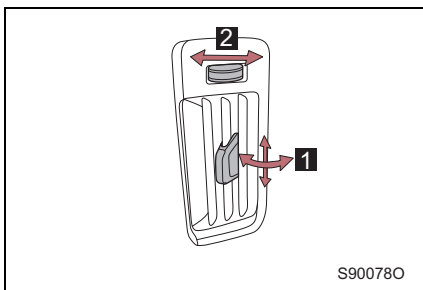
## Adjusting direction of air outlet, opening and closing air outlet

### ► Second row central air outlet



- 1** Direct airflow to left or right, upper or lower side.
- 2** Rotate the knob to open or close the air outlet.

### ► Second row side air outlet



- 1** Direct airflow to left or right, upper or lower side.
- 2** Rotate the knob to open or close the air outlet.

## Third row A/C control system

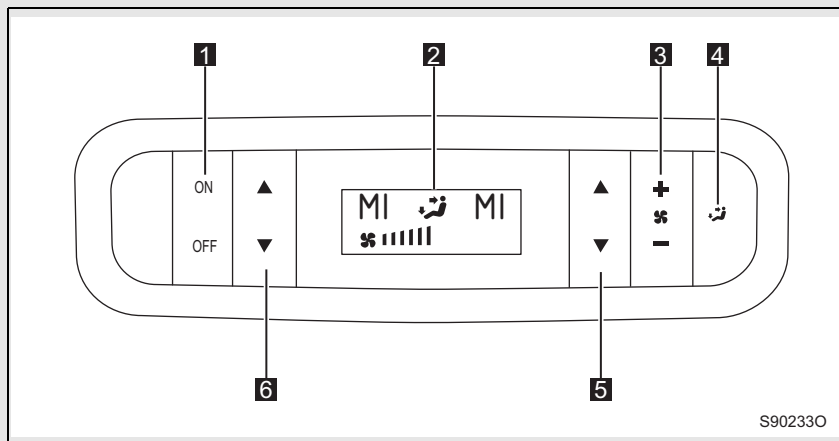
The third row A/C system has heating function but not cooling function. When the front A/C system starts heating, the third row A/C setting button can be operated to independently heat the third row area; when the front A/C system starts cooling, the third row A/C setting button can be operated to circulate the air in the third row area.

► Operation display of front A/C



- 1 Air outlet mode setting button for third row occupants
- 2 Temperature setting button for third row left occupants
- 3 Air volume setting button
- 4 Temperature setting button for third row right occupants
- 5 Front/middle/rear switching button
- 6 OFF button
- 7 AUTO button

### ► Operation panel of third row A/C



S90233O

**1** ON/OFF button

**2** Display

**3** Air volume setting button

**4** Air outlet mode setting button for third row occupants

**5** Temperature setting button for third row right occupants

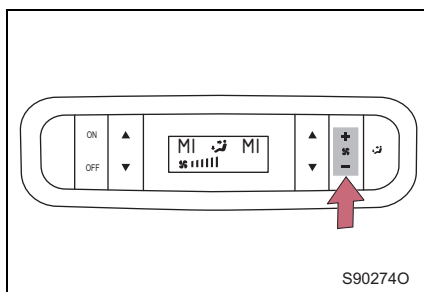
**6** Temperature setting button for third row left occupants

## Manual adjustment setting

### ■ Adjusting air volume

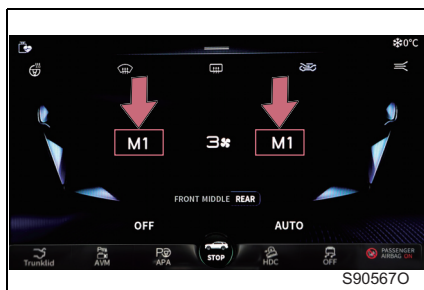


Method 1: Slide up/down the air volume setting value in operation display of front A/C to adjust the air volume of the third row A/C among level 1-5.



Method 2: Operate the air volume setting button on operation panel to adjust the air volume of third row A/C among level 1-5.

### ■ Adjusting temperature



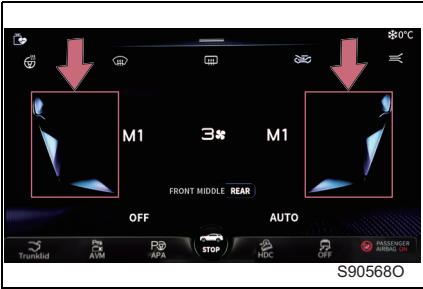
Method 1: Slide up/down the temperature setting value on operation display of front A/C to set the temperature.

Method 2: Operate ▲ / ▼ temperature setting button on the operation panel to set the temperature.

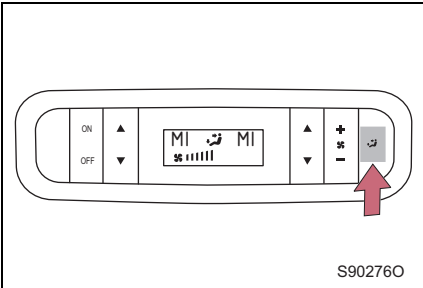
### ■ Turning off A/C

Touch [OFF] button on the display or [OFF] button on the operation panel to turn off the A/C system.

■ Switching air outlet mode



Method 1: Touch the wind direction indicator to select the corresponding air outlet mode, and touch it again to cancel the air outlet mode. The air outlet modes can be combined for selection.



Method 2: Touch the air outlet mode button to switch the air outlet mode.

-  /  : Face mode.
-  /  : Foot mode.
-  /  : Face and foot mode.



# Rear windshield heating



Touch  button on the display screen. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the system starts heating rear windshield and exterior rear view mirrors.

Touch  button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the system stops.

Note: The system will be turned off automatically after a period of operation and the indicator lamp will go out.



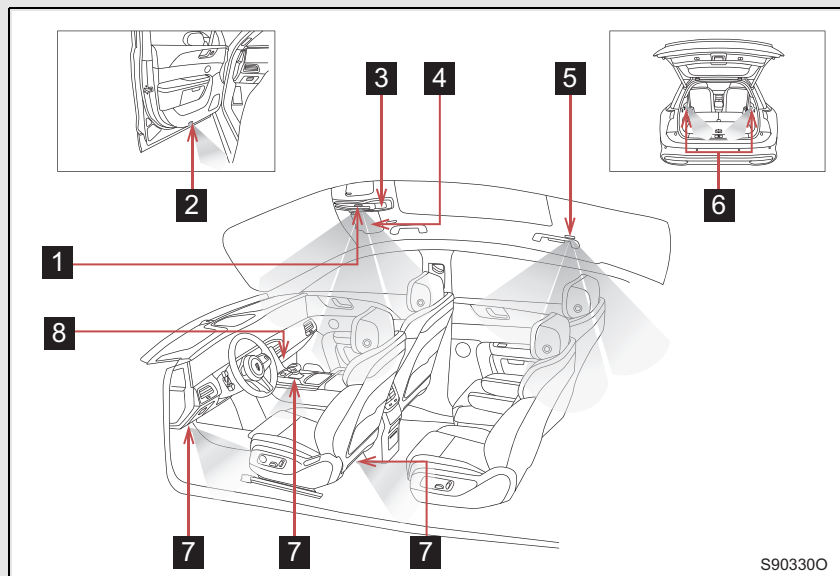
## WARNING

### ■ Precautions during rear windshield heating

Do not touch the heating area as it may become very hot and cause burns.

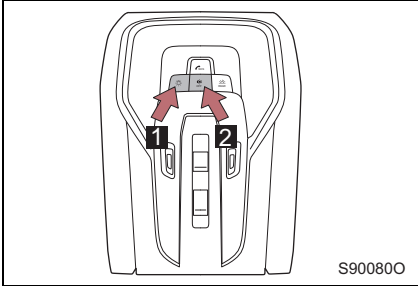
## 6-2. Using interior lamp

### Interior lamp list



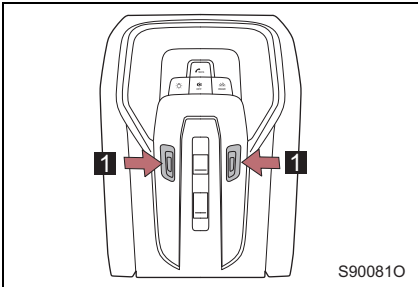
- 1** Front reading lamp
- 2** Door lamp
- 3** Front interior lamp
- 4** Vanity mirror lamp
- 5** Rear reading lamp
- 6** Trunk lamp
- 7** Ambient lamp\* (See P. 273)
- 8** Glove box lamp

## Front interior lamp



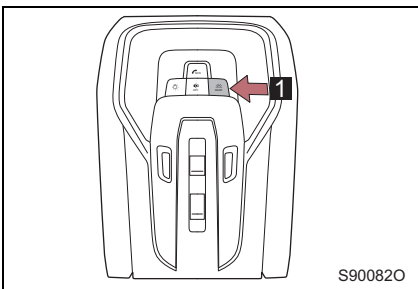
- 1** Touch  button to turn on the front interior lamp, and touch the button again to turn off the front interior lamp.
- 2** Touch  button. Then the indicator lamp comes on, and the door linkage function is turned off. Touch the button again. Then the indicator lamp goes out, and the door linkage function is turned on.

## Front reading lamp

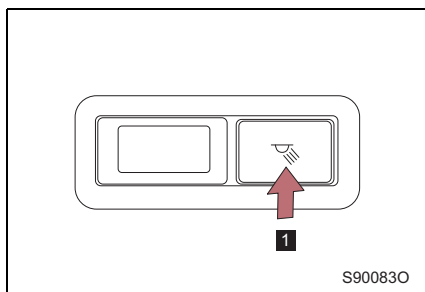


- 1** Touch the front reading lamp position to turn on the front reading lamp, and touch it again to turn off the front reading lamp.

## Rear reading lamp

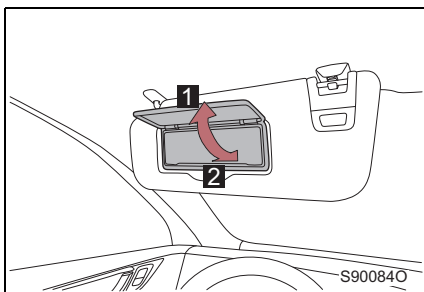


- 1** Touch  button to turn on the rear reading lamp, and touch it again to turn off the rear reading lamp.



- 1 Touch  button to turn on the rear reading lamp on the corresponding side, and touch the button again to turn off the rear reading lamp.

### Vanity mirror lamp



- 1 Open the sun visor and open the vanity mirror cover to turn on the vanity mirror lamp.
- 2 Close the vanity mirror cover to turn off the vanity mirror lamp.

### ■ Energy saving control

With the front interior lamp switch in the door linkage position, if the door is open, the interior lamp will be on for a period of time and then go out; when the power (ignition) switch is turned to OFF mode and each door is closed, the interior lamp and ambient lamp will go out on a delayed basis.



### CAUTION

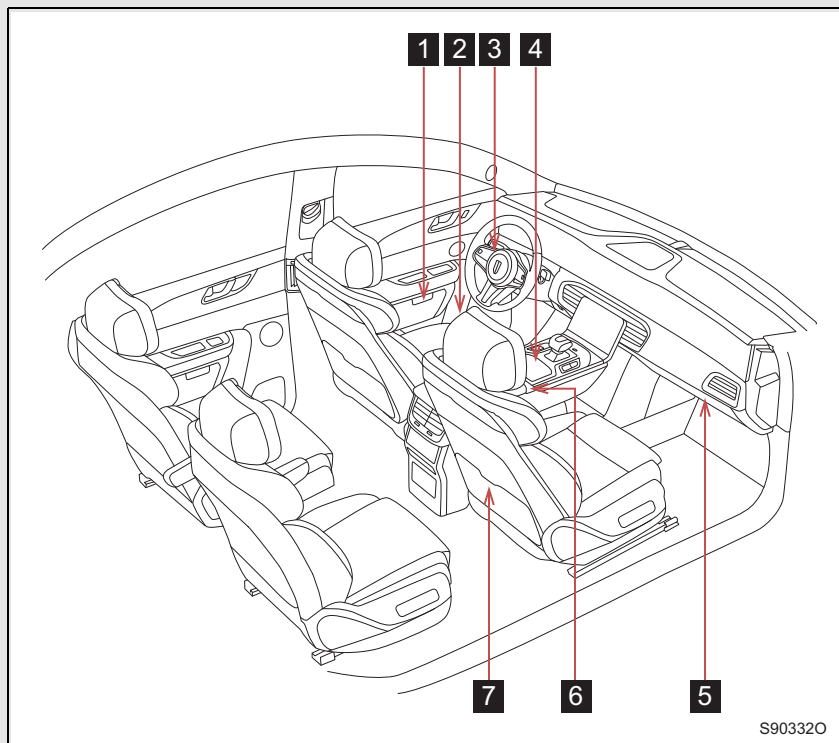
#### ■ Preventing a depleted battery

Turn off the interior lamps when not needed.

Do not allow the vanity mirror cover or the doors to be in open status for a long time. When they are opened, the corresponding interior lamps will come on and the battery may be depleted.

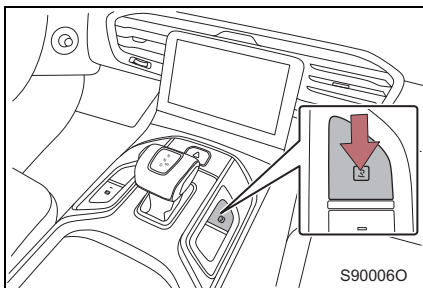
## 6-3. Using storage compartments

### Storage compartments list



- 1** Door storage box
- 2** Storage box
- 3** Storage box on left lower guard
- 4** Cup holder (front/rear)
- 5** Glove box
- 6** Front center storage box
- 7** Document pocket

### Glove box

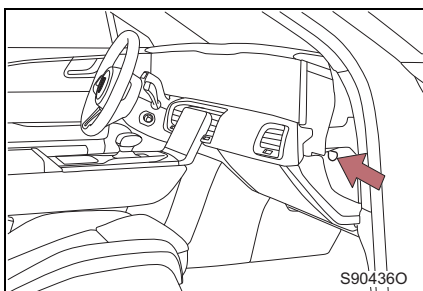


Press the glove box switch to open it.

When closing the glove box cover, a "click" is emitted to indicate that it is securely locked.

Set the password for the glove box in the vehicle settings of in-vehicle infotainment system. (See P. 269)

### ■ Emergency opening of glove box



When the glove box cannot be opened normally via the glove box switch, it can be opened in an emergency via the glove box cable.

Remove the right cover of the instrument panel and pull the glove box cable.

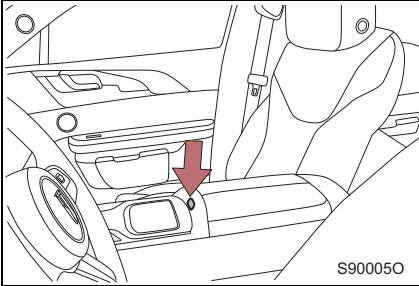
### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Warning during driving**

Keep the glove box closed.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

## Front center storage box



Press the storage box switch to pop up the front center storage box cover.

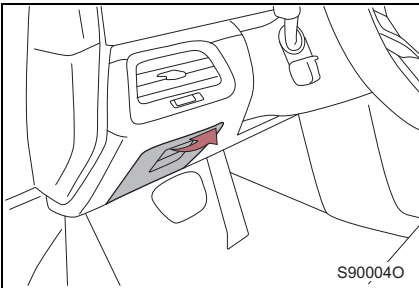
### WARNING

#### ■ Warning during driving

Keep the storage box closed.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

## Storage box on left lower guard



Pull the opening handle to open the storage box.

When closing the storage box cover, a "click" sound indicates that it is firmly locked.

### WARNING

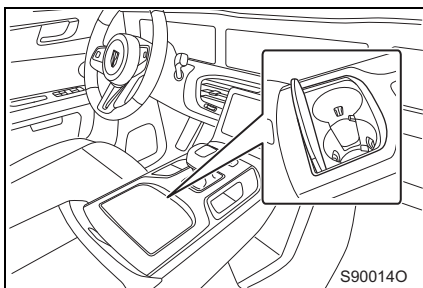
#### ■ Warning during driving

Keep the storage box closed.

Otherwise it may affect normal driving of the driver, and result in injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

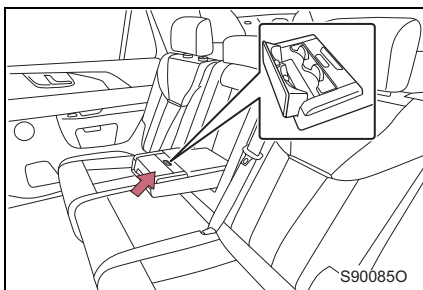
### Cup holder

#### ► Front



Press down the cup holder cover to enable the cup holder cover to automatically flip open.

#### ► Rear\*



Lower the rear center armrest, press the cup holder cover opening button to enable the rear cup holder to automatically pop out.

#### ■ When storing a cup in cup holder

- Tighten the cup cover.
- Depending on size or shape, certain cups may not be stored in the cup holder.



## WARNING

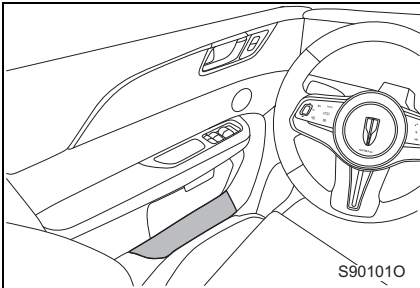
### ■ When using cup holder

- Do not place anything other than cups or aluminum cans in the cup holder, as such items may be thrown out of the cup holder and cause personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.
- It is dangerous to use a cup holder for holding a cup with hot liquid. If the liquid inside the cup is spilled, it may cause burns.
- Be careful to prevent foreign objects such as liquids from coming into contact with the electrical parts around the cup holder, as this may cause risk of short circuit or electric shock.

### ■ When not in use

Keep the cup holder closed. Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

## Storage box

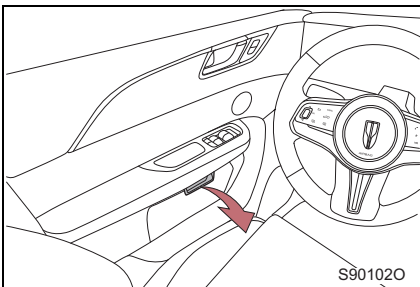


A storage box is provided on each door and can be used to store miscellaneous items such as bottles or rags.

When storing bottles, tighten the caps.

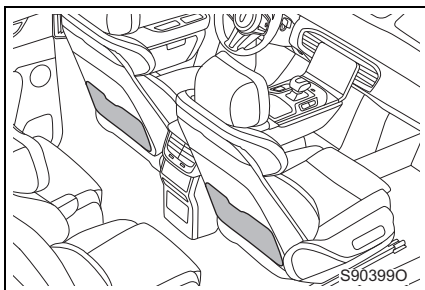
Depending on size or shape, certain bottles may not be stored in the storage box.

## Door storage box



Storage boxes are located on each door. Pull the storage box cover to open the storage box.

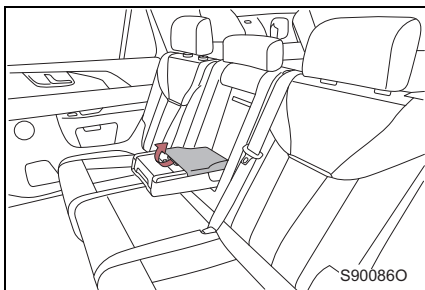
### Document pocket



Document pockets are located on the rear of the driver's and front passenger's seat backs.

They are used for storing newspapers, magazines and other items.

### Rear center storage box\*



Lift the storage box cover to open the storage box.



#### **WARNING**

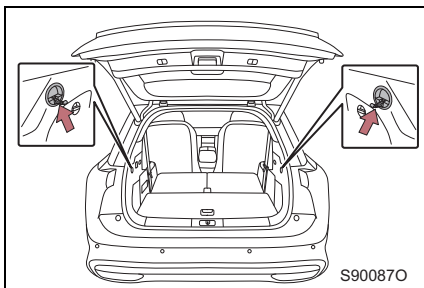
##### **■ Warning during driving**

Keep the storage box closed.

Failure to do so may result in personal injury in the event of an accident or emergency braking.

### Trunk device

#### Trunk hook



Trunk hooks are provided on the left and right sides of the trunk.



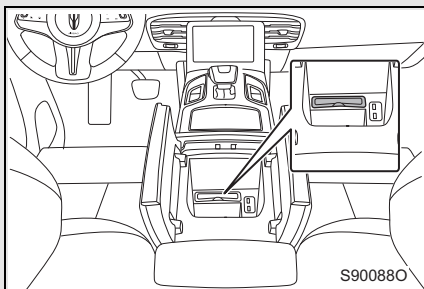
#### WARNING

- Always return the trunk hook to the stowed position when not in use.
- Do not hang any items weighing more than 2 kg on the trunk hooks.

## On-board wireless charging

► Front

**The center storage box is equipped with a wireless charging system.**



Mobile phones that support Qi standard wireless charging can be placed in the wireless charging area for charging.

Mobile phones that do not support Qi standard wireless charging need to be charged with a receiver.

### ■ Operating conditions of on-board wireless charging system

Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

#### **WARNING**

#### ■ **Before charging, please remove all metal objects from the charging pad**

If there are any metal objects (such as coins, keys, rings or paper clips) on wireless charging area while the phone is charging wirelessly, do not remove them immediately by hand to avoid burning your fingers. Please remove the mobile phone first and wait for the metal objects to cool down before removing them.

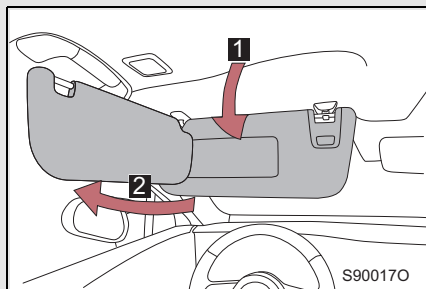
**CAUTION****■ When charging**

- Remove all items from the wireless charging area. If there are foreign objects, the system may not charge properly.
- The mobile phone should be placed in the middle of the charging area as much as possible.

**■ Please do not place magnetic cards such as expressway toll cards in the wireless charging area, as they may cause demagnetization.****■ Wireless charging disabled**

It is normal that if you start the vehicle or leave the vehicle with the key during wireless charging, the wireless charging will be interrupted for a short time.

## Sun visor



**1** Front position

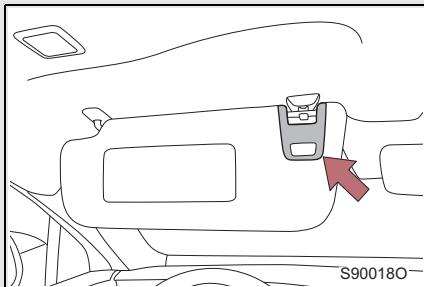
Turn down the sun visor.

**2** Side position

Turn down the sun visor, unhook it, and pull it to the side.

## 6-4. Other equipment

### Document holder



The document holder is located on the sun visor of driver and front passenger sides.

It is used to store tickets, business cards and other objects.

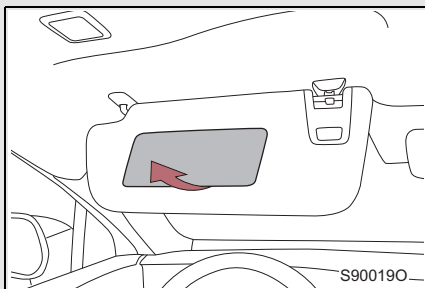


#### CAUTION

##### ■ Preventing damage to the document holder

Do not put too many objects in the document holder.

## Vanity mirror



Turn down the sun visor and turn up the vanity mirror cover to open the mirror.



### CAUTION

■ **When not in use**

Keep the vanity mirror closed.

■ **Preventing low battery**

Do not allow the vanity mirror lamp to be on for a long time while the vehicle is not started.

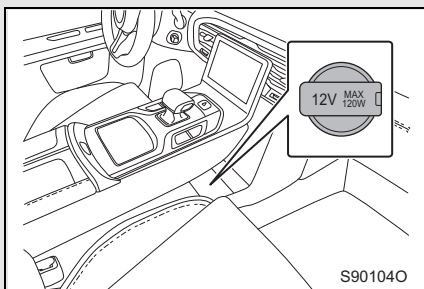


### Power outlet

#### ■ 12 V power

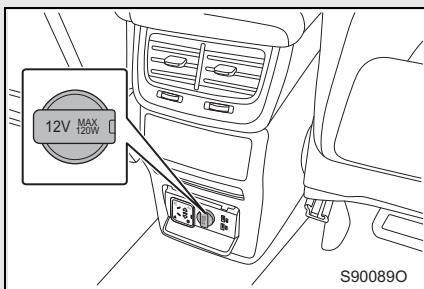
The power outlet can be used for 12 V accessories with operating current less than 10 A.

#### ► Front



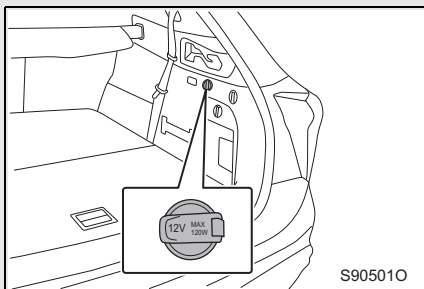
Located under the auxiliary fascia console.

#### ► Rear



Located at the lower end of rear center air outlet.

#### ► Inside trunk

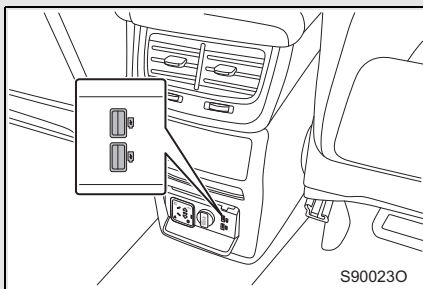


Located on the right trim panel of trunk.

### ■ 5 V USB power

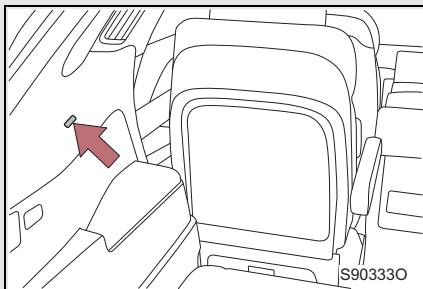
The power outlet can be used for 5 V accessories with operating current less than 2 A.

#### ► Rear



Located at the lower end of rear center air outlet.

#### ► Third row\*



Located on the trunk trim panels on both sides of the third row seats.

---

### ■ Operating conditions of power outlets

Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

**CAUTION****■ Preventing damage to power outlets**

When the power outlet is not in use, the power outlet cover should be closed, otherwise foreign objects or liquids will enter the power outlet and cause short circuit.

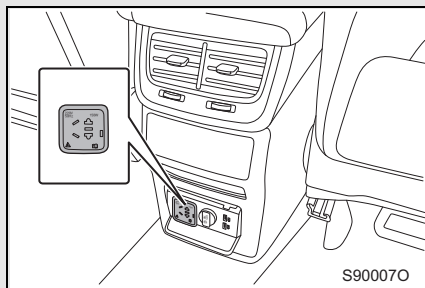
**■ Preventing blown fuses**

Do not use accessories exceeding rated voltage/current.

## 6-4. Other equipment

### 220 V power outlet

**The vehicle is equipped with a 220 V power outlet.**



Located at the lower end of rear center air outlet.

#### ■ Operating conditions of 220 V power outlet

Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

#### ■ Indicator lamp

When operating normally, the indicator lamp (green) will remain on; If there is a fault, such as input voltage overvoltage, 220 V output overload, short circuit, electric leakage, overtemperature protection, the indicator lamp (red) will flash.



#### **WARNING**

##### ■ When 220 V power outlet operates, it is in a high voltage state

- Never spill liquid on the power outlet.
- Do not connect the adapter or additional wires to the 220 V power outlet, otherwise the built-in child electric shock protection function will fail and the power outlet will remain electrified.
- Be careful not to insert any conductive items, such as knitting needles, into the contacts in the 220 V power outlet by mistake.

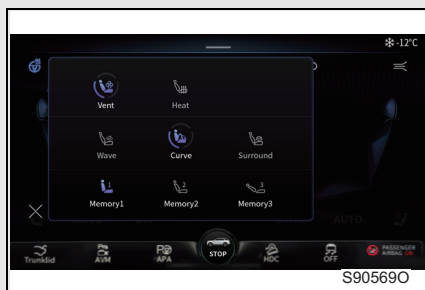
**CAUTION**

- **Connect the electrical device:** Insert the plug into the limited position to unlock the built-in child electric shock protection. Power will only be supplied to the outlet after the child electric shock protection has been unlocked.
- **Be sure to strictly abide by the instructions provided by the electrical appliance manufacturer for operation!**
- **The power consumption of electrical appliances shall not be greater than the maximum rated output power of the outlet of 150 W, otherwise, the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.**
- **Do not plug heavy electrical devices such as power adapters or plugs directly into the outlet.**
- **Only electrical devices with voltage matching the outlet voltage can be connected to the outlet.**
- **If the temperature exceeds a specified value, the output of 220 V power outlet will be automatically powered off. When the power consumption or the ambient temperature is too high, the overheat protection function will be activated and the 220 V output will be turned off. When the temperature drops to the specified value, the 220 V power outlet will automatically restore the 220 V output and the power supply to the electrical appliances. When the inverter is powered off due to its own overheating, it will also cut off the current supply to electrical appliances.**

# Seat temperature control\*

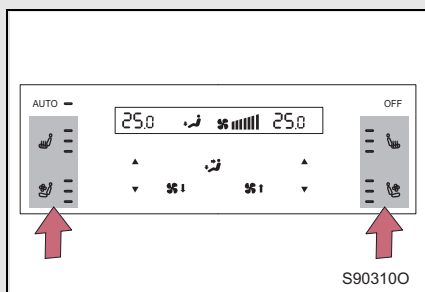
**The temperature of each seat can be adjusted separately.**

### ■ Front seat temperature adjustment



Touch the seat setting button on the front A/C operation panel to access the seat setting interface, and touch the seat heating and ventilation button to select appropriate heating and ventilation level.

### ■ Rear seat temperature adjustment



Touch the seat heating and ventilation button on the rear A/C operation panel to select appropriate heating and ventilation level.

### ■ Operating conditions

Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

**WARNING**

■ **Be sure to observe the following precautions when using seat heating or ventilation function**

- Use caution when following persons are seating on the heated seat to avoid burns:
  - Infants, children, the elderly, the sick and the disabled
  - Persons with sensitive skin
  - Persons who are very fatigued
  - Persons who are drowsy because of taking alcohol or drugs (sleeping pills, cold medicine, etc.)
- Do not cover the seat with any object (e.g. blanket, seat cushion) when using seat heating or ventilation. Otherwise, the seat temperature will increase or decrease, which leads to overheating or overcooling.
- Do not turn on the seat heating or ventilation function unless necessary. Otherwise, passengers may feel overcooled, overheated or suffer from local burns.

**CAUTION**

■ **Preventing damage to seat heating or ventilation system**

Do not place heavy objects with uneven surfaces on the seats, or stick sharp objects (needles, nails, etc.) in the seats.

■ **When cleaning seats**

Do not clean the seats with organic substances such as benzene, gasoline, etc. Otherwise, the heater and seat upholstery are liable to be damaged.

# Seat massage function\*

The seat massage function can be used through A/C operation interface.



Touch the seat setting button on the front A/C operation panel to access the seat setting interface, where the seat massage mode and level can be selected.

### ■ Operating conditions

Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

### ■ Operating duration

The system will automatically turn off after about 15 minutes of operation.

## WARNING

### ■ Using seat massage function

- Pregnant women, puerpera or sick people (heart disease, etc.) who need rest should consult a doctor before use.
- Children are forbidden to use massage function.
- The massage function should not be used immediately after a meal or used for a long time.
- If you feel uncomfortable when using massage function, stop using it immediately.



## Rear center armrest\*



Pull down the armrest to use it.



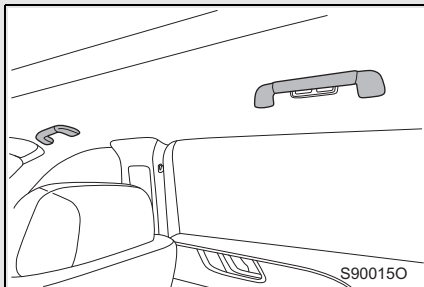
### CAUTION

■ **Preventing damage to the armrest**

Do not press down hard on the armrest.

## 6-4. Other equipment

### Roof grab handle



The roof grab handles are located at the roof side beams of all doors.

When sitting in the seat, you can have your body supported by the roof grab handles mounted on the headlining.



#### **WARNING**

##### **■ Roof grab handle**

Do not use the roof grab handles when getting on and off the vehicle or when getting up from the seat.

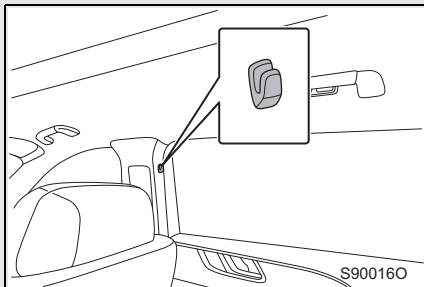


#### **CAUTION**

##### **■ Preventing damage to the roof grab handles**

Do not hang any heavy objects or apply heavy loads to the roof grab handles to prevent damage.

## Coat hook



You can hang your clothes on the coat hook.



### WARNING

#### ■ Items that should not be hung on coat hook

Do not hang clothes racks or other hard or sharp objects on the coat hook. If the curtain airbag is deployed, these objects may be ejected, resulting in serious injury or death.



**7-1. Service and maintenance**

Cleaning and  
protecting exterior  
trims of vehicle ..... 342

Cleaning and  
protecting interior  
trims of vehicle ..... 344

**7-2. Maintenance**

Precautions for  
maintenance ..... 347

**7-3. Maintenance by yourself**

Precautions for  
maintenance by  
yourself ..... 350

Front compartment  
cover ..... 353

Front compartment ... 354

Tire ..... 363

Tire pressure ..... 366

Wheel ..... 368

A/C filter ..... 370

Replacing key  
battery ..... 373

Checking and  
replacing fuse ..... 375

Power battery ..... 379

# Cleaning and protecting exterior trims of vehicle

**The following operations help to protect the exterior trims of the vehicle and keep them in the best condition:**

- Rinse the body, wheelhouse and underbody with plenty of water from top to bottom to remove dirt and dust.
- Wipe the body with a sponge or a piece of soft cloth (such as suede cloth).
- Clean the part with the traces that are difficult to remove using detergents and rinse it thoroughly with water.
- Remove water.
- In case of aging of the waterproof coating, wax the vehicle.

Make sure that the surface of the vehicle is clean and free of water beads and the body is cooled before waxing the body.

---

### ■ Automatic vehicle washing

- Fold the exterior rearview mirrors before washing the vehicle. Rinse the front part of the vehicle first. Be sure to unfold the exterior rearview mirrors before driving.
- The brushes used at the automatic washing station may scratch the surface of the vehicle and damage the paint.

### ■ High-pressure vehicle washing

- Do not place the nozzle for vehicle washing too close to the window.
- Before vehicle washing, check that the charging port cover is properly closed.

### ■ Aluminum wheels

- Remove dirt with neutral detergent immediately after it is adhered to the wheels. Do not use hard brushes or abrasive detergents. Do not use highly corrosive or strong detergents.
- Do not wash the wheels with detergent when they are very hot (e.g. after driving for long distance in hot weather).
- After washing the wheels with detergent, rinse them immediately.

### ■ Bumper

Do not scrub the bumper with abrasive detergent.

**WARNING****■ Washing vehicle**

Do not rinse the interior of the front compartment with water, otherwise the electrical components may be short-circuited, possibly resulting in a fire.

**CAUTION****■ Preventing aging of body and body paint and corrosion of body and components (such as aluminum wheels)**

- Wash the vehicle immediately after the following conditions occur:
  - Driving by the sea
  - Driving on saline-alkali roads
  - Paintwork contaminated with coal tar or tree sap
  - Dead insects, insect droppings or bird droppings fallen on the paintwork
  - Driving in areas contaminated with coal ash, oil fumes, mineral dust, iron dust or chemical substances
  - Severe dust or mud buildup on the vehicle
  - Liquids such as benzene and gasoline splashed on the paintwork
- Repair the paint promptly in case of peeling-off or scratch.
- To prevent the wheels from corrosion, remove dirt from them and store them in a place with low humidity.

**■ Cleaning the logo**

Wipe the logo on the front compartment cover with clean water or neutral cleaner. Do not wash the logo with alcohol or alcohol-containing liquid, phenol, anisole and other organic solvents, otherwise the logo is prone to crack.

**■ Cleaning the lamp**

- Be careful when cleaning the lamp. Do not use organic cleaners or hard brushes to clean the lamp, otherwise the lamp surface may be damaged.
- Do not wax the lamp surface, otherwise the lamp shade may be damaged.

# Cleaning and protecting interior trims of vehicle

**The following operations help to protect the interior trims of the vehicle and keep them in the best condition:**

■ **Protecting interior trims of vehicle**

Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner. Dampen a piece of cloth with warm water and wipe the dirty surface.

■ **Cleaning leather part**

- Remove dirt and dust with a vacuum cleaner.
- Dampen a piece of soft cloth with diluted detergent and wipe off the remaining dirt and dust through wiping.  
Use a neutral wool detergent solution with a diluted concentration of about 5%.
- Wring the damp cloth and wipe off the residual detergent thoroughly.
- Wipe off any residual moisture on the surface with a piece of dry soft cloth, and dry the leather in a cool and ventilated place.

■ **Cleaning artificial leather part**

- Remove floating dust with a vacuum cleaner.
- Apply neutral soapy solution to the artificial leather part.
- Soak the artificial leather part in the soapy solution for a few minutes, and wipe off the dirt and soapy solution with a piece of clean damp cloth.

■ **Cleaning wooden part**

- Gently wipe off the dust on the surface of wooden trims using cotton gauze.
- Gently wipe off the dirt on the surface of wooden trims using cotton gauze wet with a little neutral soapy solution.



### ■ Maintaining leather part

It is recommended that you clean the interior trims at least twice a year to maintain their quality.

### ■ Maintaining wooden part

It is recommended that you maintain the surface of wooden part at any time according to their condition.

### ■ Cleaning carpet

Clean the carpet with a proper foam cleaner available in the market. Apply the foam with a sponge or brush, scrub the carpet in overlapping circular motions, do not add water, and keep the carpet as dry as possible to achieve the best effect.

### ■ Seat belt

Clean the seat belt using a piece of cloth or sponge wet with neutral cleaner and lukewarm water. Regularly check the seat belt for excessive wear, damage or scratches.



## WARNING

### ■ Preventing entry of water into vehicle

- Do not spill liquids into the interior of the vehicle, otherwise it may cause malfunctions or fires in electrical components.
- Do not let the airbag components or wires in the vehicle get wet, otherwise accidental deployment or malfunction of the airbag may be caused, resulting in serious injury or even death.

### ■ Cleaning interior trims (especially instrument panel)

Do not use polishing wax or polishing cleaner, otherwise the instrument panel may reflect light on the windshield, which obstructs the driver's visibility, causing serious injury or even death.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Cleaner

- Do not use the following cleaners, otherwise the interior trims may be discolored or the paintwork may be streaked or damaged:  
Organics such as benzene or gasoline, alkaline or acidic solutions, dyes and bleaches.
- Do not use polishing wax or polishing cleaner, otherwise the paintwork of the instrument panel or other interior parts may be damaged.

#### ■ Preventing damage to leather surface

To prevent damage and aging of the leather surface, please observe the following precautions:

- Wipe off the dust and dirt on the leather surface in time.
- Do not expose the vehicle to direct sunlight for a long time. Park the vehicle in a cool place, especially in summer.
- Do not place polyethylene, plastic or waxy articles on the leather trim, as they may stick to the leather surface when the interior temperature increases significantly.
- If too much moisture remains on the seat surface, the leather will be hardened, shrunk or deformed.

#### ■ Preventing entry of water into floor

Do not clean the floor with water.

If the electrical components under the floor come into contact with water, the electrical system may be damaged, and the body may be rusted.

#### ■ Cleaning inner side of rear windshield

- Do not clean the rear windshield with glass cleaner, otherwise its defogger heating wires may be damaged. Dampen a piece of cloth with warm water and gently wipe the rear windshield in a direction parallel to the heating wires.
- Be careful not to scratch or damage the heating wires.

# Precautions for maintenance

**To ensure the driving safety and economy, routine and regular maintenance are crucial.**

**As recommend by FAW, you should take the following maintenance measures:**

■ Regular maintenance

- Perform regular maintenance on the vehicle according to the maintenance schedule.

The maintenance intervals are determined according to the mileage or time interval (whichever comes first) in the maintenance schedule.

It is recommended to perform maintenance items even if the specified maintenance interval has been exceeded.

- Where can you have your vehicle maintained?

An authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is the most ideal service provider for maintenance.

The authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has advanced maintenance tools, equipment and genuine spare parts for the maintenance and service of your vehicle, and all after-sales service personnel have received professional management and technical training to ensure rapid and efficient completion of vehicle maintenance and repair, so that your vehicle can always have good technical performance.

The authorized FAW Hongqi dealer has invested significantly in special tools and maintenance equipment, which helps to provide better service for you.

With the service concept of "efficient, reasonable and value-added", the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer is committed to thoroughly performing all maintenance items for your vehicle.

Rubber hoses (for cooling, heating, brake systems) should be checked by professionals in strict accordance with the maintenance schedule.

Rubber hoses will be degraded over time, which will cause expansion, wear or rupture. Therefore, if any signs of deterioration or damage are observed in the hoses, please immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement.

### ■ Precautions for maintenance by yourself

#### Can the vehicle be maintained by yourself?

If you have abundant basic knowledge of vehicle structure, inspection and maintenance and some basic tools, you can perform routine inspection and maintenance yourself. Simple instructions for maintenance by yourself are covered in this section.

It should be reminded that some maintenance work requires special maintenance equipment and professional skills and it is preferably performed by a qualified technician. Even if you are an experienced professional technician, it is still recommended that you contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for standardized repair and maintenance. The dealer will record the maintenance information of your vehicle and help you apply for warranty service.

---

### ■ Does your vehicle need to be repaired?

Pay attention to changes in the performance and sound of the vehicle, as well as visual warnings indicating maintenance requirements. Some important signs are provided below:

- Noticeable decrease in power.
- Abnormal sound of motor.
- Liquid leakage under the vehicle. (Water dripping after use of A/C is a normal phenomenon)
- Flat tire, excessive tire noise during turning, or uneven tire wear.
- Pulling to one side during straight driving on a flat road.
- Abnormal sound related to the suspension component.
- Braking failure; soft brake pedal when being depressed; pedal almost touching the floor; pulling to one side during braking.
- Continuously high coolant temperature.

If you find any of the signs mentioned above, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for adjustment or repair as soon as possible.

**WARNING****■ Improper maintenance**

Improper maintenance may cause serious damage to the vehicle and serious personal injury or even death.

**■ Precautions for battery handling**

Battery terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds which can cause brain damage.

Be sure to wash your hands after handling.

# Precautions for maintenance by yourself

**If the maintenance is to be carried out by yourself, correct procedures below must be followed.**

| Item                                | Component and tool                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Battery status (see P. 358)         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Warm water</li> <li>• Baking soda</li> <li>• Grease</li> <li>• Common wrench<br/>(For terminal bolts)</li> </ul> |
| Coolant level (see P. 355)          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Automobile long-life coolant</li> <li>• Funnel (for adding coolant only)</li> </ul>                              |
| Brake fluid level (see P. 357)      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Genuine brake fluid of FAW</li> <li>• Rag or paper, funnel<br/>(For adding brake fluid only)</li> </ul>          |
| Fuse (see P. 375)                   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Fuse of the same amperage rating as the original one</li> </ul>                                                  |
| Radiator and condenser (see P. 356) | —                                                                                                                                                         |
| Tire pressure (see P. 366)          | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Tire pressure gauge</li> <li>• Compressed air source</li> </ul>                                                  |
| Washer fluid (see P. 362)           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Washer fluid with antifreeze<br/>(For use in winter)</li> <li>• Funnel</li> </ul>                                |

**WARNING**

Many machineries are installed in the front compartment. They may rotate, get hot, or become energized suddenly. To avoid serious personal injury, please pay attention to the following matters.

■ **Handling parts in front compartment**

- Be careful not to touch the motor, radiator, etc. immediately after driving, as they may be very hot.
- Before opening the front compartment cover, be sure to turn off the power (ignition) switch, apply the EPB, carry the key with you, and wait till the motor cools down.
- Keep hands, clothing and tools away from the rotating fan.
- Do not leave any articles in the front compartment.  
After the inspection or maintenance in the front compartment, do not leave any articles such as tool or cloth in it, otherwise it may cause fire, resulting in an accident.
- Do not smoke, generate sparks, or expose open flames to the areas near the front compartment cable or battery.
- Be especially careful when handling the battery. The battery contains poisonous and corrosive sulfuric acid.
- Be careful when handling the brake fluid as it may injure your hands or eyes and damage the paintwork.  
If the brake fluid spills on your hands or into your eyes, rinse the part stained with the fluid immediately with plenty of clean water. If you still feel unwell, seek medical attention.

■ **Working near electric fan or radiator grille**

Ensure that power (ignition) switch is turned off.

When the power (ignition) switch is in ON mode, if the A/C is turned on or the coolant temperature is very high, the electric cooling fan may run automatically.

■ **Goggles**

Wear goggles to prevent objects from flying into your eyes or fluids from splashing into your eyes.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Too low or high brake fluid level

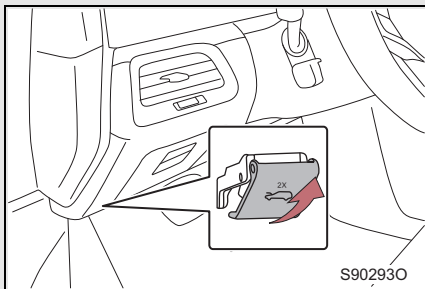
The brake fluid level drops slightly when the brake pads are worn or the fluid level in the brake fluid reservoir is relatively high, which is normal. If the brake fluid reservoir needs to be filled with brake fluid frequently, it means that there may be a serious fault. In this case, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for vehicle inspection.



## 7-3. Maintenance by yourself

### Front compartment cover

**Open the front compartment cover through unlocking from the inside of the vehicle.**



Pull the front compartment cover release handle in the vehicle twice to open the front compartment cover.



#### **WARNING**

##### **■ Inspection before driving**

Check that the front compartment cover is closed and locked.

If the front compartment cover is not locked properly, it may suddenly open during driving, which will cause an accident, resulting in serious personal injury.



#### **CAUTION**

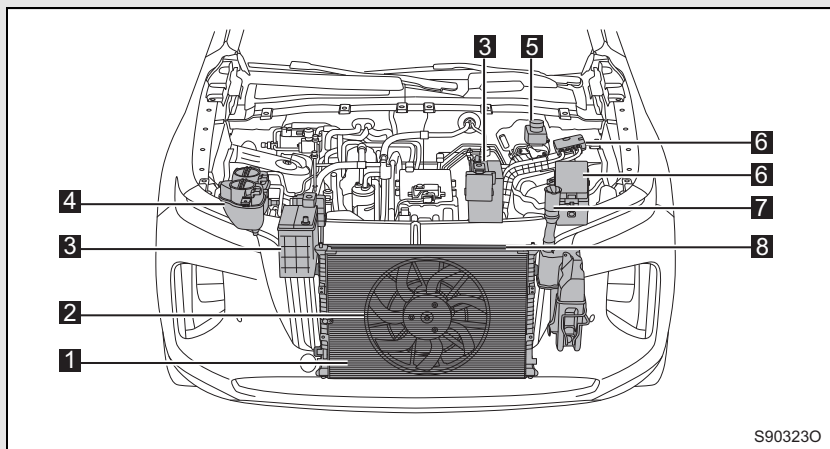
##### **■ Closing front compartment cover**

- Do not apply excessive force to prevent front compartment cover damage.
- Make sure that no tools, articles, etc. are left in the front compartment before closing the front compartment cover.

## 7-3. Maintenance by yourself

### Front compartment

Due to different model configurations, the picture is for reference only.

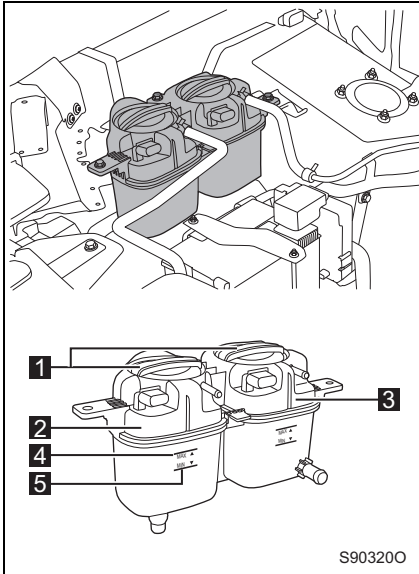


S90323O

- |                                 |                            |
|---------------------------------|----------------------------|
| <b>1</b> Condenser              | <b>2</b> Cooling fan       |
| <b>3</b> 12 V battery           | <b>4</b> Coolant reservoir |
| <b>5</b> Brake fluid reservoir  | <b>6</b> Fuse box          |
| <b>7</b> Washer fluid reservoir | <b>8</b> Radiator          |

## Coolant

If the coolant level in the coolant reservoir is between the "MAX" (highest) and "MIN" (lowest) marks, it is normal.



- 1 Reservoir cover
- 2 Motor coolant reservoir
- 3 Battery coolant reservoir
- 4 "MAX" (highest)
- 5 "MIN" (lowest)

If the coolant level is below the "MIN" mark, add the coolant to the normal level.

### ■ Decrease of coolant level shortly after the coolant is added

Visually check the components such as radiator, coolant reservoir and cooling pipe.

If no leakage is found, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the cooling system.

### ■ Selecting coolant

Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year.

For more details of coolant, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



## WARNING

### ■ When the coolant temperature is very high

- Do not remove the coolant reservoir cover.

There may be pressure inside the cooling system, therefore, hot coolant may be sprayed out after the coolant reservoir cover is removed, causing scalding or other injuries.



**CAUTION**

■ **Adding coolant**

Add the coolant specified by FAW to ensure normal lubrication, anti-corrosion and cooling performance.  
Please read the instructions on the label of the coolant.

■ **Accidental splashing of coolant**

Always remove the coolant with water to avoid damaging the parts or paint.

**Radiator and condenser**

Check the radiator and condenser, and remove all foreign matters.  
If the radiator or condenser is particularly dirty or abnormal, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for vehicle inspection.

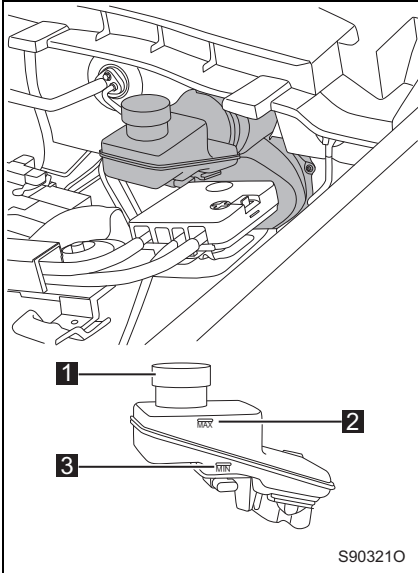


**WARNING**

■ **When radiator and condenser are very hot**

Do not touch the radiator or condenser to avoid scalding.

## Brake fluid



1 Brake fluid reservoir cover

2 "MAX" (highest)

3 "MIN" (lowest)

If the brake fluid level is below the "MIN" mark, add the brake fluid to the normal level.

### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions for addition of brake fluid

- It is very dangerous if the brake fluid is sprayed out. If the brake fluid enters the eyes, rinse them with plenty of water, and seek medical attention immediately.
- Do not spray the brake fluid onto your body or the electrical parts in the front compartment, otherwise it is likely to cause personal injuries or a fire.

#### ■ Too low brake fluid level

- It is very dangerous if the brake fluid level is too low. A too low fluid level indicates wear of the brake lining or leakage of the brake system. The brake may fail, resulting in a serious accident. If the fluid level is too low, check the brake.
- If the fluid level is too low, add the brake fluid until it reaches the "MAX" mark. Before adding the brake fluid, thoroughly clean the parts around the brake fluid reservoir cover.



### CAUTION

- The brake fluid will damage the paintwork. If the brake fluid is accidentally splashed onto the paintwork, wipe it off immediately.
- Using non-specified brake fluid can lead to damage in the system. Additionally, mixing different types of brake fluid may cause damage to the system.
- If the brake fluid needs to be added or changed, consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Do not drop brake fluid onto the inverter, otherwise it may cause inverter failure.

## 12 V battery

### ■ Low voltage power management system

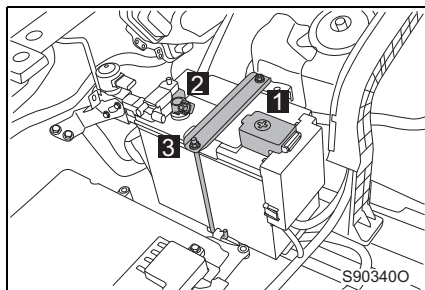
- When the battery/power battery is low or the vehicle is in long battery life mode, to ensure the vehicle's driving range, the system will limit or disable some comfort functions, such as A/C, seat ventilation/heating/massage, stream media rearview mirror, headlamp delay, etc., and they may not operate according to the operating state set by the user. When the vehicle switches to another driving mode and the battery power is within a safe range, the limited comfort functions will resume responding.

The low voltage power management system can adjust the DC/DC output voltage in real time and obtain the battery status information and control the optimal charging voltage to make sure that the low voltage power network status of the vehicle is normal.

- When the power (ignition) switch is turned to OFF mode, if the system detects battery depletion, the vehicle will control the high voltage output automatically to recharge the battery.

### ■ Check the exterior of battery

Make sure that there is no corrosion on battery terminals, no looseness in connections, no cracks in external parts, and no looseness in fixing clips.



- 1 Positive terminal
- 2 Negative terminal
- 3 Fixing clip

### ■ Precautions during installation

- When connecting the battery, avoid connecting the terminal cables reversely, otherwise the electrical equipment in the vehicle may be damaged.
- During storage, transportation and installation of the battery, prevent the positive and negative terminals from contacting with each other. For example, the metal wrench for connecting is likely to touch the positive and negative terminals at the same time. In this case, the battery may be short-circuited, causing a direct failure.
- Due to the small vent holes in the battery, do not place it on its side or upside down during storage, handling and installation, to avoid leakage of electrolyte.
- Replace the battery with the one of the same model.
- If the wiring clips are oxidized or dirty when the battery is replaced, remove the oxide layer or dirt with sandpaper, and apply Vaseline to the wiring clips and battery terminals before connecting.
- During installation, connect the positive terminal and then the negative terminal, and during removal, disconnect the negative terminal and then the positive terminal, to avoid the risk of short circuit.

### ■ Precautions before charging

Pay attention to the following matters before charging:

- When charging the battery installed on the vehicle, be sure to turn off the power (ignition) switch and disconnect the ground wire. When connecting or disconnecting the charger cable to/from the battery, make sure that the power switch on the charger is turned off.

### ■ Precautions during use

- Pay attention to keep the air outlet of the battery clean to avoid blockage.
- Charge the battery in the following conditions:
  - No use of the vehicle for a long time.
  - Failure to turn off the lamp after parking.
  - Failure to close the doors tightly during parking.
- If the vehicle is stored for more than 30 days, perform the following operations to maintain the normal charging state of the battery:
  - Disconnect the negative terminal ground wire of the battery to prevent battery discharge caused by additional current discharge.
  - Charge the battery once every 20-45 days.



### **WARNING**

#### ■ Chemical substances in the battery

The battery contains toxic corrosive sulfuric acid and may generate flammable and explosive hydrogen gas. To reduce the possibility of serious personal injury, be sure to observe the following precautions when handling the battery or working near it:

- Do not allow tools to contact battery terminals, so as to avoid sparks.
- Do not smoke or use open flames near the battery.
- Avoid splashing electrolyte into eyes and on skin or clothing.
- Do not inhale or swallow electrolyte.
- Wear goggles when working near the battery.
- Keep children away from the battery.

#### ■ Safe place for battery charging

Charge the battery in an open place. Never charge it in a poorly ventilated garage or an enclosed place.



**WARNING**

■ **Parking for a long time may cause the battery loss, and the system will recharge it automatically. But it may not be able to recharge the battery automatically in the following situations:**

- Battery sensor self-learning is not completed.
- The system's static current is abnormal.
- The front compartment cover is not closed.
- Battery aging.

■ **Emergency measures for handling of electrolyte**

- Accidental splashing of electrolyte into eyes  
Rinse your eyes with water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention immediately. If possible, continue to wash your eyes with a piece of absorbent sponge or cloth on the way to hospital.
- Splashing of electrolyte on skin  
Thoroughly wash the part on which electrolyte is splashed. If you have a burning sensation, seek medical attention immediately.
- Splashing of electrolyte on clothing  
Electrolyte may penetrate clothing and contact with the skin. Take off clothing promptly and adopt the above measures if necessary.
- Accidental swallowing of electrolyte  
Drink plenty of water or milk, take magnesia lotion, agitated raw eggs or vegetable oil, and seek medical attention immediately.

■ **Do not disconnect the negative (-) terminal on the body side**

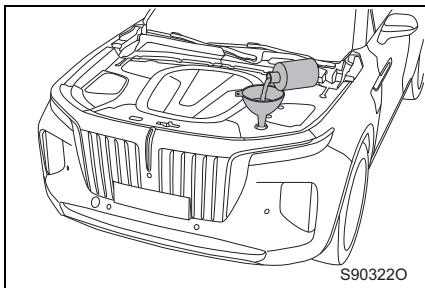
- The disconnected negative (-) terminal may come into contact with the positive (+) terminal, resulting in a short circuit and serious injury or even death.

**CAUTION**

■ **Precautions for battery charging**

Do not charge the battery when the vehicle is started. Be sure to turn off all accessories.

### Washer fluid



If any of the washers does not work or an alarm message appears on the multi-function display of the instrument cluster, the washer fluid reservoir may be empty. In this case, add the washer fluid in time.

#### **WARNING**

##### ■ **Adding washer fluid**

Do not add washer fluid when the power system is hot or operating. Otherwise, if the washer fluid is splashed on the motor, a fire may occur due to the alcohol in the washer fluid.

#### **CAUTION**

##### ■ **Do not use any fluids other than the washer fluid**

Do not substitute soapy water or coolant for washer fluid, otherwise it may result in damage to the paintwork.

##### ■ **Diluting washer fluid**

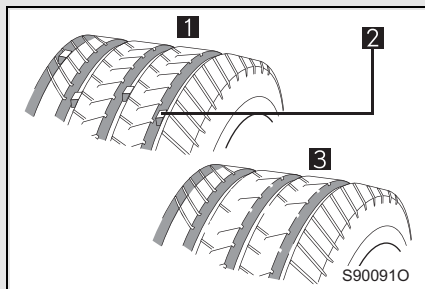
If necessary, dilute the washer fluid with water.

Refer to the freezing temperature indicated on the label of the washer fluid reservoir.

### Tire

**Replace the tire or perform tire rotation according to the wear condition of the tread.**

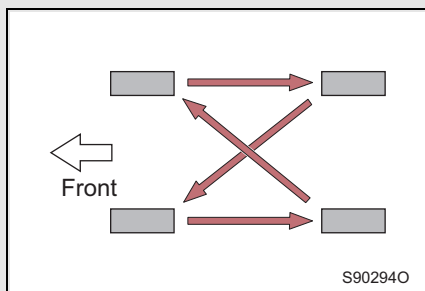
#### ■ Tire inspection



- 1** New tread
- 2** Tread wear indicator
- 3** Worn tread

If the tread pattern wears down to the tread wear indicator surface, replace the tire (the picture is for reference only).

#### ■ Tire rotation



Perform tire rotation as shown in the figure.

It is recommended to perform tire rotation every 8,000~10,000 km to achieve even tire wear and extend the tire life.

#### Note:

After the tire rotation, it is necessary to configure the tire pressure monitoring system. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer if necessary.

---

### ■ Measures for protection against wheel fault

- When driving over curbs or similar obstacles, keep a slow speed in the vertical direction of the obstacles as much as possible.
- Be careful not to let the tires contact with grease and fuel.
- Regularly check the damage of tires (such as splitting, crack or bulging), and remove debris embedded in the grooves of the tire pattern.

### ■ Precautions for tire storage

- Before removing the tire, mark the tire to indicate the rolling direction, and refit the tire and align it with the mark to maintain the rotation direction and the dynamic balance of the wheel.
- Store the removed wheels and tires in a cool and dry place, preferably in a dark place not exposed to direct sunlight.

### ■ Hidden damage

- Damage to tires and rims often occurs in a hidden way, and abnormal vibration or deviation of the vehicle during driving may indicate a faulty wheel. In this case, drive the vehicle to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of wheels as soon as possible.

### ■ When to replace the tire

Replace the tire when:

- The tire has any defect such as cut, fracture, crack with exposed fabric ply or bulging.
- The tire leaks frequently or cannot be repaired due to other damage.

### ■ Tire life

Avoid using tires that have been in use for six years, and if you have to use them, drive at low speed with extreme caution.

### ■ Precautions for driving on snowy roads

If the tread of snow tires is worn by 4 mm or above, the anti-skid performance of snow tires will be significantly reduced.

**WARNING****■ Precautions for tire inspection or replacement**

To avoid transmission part damage which will affect the control performance of the vehicle, be sure to observe the following precautions:

- Do not use tires from different manufacturers, of different models and with different tread patterns or tread wear degrees.
- Do not use tires not recommended by FAW.
- Do not mix tires with different structures such as radial, bias-belted and bias-ply tires in use.
- Do not mix summer tires, all-season tires and winter tires.
- Do not use tires that have been used on other vehicles.

**CAUTION****■ Driving on uneven roads**

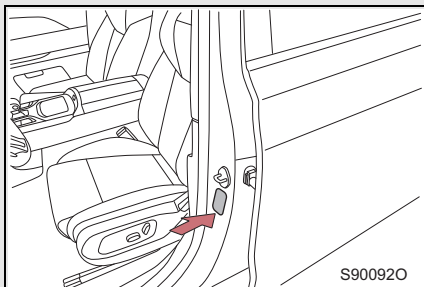
When the vehicle is driven on soft or bumpy roads, extra care shall be taken. On such roads, tires are prone to bulging due to impact, and they may be damaged eventually.

**■ Decreased tire pressure during driving**

Do not continue driving, as this may result in complete tire and/or wheel damage.

# Tire pressure

**Be sure to maintain a proper tire pressure. Check the tire pressure at least once a month.**



The tire pressure label is located under the B-pillar lock pin on the driver's side.

### ■ Consequences of incorrect tire pressure

Too low tire pressure:

- Increased rolling resistance leads to increased power consumption.
- The maneuverability and stability of the vehicle are reduced.
- Damage and high temperature may be caused, resulting in tire burst. When the tire pressure is seriously insufficient, the tire may be detached from the rim, reducing the safety.
- The tire is worn on both sides.

Too high tire pressure:

- The comfort of the vehicle is reduced.
- The middle of the tire is worn excessively.
- The tire is prone to internal crack and burst when being impacted.

### ■ Guidelines for tire pressure inspection

Even if your vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system that can remind you of the tire pressure status in time, please check the tire pressure in time.

When checking the tire pressure, please observe the following precautions:

- Check the tire only after it has cooled down.

If the vehicle has been parked for at least 3 hours, or has not driven for more than 1.5 km, carry out the inspection to obtain the accurate tire pressure reading.

- Always use a tire pressure gauge.

The tire appearance may sometimes be misleading. Additionally, the riding comfort and maneuverability may be reduced even if the tire pressure is relatively low.

- Do not deflate or depressurize the tire after driving. The tire pressure may increase after driving, which is normal.
- Do not overload the vehicle.

The weight of the driver, passengers and luggage should be evenly distributed to keep the vehicle balanced.



### WARNING

#### ■ Correct inflation is the key to tire protection

Be sure to maintain a proper tire pressure, otherwise the following conditions may occur:

- Excessive wear
- Uneven wear
- Poor maneuverability
- Tire burst after overheating
- Bead sealing performance degradation
- Wheel deformation or detachment of the tire from the wheel
- Potential tire damage due to poor road conditions

#### ■ Do not drive the vehicle at an improper tire pressure

It is dangerous to drive the vehicle with improper tire pressure. An improper tire pressure may affect the maneuverability and result in an accident.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Precautions for inspection and adjustment of tire pressure

Be sure to reinstall the tire valve cap.

If the valve cap is not installed, dirt or moisture may enter the valve and cause air leakage, resulting in an accident.

If the valve cap is missing, install a new one as soon as possible.

### Wheel

**If the rim is bent, cracked or severely corroded, replace it. Otherwise, the tire may be detached from the rim or you may lose control of the vehicle.**

#### ■ Selecting wheel

When replacing the wheel, ensure that the newly installed wheel matches the original in terms of bearing capacity, diameter, rim width and offset.

The wheel for replacement can be provided by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

FAW recommends not to use the following types of wheels:

- Wheels of different sizes or types.
- Old wheels.
- Bent wheels that have been straightened.

#### ■ Considerations for aluminum wheel

- Be sure to use the wheel bolts and wrench specially designed for the aluminum wheel.
- When performing tire rotation, maintenance or replacement, check and confirm the tightness of the wheel bolts.
- When tire chains are used, be careful not to damage the aluminum rim.
- Only use the balance weight or equivalent product specified by FAW to balance the wheel.



**WARNING****■ Replacing wheel**

Do not use the wheel of a different model than the original one installed on the vehicle, otherwise you may lose control of the vehicle.

**■ Installing wheel bolt**

- Tighten the wheel bolt until the cone part comes into contact with the wheel bolt seat of the rim.
- Never apply oil or grease to wheel bolts.

Oil and grease may over-tighten the wheel bolts, resulting in damage to the bolt or spoke wheel. In addition, oil or grease may cause wheel bolts to get loose and cause the wheel to fall off, thus causing accidents, serious injury or even death. Please remove all oil or grease from wheel bolts.

**■ Do not use defective wheels**

Do not use cracked or deformed wheels.

Otherwise, tires may leak during driving, resulting in an accident.

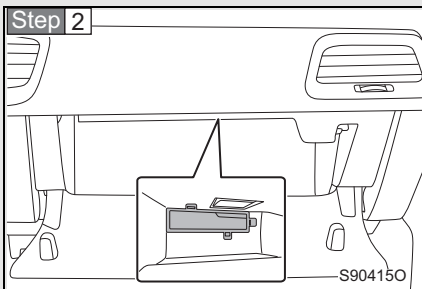
## 7-3. Maintenance by yourself

### A/C filter

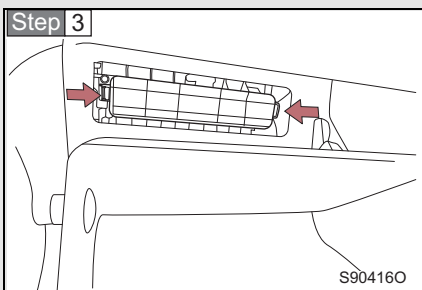
**Regularly replace the A/C filter to maintain the A/C efficiency.**

#### ■ Replacing A/C filter

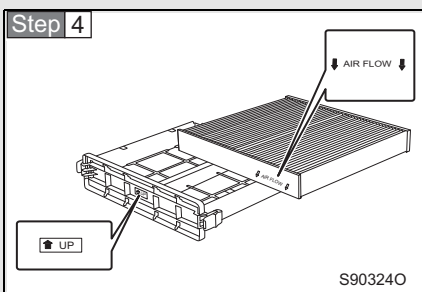
**Step 1** Turn off the power (ignition) switch.



Open the glove box.  
Remove the A/C filter cover.



Remove the A/C filter.

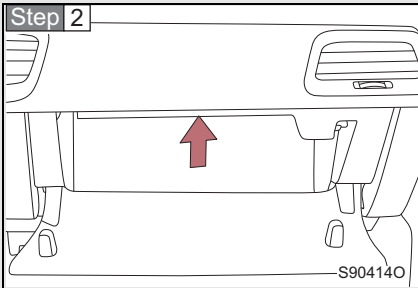


Remove the filter from filter housing, and replace it with a new one.

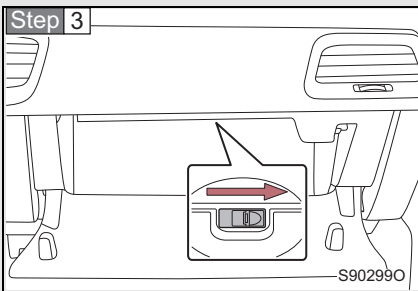
Pay attention to the installation direction arrow on the filter and filter housing during installation.

## ■ Replacing fragrance box

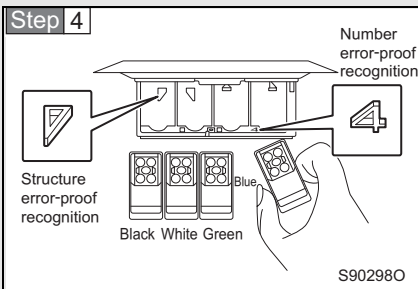
**Step 1** Turn off the power (ignition) switch.



Open the glove box and the fragrance box is located on the upper side of glove box.



Turn the switch to right to open the fragrance box cover.



Remove the fragrance from fragrance box and replace it with a new one.

From left to right, they are 1, 2, 3, 4, and black, white, green, blue fragrance are put in order respectively.

■ **Replacement interval of A/C filter**

In dusty or heavy traffic areas, the replacement interval may need to be shortened.

■ **Significant reduction of airflow at air vent**

The filter may be blocked. Check the filter, and replace it if necessary.

■ **A/C filter**

If the filter needs to be cleaned or replaced, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



**CAUTION**

■ **Using A/C system**

Make sure that the filter is installed.

If the A/C system is used without a filter, it may be damaged.

■ **Removing filter cover**

Do not replace the A/C filter when the blower is working, otherwise personal injuries may be caused.

## 7-3. Maintenance by yourself

### Replacing key battery

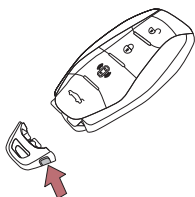
**If the battery power of the smart key is low, replace the battery with a new one.**

■ The following part is required:

- Lithium battery

■ Replacing smart key battery

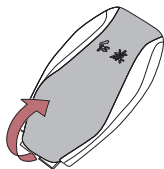
#### Step 1



S900930

Press the unlock button to detach the key end cover.

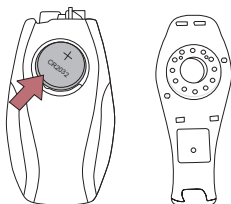
#### Step 2



S900940

Detach the rear cover of the key.

#### Step 3



S900950

**1** Take out the old battery.

Insert a new battery with the + terminal facing downward.

**2** Return the rear cover and end cover of the key to the original positions.

■ **If the battery power of the smart key is low, the following conditions may occur**

- Failure of wireless remote control function.
- Reduction of effective range.
- Failure of PEPS function.
- Failure of smart start function.

■ **Using CR2032 lithium battery**

- It is recommended to replace the battery with the same or equivalent product recommended by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- Always dispose of the old battery in accordance with the local laws and regulations.



**WARNING**

■ **Replaced battery and other parts**

Keep the parts out of reach of children.

These small parts may cause suffocation if swallowed by children.



**CAUTION**

■ **To ensure that the remote control key can work normally after the battery is replaced, the following precautions should be observed**

- Always dry your hands before operating the smart key to prevent rusting of the battery.
- Do not touch or move any other parts inside the remote control key.
- Do not bend the battery terminals.

## 7-3. Maintenance by yourself

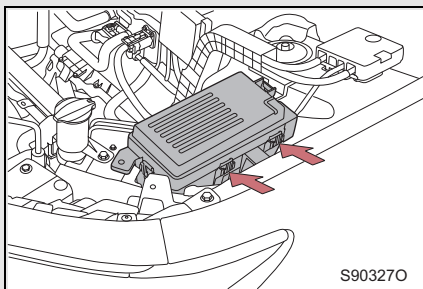
### Checking and replacing fuse

**If any electrical component fails to work, a fuse may be blown. In this case, check and replace the fuse if necessary.**

**Step 1** Turn off the power (ignition) switch.

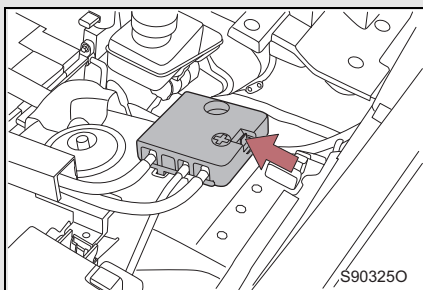
**Step 2** The fuses are located in the following positions. Check the fuses as follows.

#### ■ Front compartment (A-type)



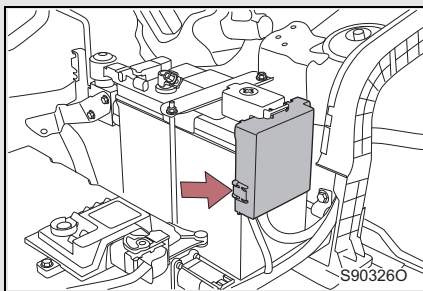
Press the fixing clip, and open the cover.

#### ■ Front compartment (B-type)



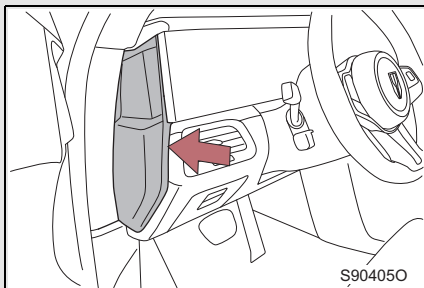
Press the fixing clip, and open the cover.

#### ■ Front compartment (C-type)



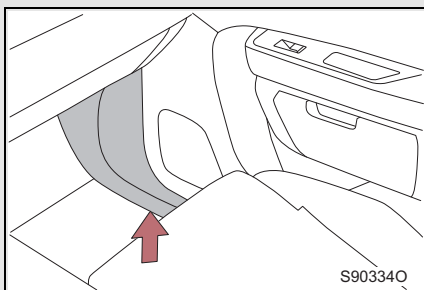
Press the fixing clip, and open the cover.

### ■ Driver's instrument panel



Remove the left cover of instrument panel.

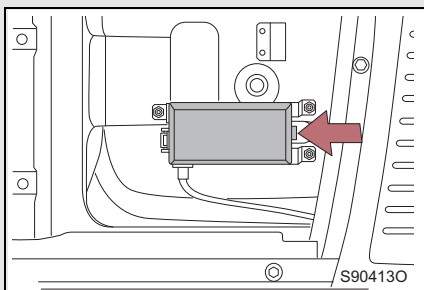
### ■ Right front door sill trim panel



Remove the right front door sill trim panel.

It is recommended to contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for replacement of the fuse in this position.

### ■ Trunk

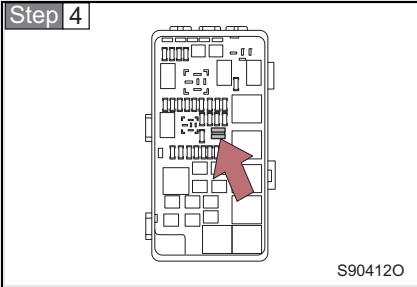


Remove the tool box and open the cover.



**Step 3** After a system fault occurs, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inquire about the fuses that need to be checked.

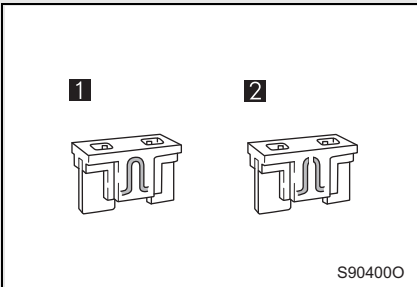
**Step 4**



Remove the fuse with the auxiliary removal tool.

**Step 5** Check whether the fuse is blown.

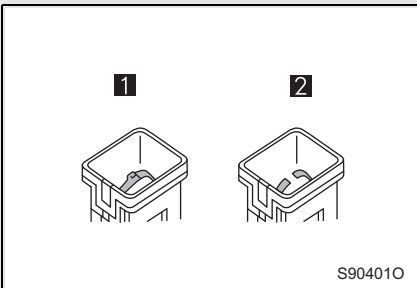
► A-type



**1** Normal fuse

**2** Blown fuse

► B-type



**1** Normal fuse

**2** Blown fuse

Replace the fuse with a new fuse of the amperage rating approved by FAW.

### ■ Distribution and amperage rating of fuses

For the distribution and amperage rating of fuses, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for confirmation.

### ■ Precautions after fuse replacement

- If the electrical function still does not work after the fuse is replaced, further inspection may be required. Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.
- If the newly installed fuse blows out again, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection of the vehicle.

### ■ Circuit overloading

Fuses may blow out or damage the entire harness.



### WARNING

#### ■ Preventing system fault or vehicle fire

Be sure to observe the following precautions, otherwise vehicle damage, fire or personal injury may be caused.

- Do not use a fuse with an amperage rating higher or lower than specified.
- Be sure to use the same or equivalent product recommended by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.  
Do not replace the fuse with a wire, even temporary replacement is not allowed, otherwise serious damage to vehicle or even a fire may be caused.
- Do not modify the fuse or fuse box.

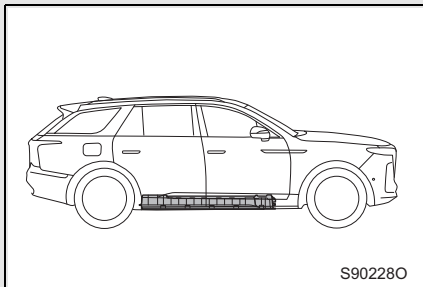


### CAUTION

#### ■ Precautions before fuse replacement

Contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to determine the cause of excessively high electrical load and have the vehicle repaired.

# Power battery



The power battery is arranged under the floor of vehicle.

- Do not park the vehicle near high temperature heat source or fire source to avoid fire.
- Do not park the vehicle in damp, waterlogged area, to avoid the battery pack being submerged in water for a long time to avoid fire.
- The vehicle should be parked in a dry, cool and ventilated location as far as possible, and try to avoid exposing to sunlight for a long time.
- The battery may also have a slow self discharge when not in use, resulting in a decrease in battery power (average 1% per week). A decrease to 0% can damage the battery. Therefore, if it is not used for a long time, please evaluate the battery's state of charge based on the estimated parking duration. Even if parking does not cause the battery power to reach 0%, it is still not recommended to park for a long time. Long standing can lead to a decrease in driving range. If the vehicle must be parked for a long time, it should be maintained monthly according to the following methods:
  - Take proper measures (such as vehicle driving or high voltage components consumption) to discharge the vehicle until the instrument cluster prompts "Low power battery, please charge".
  - Use household or AC charging pile to fully charge the power battery.
- **Power battery recycling**

Power battery is classified as hazardous industrial goods, and improper disposal will cause serious pollution to the environment. According to relevant national policy on power battery recycling, qualified recycling service network should be responsible for the recycling of power batteries. For information about recycling service network, please consult an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

Do not sell, transfer, or privately remove, disassemble, modify power battery. When the power battery is no longer be used or needs to be

recycled, the vehicle should be taken to the designated service network and the power battery should be removed from the vehicle according to the prescribed process to prevent safety accidents. According to relevant laws and regulations, if safety accidents or environmental pollution is caused due to the user's improper disposal of the used power battery, the user shall bear the responsibility.



#### **WARNING**

■ **If not recycled properly, the following situations may occur, causing certain personal injury:**

- Illegal scrapping or disposal of power battery can cause harm to the environment, or people may suffer electric shock from touching high voltage parts.
- Power battery is specifically designed for electric vehicle. If the power battery is used outside this vehicle or modified in any way, accidents such as electric shock, heating, smoking, explosion, and electrolyte leakage may occur.
- When not selling or transferring vehicle through authorized FAW Hongqi dealer, the possibility of accidents is extremely high as the buyer does not understand these dangers.

■ **When the battery leaks or there is a pungent and fragrant odor in the vehicle after a collision, or there is obvious liquid flowing out outside the vehicle, or there is smoke inside the battery pack:**

- Please turn the power (ignition) switch to OFF mode and disconnect the 12 V battery when conditions permit.
- Immediately call the service hotline of authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to request rescue, and do not perform any other operations on the vehicle.

■ **The high voltage of power battery is very dangerous, it's strictly prohibited non-professional personnel from disassembling or repairing power battery.**

■ **If the power battery is not removed when scrapping the vehicle, there is a risk of severe electric shock when touching high voltage parts, cables, and their connectors. If the vehicle must be scrapped, the power battery must be handled by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer or professional organization. If the power battery is not handled properly, it may cause electric shock, which lead to serious injury or even death.**

**CAUTION**

- There is a thermal management system inside the power battery assembly, but it is still recommended that users avoid intense driving in extreme high and low temperature environments as much as possible.
- The power battery should be stored in a dry and ventilated environment. The storage temperature range of power battery (vehicle) is  $-40^{\circ}\text{C}\sim 60^{\circ}\text{C}$ . To ensure battery performance, it is not recommended that the vehicle be exposed to environments below  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  or above  $60^{\circ}\text{C}$  for more than 24 hours. It is recommended to store within the range of  $5^{\circ}\text{C}$  to  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the storage time exceeds 1 week.
- Avoid placing the power battery to hot or humid environments (such as during paint baking) for a long time, and do not exceed 30 minutes at  $70^{\circ}\text{C}$  or 20 minutes at  $80^{\circ}\text{C}$ . It is recommended to remove the power battery assembly during paint baking.
- If the interval between two charging and discharging cycles is more than 2 months, the household or AC charging pile shall be used for recharging.
- Try to avoid driving the vehicle in water that exceeds the height of chassis, otherwise it may cause permanent damage to the power battery assembly. After the vehicle has been in contact with water, it should be moved to a dry area for parking as soon as possible.
- Do not park the vehicle in a humid, waterlogged area, to avoid the power battery being submerged in water for a long time to avoid fire.
- It may cause damage to battery if the battery is not maintained for more than 6 months.
- To protect battery performance, it is not appropriate to discharge the battery too low, otherwise it may cause permanent damage to battery performance.
- When the capacity of power battery significantly decreases (the vehicle's driving range significantly decreases) or the power battery has a serious malfunction (the vehicle cannot run normally, and the instrument cluster indicates a power system malfunction), please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for testing and maintenance of power battery, and replace the power battery assembly if necessary.



**8-1. Important information**

|                           |     |
|---------------------------|-----|
| Hazard warning lamp ..... | 384 |
| SOS alarm .....           | 385 |

**8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency**

|                                                         |     |
|---------------------------------------------------------|-----|
| If the vehicle needs to be towed .....                  | 386 |
| If the vehicle is found to be abnormal .....            | 391 |
| If warning lamp comes on or warning buzzer sounds ..... | 392 |
| If you have a flat tire .....                           | 398 |
| If the power system cannot start .....                  | 400 |
| If the key is lost .....                                | 401 |
| If the key fails to work normally .....                 | 402 |
| If the door cannot be locked normally .....             | 404 |
| If 12 V battery power is low .....                      | 406 |
| If your vehicle overheats .....                         | 409 |
| If an electrical fire occurs .....                      | 411 |
| If vehicle gets trapped .....                           | 412 |

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| If driving on water-logged road ..... | 414 |
|---------------------------------------|-----|

|                                |     |
|--------------------------------|-----|
| If you have a burst tire ..... | 415 |
|--------------------------------|-----|

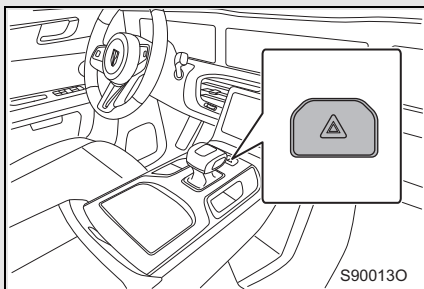
|                             |     |
|-----------------------------|-----|
| If an accident occurs ..... | 416 |
|-----------------------------|-----|

|                                       |     |
|---------------------------------------|-----|
| Emergency opening of trunk lid* ..... | 417 |
|---------------------------------------|-----|

## 8-1. Important information

### Hazard warning lamp

**When the vehicle breaks down, please stop by the roadside and turn on the hazard warning lamp; if the vehicle cannot be moved due to breakdown, please turn on the hazard warning lamp and put a warning triangle behind the vehicle. If necessary, please wear a reflective vest.**



Press the hazard warning lamp switch to make all turn signal lamps flash; press it again to turn off the hazard warning lamp.

#### **CAUTION**

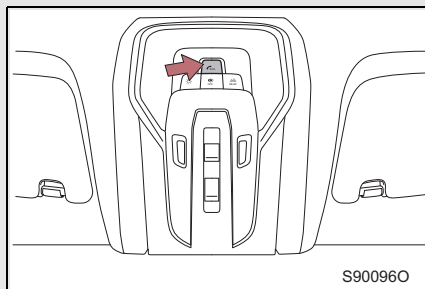
##### ■ Preventing a low 12 V battery

When the power (ignition) switch is not turned on, if it is not necessary to use the hazard warning lamp, turn it off.



### SOS alarm

If you need help in an emergency, press and hold the SOS alarm switch for 3 seconds and then release it. The emergency rescue phone will start dialing, and the SOS lamp will turn from always on to flashing. After receiving your call for help, the background service will arrange proper rescue service for you.



SOS alarm switch is located behind the front interior lamp.



#### CAUTION

- Please use the SOS alarm switch when needed.
- The SOS alarm function requires an Internet connection to operate. In some regions, vehicles may not be equipped with this function or it may be temporarily unavailable. For detailed configuration and usage information, please consult authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### If the vehicle needs to be towed

If the vehicle needs to be towed, FAW suggests that a flatbed carrier tow truck is used and the towing should be carried out by an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer or a professional rescue company. It is strictly prohibited to tow the vehicle in P position.

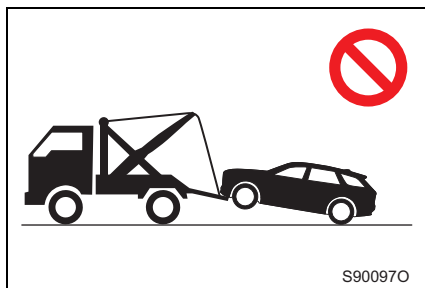
During the towing process, safety chains shall be used and all laws and regulations of the country shall be complied with.

#### Before towing

If the following conditions occur, the drivetrain may be faulty. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer before towing the vehicle.

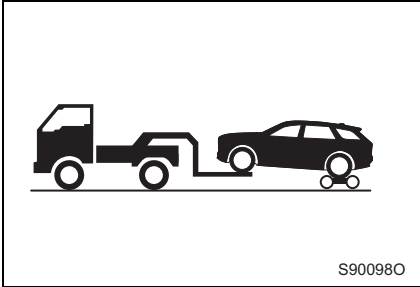
- The power system is running normally, but the vehicle cannot move.
- The vehicle has abnormal noise or vibration.

#### It is strictly forbidden to use a bumper lift tow truck for towing



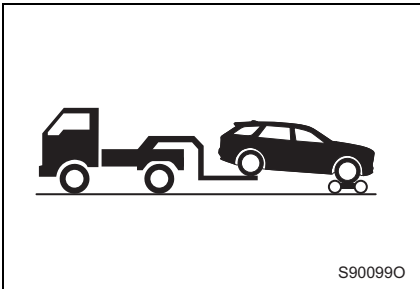
Do not use a bumper lift tow truck for towing, as it may cause damage to the vehicle body.

### Towing from the front with a wheel lift tow truck



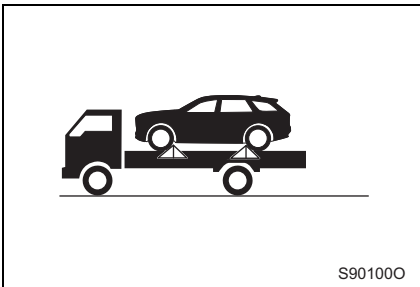
Locate the towing trolley under the rear wheels and put the vehicle into lifting mode.

### Towing from the rear with a wheel lifting tow truck



Locate the towing trolley under the front wheels and put the vehicle into lifting mode.

### Towing with a flatbed carrier tow truck



Apply the EPB and put the vehicle into lifting mode. Turn off the power (ignition) switch.

Use wedges under 4 wheels to prevent the vehicle from moving.

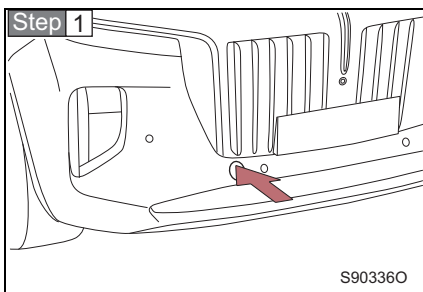
As shown in the figure, tie the tires to the bottom plate of the tow truck to secure the vehicle.

### Emergency towing

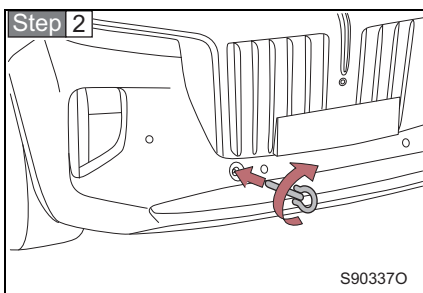
If the carrier tow truck cannot be found in an emergency, fasten the towing cable or towing chain to the towing eye and set the shift lever to N position to temporarily tow the vehicle. This method can only be used for towing at low speed and short distance on hard pavement.

The driver must sit in the vehicle and control the steering wheel and brake pedal. The wheels, drivetrain, steering wheel and brakes must be in good condition.

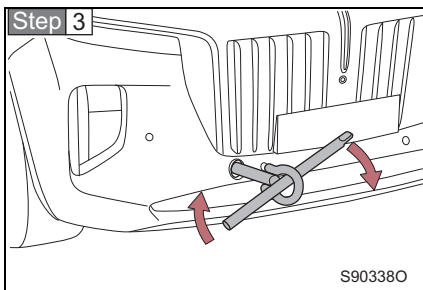
### Emergency towing steps



Press the upper side of towing eye hole cover to detach the towing eye hole cover.



Insert the towing eye into the hole and tighten it slightly by hand.



Tighten the towing eye with the auxiliary tool.

**Step 4** Secure the towing cable or towing chain firmly to the towing eye.

Be careful not to damage the vehicle body.

**Step 5** Enter the vehicle being towed and start the vehicle.

If the vehicle cannot start, turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.

**Step 6** Release the EPB and set the shift lever to N position.

### ■ Towing eye

The towing eye is stored in the driver's tool box. (See P. 398)

### **WARNING**

Please observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may result in serious personal injury or even death.

#### ■ **Before towing**

Be sure to transport the vehicle with all four wheels off the ground.

If the vehicle is towed with the driving wheels touching the ground, the drivetrain and related parts may be damaged.

#### ■ **Towing**

- For towing with ropes, the tow truck starts only when the ropes are tightened, and the ropes must be kept tightened all the time during towing. Otherwise, excessive pulling force will be generated on the towing eye and ropes, resulting in damage to the towing eye or ropes and personal injury.

#### ■ **Installation of towing eye on the vehicle**

Ensure that the towing eye is securely installed.

Otherwise, the towing eye may loosen during towing, which may cause accidents.



### CAUTION

- **During towing with a wheel lift tow truck, prevent damage to the vehicle.**

When the vehicle is lifted, make sure that there is enough ground clearance at the landing end of the vehicle for towing. Otherwise, the vehicle may be damaged during towing.

- **During towing with a bumper lift tow truck, prevent damage to the vehicle.**

Regardless of towing at the front or rear of the vehicle, do not use a bumper lift tow truck.

- **During towing with a flatbed carrier tow truck, prevent damage to the vehicle.**

- Do not pass the wedges. Otherwise, the tires may be damaged.
- Do not tie other parts (such as suspension) except for tires.

### If the vehicle is found to be abnormal

**If any of the following symptoms are found, the vehicle may need to be adjusted or repaired. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.**

■ Visible symptoms

- There is a liquid leaked under the vehicle.  
(It is normal for the A/C to drip water after use)
- Flat tire or uneven tire wear.
- Continuously and abnormally high coolant temperature.

■ Audible symptoms

- Excessive tire noise during turning.
- Abnormal noise related to suspension system.
- Noise related to power system.

■ Operation symptoms

- Noticeable decrease in power.
- The vehicle pulls to one side seriously during braking.
- The vehicle pulls to one side seriously during driving on a flat road.
- The brake system malfunctions, or the brake pedal feels soft and nearly reaches the floor.

## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

### If warning lamp comes on or warning buzzer sounds

If any warning lamp comes on or flashes, please keep calm and take the following measures. If any warning lamp comes on or flashes but then goes out, it does not necessarily indicate that the system is faulty. However, if this situation persists, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect the vehicle.

#### List of warning lamps

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Low charge state warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates power battery is low.</li></ul> → <b>Please charge or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                                   |
|    | <b>Power battery system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates a fault in the power battery system.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                          |
|   | <b>12 V battery charging fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If the warning lamp remains on, it indicates a fault in the 12 V battery charging system.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|  | <b>Bulb fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates a fault in external lamp units.</li></ul> → <b>Check for faults in external lamp units and harness connectors or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately.</b>                                  |
|  | <b>SRS fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• It indicates a fault in SRS.</li></ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                                                     |



| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Seat belt unfastened warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates that the driver's or passenger's seat belt is not fastened.</li> </ul> → <b>Fasten the driver's and passenger's seat belts.</b>                                      |
|    | <b>Electronic shift system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in electronic shift system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>           |
|    | <b>Electronic parking lock (Epark) warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in electronic parking lock (Epark).</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|    | <b>PEPS fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in PEPS.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                      |
|    | <b>Immobilizer system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in immobilizer system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                          |
|   | <b>Low key battery warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a low key battery.</li> </ul> → <b>Replace the key battery.</b>                                                                                                           |
|  | <b>Power system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the power system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                             |
|  | <b>Electronic wiper system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the electronic wiper system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                            |
|  | <b>Low washer fluid level warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a low washer fluid level.</li> </ul> → <b>Add washer fluid or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer immediately.</b>                                             |

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <p><b>Low brake fluid level/system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the brake system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. It is risky to keep driving in this case.</b></p> |
|    | <p><b>Brake degradation warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the brake system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer. It is risky to keep driving in this case.</b></p>                  |
|    | <p><b>EPS system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in EPS.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Please drive carefully and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                                                                |
|    | <p><b>EPS system major fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a major fault in the EPS.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                          |
|    | <p><b>ABS system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the ABS system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                                                                    |
|  | <p><b>Excessive brake lining wear warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates excessive wear of brake lining.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to inspect and replace the brake lining.</b></p>                                            |
|  | <p><b>EPB system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the EPB system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                               |
|  | <p><b>AUTO HOLD system fault warning lamp</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the AUTO HOLD system.</li> </ul> <p>→ <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b></p>                                                                                        |

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>HDC system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the HDC system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                    |
|    | <b>APA system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the APA system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                                    |
|    | <b>Tire pressure abnormal/system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the TPMS system or abnormal tire pressure.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|    | <b>Automatic headlamp/automatic wiper function fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the automatic headlamp/automatic wiper function.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                  |
|   | <b>Automatic headlamp leveling system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the automatic headlamp leveling system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                    |
|  | <b>Driving mode selection system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the driving mode selector.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                      |
|  | <b>Driver assistance system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the driver assistance system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                        |

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Air suspension system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the air suspension system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                         |
|    | <b>Air suspension system major fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a major fault in the air suspension system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>             |
|    | <b>SOS fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in SOS phone.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                           |
|    | <b>Low coolant level warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a low coolant level.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                    |
|    | <b>High coolant temperature warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a high coolant temperature.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|   | <b>Motor system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the motor system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>      |
|  | <b>Thermal management system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the thermal management system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                 |
|  | <b>Water heating PTC fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the water heating PTC.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                 |

| Warning lamp                                                                        | Warning lamp/detailed description/countermeasures                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|    | <b>Wireless charging fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the wireless charging function.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                           |
|    | <b>Power battery thermal runaway signal loss warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the power battery related system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                       |
|    | <b>High voltage system fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the vehicle's high voltage system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b> |
|    | <b>ESC system fault warning lamp (remains on)</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the ESC system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                     |
|    | <b>ISA fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the ISA system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                         |
|  | <b>FAW/AEB fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the FAW/AEB system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                 |
|  | <b>LDW fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the LDW system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                         |
|  | <b>LKA fault warning lamp</b> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• It indicates a fault in the LKA system.</li> </ul> → <b>Immediately contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.</b>                                                                         |

Note: When the high coolant temperature warning indicator lamp or any other indicator lamp comes on, the warning buzzer sounds.

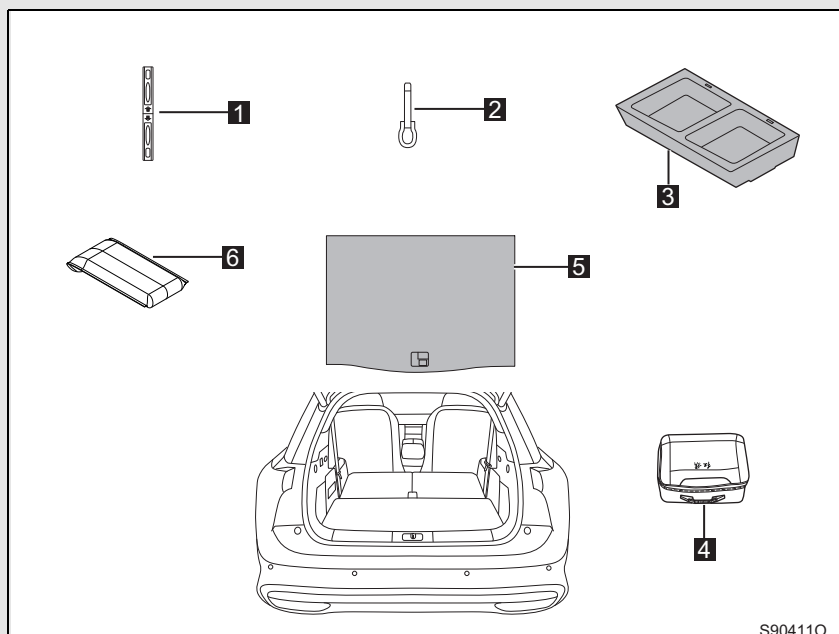
## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

### If you have a flat tire

Please use tire repair kit in driver's tool for repair.

Please refer to the instructions in the tire repair kit for specific operation methods.

■ Driver's tool



S90411O

1 Warning triangle

3 Driver's tool box

5 Trunk carpet

2 Towing eye

4 Tire repair kit

6 Reflective vest assembly

**WARNING****■ Do not drive the vehicle with flat tires**

- Do not continue driving the vehicle when any tire leaks.
- Otherwise, even if the driving distance is short, tires and the vehicle may be damaged, which will lead to unfeasible repair and even cause traffic accidents.

**■ Before repairing tires**

- Park the vehicle on a solid and level road.
- Apply the EPB.
- Set the shift lever to P position.
- Turn the power (ignition) switch to OFF mode.
- Turn on the hazard warning lamp and place the warning triangle.

**CAUTION**

- Pay attention to the surrounding environment when repairing tires to avoid accidents.

### If the power system cannot start

**If the power system cannot start even after correct start steps are performed (see P. 141), consider the following reasons.**

- Even if correct start steps are followed, the power system cannot start.

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- The vehicle's power battery is low.
- Key may not work properly.
- The gear control system may be faulty.
- An electrical failure (e.g., depleted key battery or blown fuse) can cause an power system failure. However, emergency measures can be taken to start according to the fault type.
- The immobiliser system may be faulty. (See P. 79)

- Interior lamps and headlamps are dim, or horns do not sound or sound with low volume.

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- The 12 V battery is low or depleted. (See P. 406)
- The terminals of the 12 V battery may be loose or corroded.

- The interior lamps and headlamps do not come on, or the horn does not sound

The failure may be caused by one of the following conditions:

- The terminals of the 12 V battery may be disconnected.
- The 12 V battery may have run out of power.

If the faults cannot be eliminated or the maintenance steps are unclear, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### If the key is lost

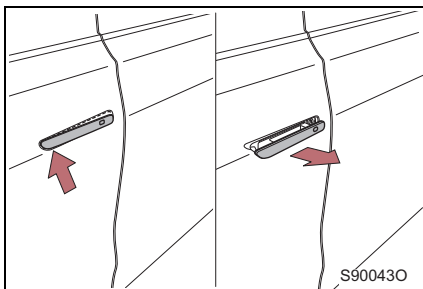
**If the smart key is lost or stolen, please provide the remaining keys to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible. After the keys are re-matched, the lost or stolen key will become invalid. Unauthorized modification or non-genuine spare parts may lead to system failure.**

## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

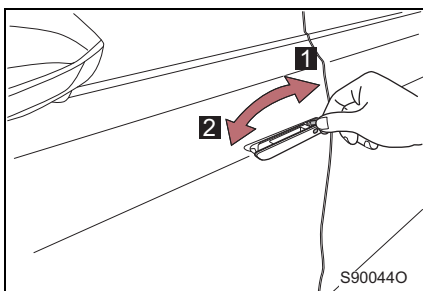
### If the key fails to work normally

If communication between the key and the vehicle is interrupted (see P. 107) or the key cannot be used due to insufficient battery power, the PEPS and wireless remote control will be invalid. At this time, the following steps can be followed to open the doors or start the power system.

#### Locking and unlocking the doors



Press the front of driver's door handle to raise it, then pull the middle part and pull it out vertically.



Pull the door handle and use the mechanical key to lock and unlock the vehicle.

**1** Unlocking the door

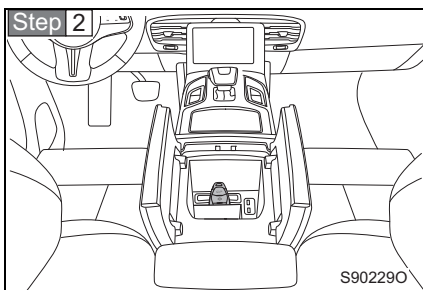
**2** Locking the door

## Backup start mode

When the key battery is low, the backup start mode should be used.

**Step 1** Press the power (ignition) switch or depress the brake pedal.

At this time, the multifunction display in the instrument cluster will prompt that the key cannot be recognized.



Open the front center storage box, and then put the smart key in the storage box.

**Step 3** Press the power (ignition) switch or depress the brake pedal to start the power system.

If the power system still cannot start, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## ■ Replacing key battery

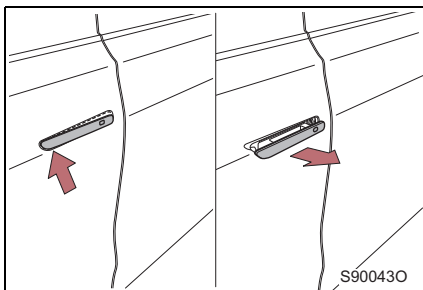
If the key battery is low, replace it in time. (See P. 373)

## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

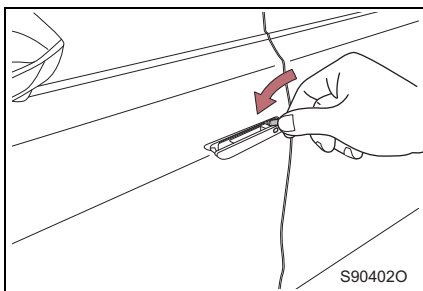
### If the door cannot be locked normally

**Doors cannot be locked by PEPS or wireless remote control due to a low battery. At this time, the following steps can be followed to lock doors.**

#### Locking the driver's door

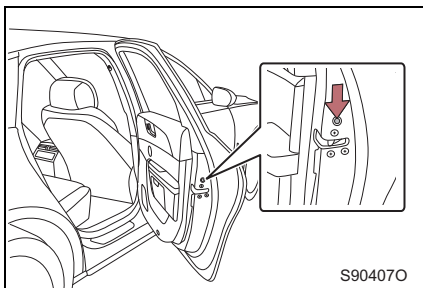


Press the front of driver's door handle to raise it, then pull the middle part and pull it out vertically.

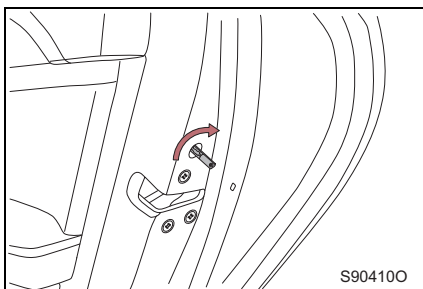


Pull the door handle and use the mechanical key to lock the door.

## Locking the front passenger's door and rear passenger's doors



Disengage the cover of the mechanical lock switch on the door on the corresponding side.



Close the door after locking with the mechanical key.

Front passenger's and right rear doors: turn the switch clockwise;

Left rear door: turn the switch counterclockwise.

## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

### If 12 V battery power is low

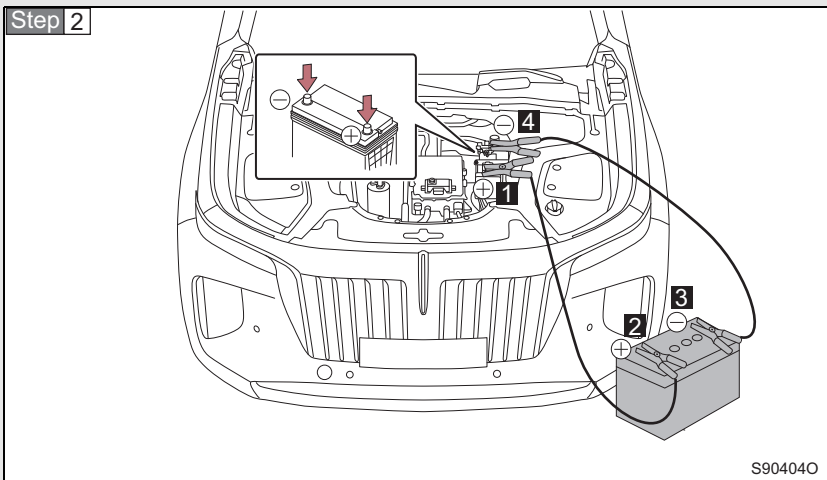
If the battery power is low, the following measures can be adopted to start the power system.

You can contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer or a professional repair shop.

If you have a set of jumper cables (or auxiliary cables) and another vehicle with a 12 V battery, you can jump start your vehicle according to the following steps.

**Step 1** Remove the cover of the 12 V battery positive terminal.

**Step 2**



Connecting jumper cables.

- 1** Connect to the 12 V battery positive (+) terminal of your vehicle.
- 2** Connect to the 12 V battery positive (+) terminal of the other vehicle.
- 3** Connect to the 12 V battery negative (-) terminal of the other vehicle.
- 4** Connect to the 12 V battery negative (-) terminal of your vehicle.

**Step 3** Start the engine of the other vehicle. Increase the engine speed slightly and keep it for about 5 minutes to recharge the 12 V battery of your vehicle.

**Step 4** Keep the engine of the other vehicle running, and then turn the power (ignition) switch of your vehicle to ON mode.

**Step 5** Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order of connection once the vehicle is started successfully.

Once the vehicle is started, drive it to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection as soon as possible.

### ■ Charging the 12 V battery

Due to natural discharge and the consumption of certain electrical equipment, the power stored in the 12 V battery gradually depletes even when the vehicle is not in use. If the vehicle is not in use for a long time, the 12 V battery may be depleted and the vehicle may fail to start. (After the vehicle starts, the 12 V battery is charged automatically)

### ■ Replacing 12 V battery

Use the 12 V battery that meets the manufacturer's standards.



#### CAUTION

#### ■ Handling jumper cables

- Only use a 12 V auxiliary battery.
- When connecting or disconnecting jumper cables, be careful not to entangle the cables with the cooling fan.



#### WARNING

#### ■ Removing 12 V battery terminals

- Be sure to disconnect the negative (-) terminal first. If the positive (+) terminal is removed and it touches any metal in the surrounding area, it may spark and cause a fire, possibly an electric shock, resulting in serious injury or even death.

#### ■ Preventing fire or explosion of 12 V battery

The 12 V battery may release flammable gases, therefore, be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid accidental ignition of flammable gas:

- Make sure that the jumper cables are connected to the correct terminals and will not accidentally touch any terminals other than the correct ones.
- Do not let the other end of the jumper cable connected to the "+" terminal touch any other part or metal surface in this area, such as bracket or unpainted metal.
- Do not let the "+" and "-" clamps of the jumper cable contact with each other.
- Do not use any open flames, smoke or use matches or lighters near the 12 V battery.
- Please pay attention when connecting the negative cable to the vehicle. Sparks may be generated when connecting the second jumper cable. Sparks may cause gas explosion near the battery and cause personal injury.



### WARNING

■ **Once the vehicle is started after charging, drive it to an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for inspection as soon as possible.**

■ **Precautions for 12 V battery**

The 12 V battery contains toxic and corrosive acidic electrolytes. Therefore, be sure to observe the following precautions when handling the 12 V battery:

- Always wear goggles when handling the 12 V battery and be careful not to let any 12 V battery electrolyte come into contact with your skin and clothing or vehicle body.
- Do not lean over the 12 V battery.
- If the 12 V battery electrolyte comes into contact with your skin or eyes, rinse the affected area immediately with water and seek medical attention. Cover the contact area with a damp sponge or a piece of damp cloth until you see a doctor.
- Always wash your hands after handling the 12 V battery bracket, terminals, and other 12 V battery-related parts.
- Keep children away from the 12 V battery.
- When arranging jumper cables, it should be kept away from moving parts. It is dangerous to connect jumper cables to the moving parts (such as cooling fan) or the surroundings. When the vehicle starts, the cable may get stuck, leading to serious personal injury.
- If the battery is aging and continues use may cause the battery to emit foul odor gas, which may endanger the health of passengers. Please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer to check the battery as soon as possible.



### If your vehicle overheats

**The vehicle may be overheated under the following conditions.**

- The alarm for high coolant temperature is issued or a decrease in power is felt.
- Steam comes out beneath the front compartment cover.

#### ■ Countermeasures

**Step 1** Park the vehicle in a safe place and turn off the A/C system.

**Step 2** Check whether steam comes out from beneath the front compartment cover.

#### **If steam comes out:**

Turn off the power (ignition) switch. After steam dissipates, carefully lift the front compartment cover and restart the power (ignition) switch.

#### **If steam does not come out:**

Keep the power system running and carefully lift the front compartment cover.

**Step 3** Check whether the cooling fan is operating.

#### **If the fan runs:**

Wait until the coolant temperature begins to drop (coolant temperature is displayed on the instrument cluster), and turn off the power (ignition) switch.

#### **If the fan does not run:**

Turn off the power (ignition) switch, and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

**Step 4** After the system is cooled sufficiently, check the coolant level, and check the cooling system for leakage.

**Step 5** Add coolant if necessary. (See P. 355)

If there is no coolant in case of emergency, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.



### WARNING

#### ■ Precautions for inspection:

When opening the front compartment cover for inspection, be sure to observe the following precautions to avoid accidents or personal injuries.

- If steam comes out beneath the front compartment cover, do not open the front compartment cover before steam dissipates. The vehicle may be very hot, resulting in serious injuries such as scalding.
- When the vehicle is powered on, do not approach the fan.
- When the power system and radiator are hot, do not release the coolant filler cap. otherwise hot coolant and steam may be released under pressure, resulting in serious scalding and other injuries.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Adding coolant

Add coolant slowly after the power system is cooled sufficiently. If cold coolant is added too quickly when the power system is hot, the power system will be damaged.

#### ■ Preventing damage to cooling system

Please observe the following precautions:

- Prevent foreign matters (such as sand or dust) from entering into coolant.
- Do not use any coolant additives.

## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

### If an electrical fire occurs

**If an electrical fire occurs, please follow the following operations and contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer as soon as possible.**

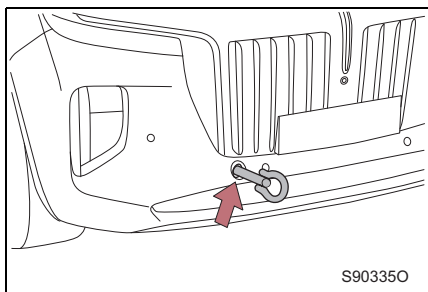
- Protect yourself and do not inhale smoke.
- Call for help.
- Carbon dioxide fire extinguisher or foam fire extinguisher should be used when extinguishing fires on electrical equipment.
- Do not use a carbon dioxide fire extinguisher to extinguish fires on individuals, as there is a risk of suffocation.

### If vehicle gets trapped

**In case of wheel idling or trapping in mud or snow, perform the following operations.**

- Step 1** Apply the EPB and set the shift lever to P position. Turn off the power (ignition) switch.
- Step 2** Remove mud, snow or sand around the trapped tires.
- Step 3** Place wooden blocks, stones or other materials under all tires to help increase the ground grip of the tires.
- Step 4** Turn the power (ignition) switch to ON mode.
- Step 5** Set the shift lever to D or R position, and depress the accelerator pedal carefully to drive the vehicle out of the trap.

#### ■ Emergency towing



- If the vehicle is trapped or immobile, the towing eye can be used to tie the towing cable or chain to another vehicle to tow the vehicle in an emergency.
- For details, refer to "If the vehicle needs to be towed" in this chapter. (See P. 386)
- It is not recommended to tow other vehicles with your vehicle.

#### **WARNING**

##### ■ Driving the vehicle out of the trap

If the vehicle is driven out of the trap by pushing the vehicle from the front and rear, make sure that the surrounding area is spacious and unimpeded to avoid colliding with other vehicles, objects or people. When the vehicle is to be driven out of the trap, it may suddenly rush forward or backward, so extra care shall be taken.

##### ■ When operating the shift lever

Do not depress the accelerator pedal during gear shifting, otherwise the vehicle may accelerate suddenly, resulting in a serious accident.

**CAUTION****■ Preventing damage to components**

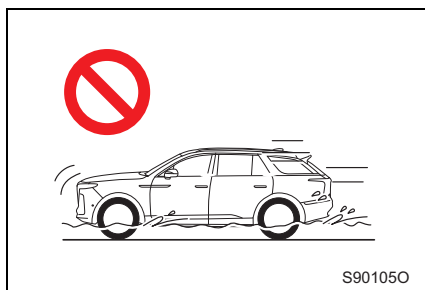
- If the vehicle still cannot get out of the trap after several attempts, it is required to seek the assistance of a tow truck.

## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

### If driving on water-logged road

**In case of accidental driving on a water-logged road and water entry, contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer for the following inspections:**

- Check the braking efficiency of brakes.
- Check the oil level and quality of the reducer (if the lubricating oil is turbid, it is contaminated by water; in this case, change the lubricating oil).
- Check the lubrication of the drive shaft, bearings, joints, etc.



In case of driving on a water-logged road, it is easy to cause power system malfunction, short circuit of electrical components, and water ingress are likely to occur. Please do not attempt to start the power (ignition) switch after the power system is stopped, otherwise it may cause serious damage to the power system.

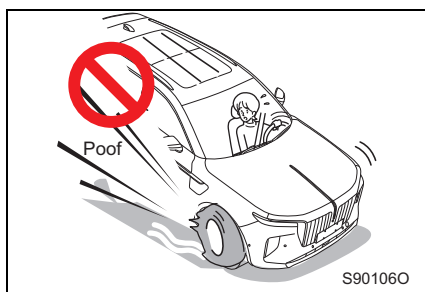
### If you have a burst tire

**In the event of tire burst or rupture during driving, keep calm.**

Hold the steering wheel firmly and depress the brake pedal slowly to decelerate the vehicle. If you perform emergency braking or turn the steering wheel sharply, you are prone to lose control of the vehicle.

Please determine if it is caused by tire burst or rupture under the following conditions:

- Steering wheel jitter.
- Abnormal vehicle vibration.
- Abnormal vehicle inclination.



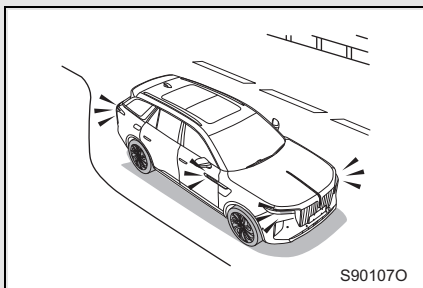
Do not drive with a flat tire.

Driving with a flat tire is so dangerous that accidents are likely to occur. In addition, tires, rims, suspensions and body will be damaged. In this case, replace the tires promptly or contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

## 8-2. Countermeasures in case of an emergency

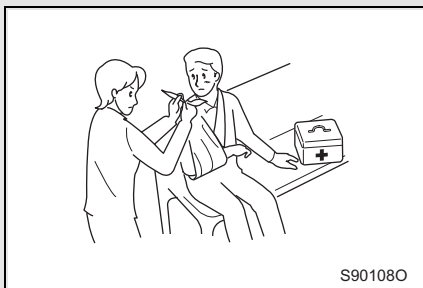
### If an accident occurs

**Don't panic, instead, follow the steps below:**



- 1** Prevent consecutive accidents.

Move the vehicle to a safe area so as not to interfere with traffic, and turn off the power (ignition) switch.



- 2** Take emergency measures in case of personal injuries.

Try to take emergency measures before arrival of the doctor and ambulance. If the head is injured seriously, try to keep still. If there is a risk of consecutive accidents, move the injured person to a safe place.



- 3** Call the police.

- 4** Confirm the troublemaker and record the relevant information (name, address, phone number, etc.).

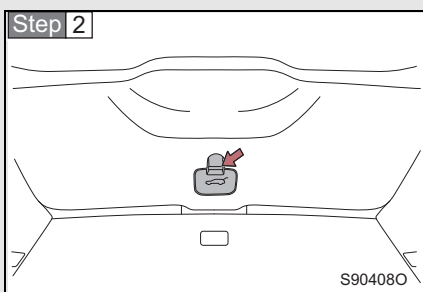
- 5** Contact the authorized FAW Hongqi dealer and insurance company.



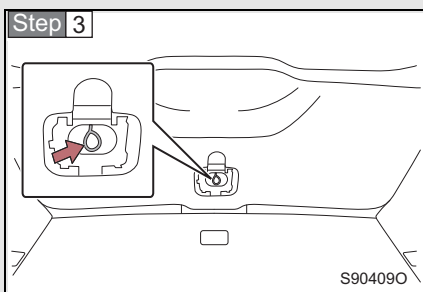
### Emergency opening of trunk lid\*

The following steps can be taken as emergency measures to ensure that the trunk lid can be opened.

**Step 1** Enter the trunk area via folding the second and third row seat backs.



Open the emergency unlocking cover on the trunk lid.



Pull the trunk lid unlocking cable to open the trunk lid.

#### **WARNING**

■ **When opening or closing the trunk lid manually in an emergency, be careful to prevent injuries.**

- Do not allow children or persons in need of assistance to operate the vehicle alone, otherwise they may be trapped in the vehicle and cannot safely leave or perform self-rescue in the event of an emergency.
- With seasonal changes, the temperature in the locked vehicle may be very high or low, therefore, occupants especially children are prone to injury or illness and even death.
- When opening or closing the trunk lid, take special care to ensure that there is no person between the trunk lid and the body.



### CAUTION

#### ■ Preventing damage to vehicle

When opening or closing the trunk lid in an emergency, be careful during removal and refitting of the parts, to avoid damaging the vehicle.

---

## 9-1. Specifications

Maintenance data .....420

## Maintenance data

## Dimensions

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001,  
QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

|                 |       |                                                                                |
|-----------------|-------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Overall length  |       | 5,209 mm                                                                       |
| Overall width   |       | 2,010 mm                                                                       |
| Overall height  |       | 1,731 mm                                                                       |
| Front overhang  |       | 916 mm                                                                         |
| Rear overhang   |       | 1,183 mm                                                                       |
| Wheelbase       |       | 3,110 mm                                                                       |
| Wheel track     | Front | 1,708 mm                                                                       |
|                 | Rear  | 1,709 mm                                                                       |
| Approach angle  |       | 22.5°<br>(QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001)<br>21.3°<br>(QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001) |
| Departure angle |       | 22.4°<br>(QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001)<br>21.4°<br>(QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001) |

## Seating capacity

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Seating capacity | 7 |
|------------------|---|

■ Model No.: QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

|                  |   |
|------------------|---|
| Seating capacity | 6 |
|------------------|---|

## Drive mode

|            |                  |
|------------|------------------|
| Drive mode | Four-wheel drive |
|------------|------------------|

## Vehicle mass

### Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001

|                       |       |          |
|-----------------------|-------|----------|
| Curb weight           |       | 2,505 kg |
| Gross vehicle weight  |       | 3,130 kg |
| Axle load (full load) | Front | 1,271 kg |
|                       | Rear  | 1,859 kg |

### Model No.: QRP6WGCN0001

|                       |       |          |
|-----------------------|-------|----------|
| Curb weight           |       | 2,660 kg |
| Gross vehicle weight  |       | 3,205 kg |
| Axle load (full load) | Front | 1,350 kg |
|                       | Rear  | 1,855 kg |

### Model No.: QRP7WGCN0001

|                       |       |          |
|-----------------------|-------|----------|
| Curb weight           |       | 2,630 kg |
| Gross vehicle weight  |       | 3,180 kg |
| Axle load (full load) | Front | 1,288 kg |
|                       | Rear  | 1,892 kg |

### Model No.: QRP7DKCN0001

|                       |       |          |
|-----------------------|-------|----------|
| Curb weight           |       | 2,702 kg |
| Gross vehicle weight  |       | 3,232 kg |
| Axle load (full load) | Front | 1,348 kg |
|                       | Rear  | 1,884 kg |

Power performance of the vehicle

Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001,  
QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

|                      |          |
|----------------------|----------|
| Maximum gradeability | 45%      |
| Maximum speed        | 200 km/h |

Motor

|              |                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| Model        | CAM220PT2                             |
| Motor type   | AC permanent magnet synchronous motor |
| Peak power   | 160 kW                                |
| Rated power  | 80 kW                                 |
| Peak speed   | 15,000 rpm                            |
| Rated speed  | 5,093 rpm                             |
| Peak torque  | 300 N.m                               |
| Rated torque | 120 N.m                               |

|              |                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|
| Model        | CAM250PT1                             |
| Motor type   | AC permanent magnet synchronous motor |
| Peak power   | 245 kW                                |
| Rated power  | 80 kW                                 |
| Peak speed   | 14,500 rpm                            |
| Rated speed  | 5,200 rpm                             |
| Peak torque  | 450 N.m                               |
| Rated torque | 150 N.m                               |

## Power battery

### Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Model                 | CAB232EL3               |
| Battery type          | Ternary lithium battery |
| Nominal voltage       | 350 V                   |
| Total energy          | 84 kWh                  |
| Weight                | 471 Kg                  |
| Cooling method        | Liquid cooling          |
| Operation temperature | -30°C~55°C              |

### Model No.: QRP6WGNCN0001, QRP7WGNCN0001

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Model                 | CAB232EL1               |
| Battery type          | Ternary lithium battery |
| Nominal voltage       | 410 V                   |
| Total energy          | 99 kWh                  |
| Weight                | 553 Kg                  |
| Cooling method        | Liquid cooling          |
| Operation temperature | -30°C~55°C              |

■ Model No.: QRP7DKCN0001

|                       |                         |
|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| Model                 | CAB298EL1               |
| Battery type          | Ternary lithium battery |
| Nominal voltage       | 401 V                   |
| Total energy          | 120 kWh                 |
| Weight                | 595 Kg                  |
| Cooling method        | Liquid cooling          |
| Operation temperature | -30°C~55°C              |

■ Front wheel alignment (no load)

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001

|                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| Front wheel camber        | -6'±25'   |
| Kingpin caster angle      | 5°43'±45' |
| Kingpin inclination angle | 5°13'±45' |
| Front wheel toe-in        | β=13'±5'  |

■ Model No.: QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

|                           |           |
|---------------------------|-----------|
| Front wheel camber        | -20'±25'  |
| Kingpin caster angle      | 6°6'±45'  |
| Kingpin inclination angle | 5°22'±45' |
| Front wheel toe-in        | β=7.5'±5' |



## Rear wheel alignment (no load)

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001

|                   |                                                                      |
|-------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rear wheel camber | -1°3'±30' (Difference between left and right wheels is within ± 30') |
| Rear wheel toe-in | $\beta=8'\pm5'$ $2\beta=16'\pm10'$                                   |

■ Model No.: QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

|                   |                                                                       |
|-------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Rear wheel camber | -1°30'±30' (Difference between left and right wheels is within ± 30') |
| Rear wheel toe-in | $\beta=10'\pm5'$ $2\beta=20'\pm10'$                                   |

## Suspension

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001

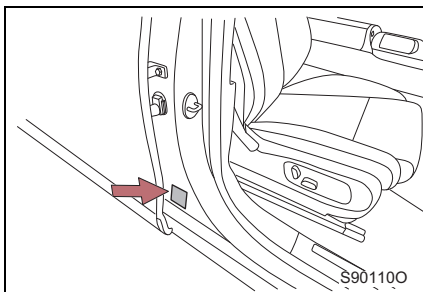
|                  |                        |          |                                                |
|------------------|------------------------|----------|------------------------------------------------|
| Front suspension | Type                   |          | Double wishbone independent suspension         |
|                  | Type of spring         |          | Spiral spring                                  |
|                  | Type of shock absorber |          | Double-cylinder hydro-pneumatic shock absorber |
|                  | Stabilizer bar         | Type     | Hollow stabilizer bar                          |
|                  |                        | Diameter | $\phi 34 \times 5.8$ mm                        |
| Rear suspension  | Type                   |          | Trapezoidal arm independent suspension         |
|                  | Type of spring         |          | Spiral spring                                  |
|                  | Type of shock absorber |          | Double-cylinder hydro-pneumatic shock absorber |
|                  | Stabilizer bar         | Type     | Hollow stabilizer bar                          |
|                  |                        | Diameter | $\phi 28.5 \times 5.2$ mm                      |

■ Model No.: QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

|                  |                        |          |                                           |
|------------------|------------------------|----------|-------------------------------------------|
| Front suspension | Type                   |          | Double wishbone independent suspension    |
|                  | Type of spring         |          | Air spring                                |
|                  | Type of shock absorber |          | Continuous damping control shock absorber |
|                  | Stabilizer bar         | Type     | Hollow stabilizer bar                     |
|                  |                        | Diameter | φ34 × 5.8 mm                              |
| Rear suspension  | Type                   |          | Trapezoidal arm independent suspension    |
|                  | Type of spring         |          | Air spring                                |
|                  | Type of shock absorber |          | Continuous damping control shock absorber |
|                  | Stabilizer bar         | Type     | Hollow stabilizer bar                     |
|                  |                        | Diameter | φ28.5 × 5.2 mm                            |

## Vehicle identification

### ■ Manufacturer's nameplate



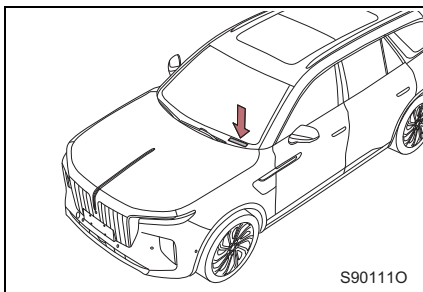
As shown in the figure, the manufacturer's nameplate is located on the right B-pillar.

The manufacturer's nameplate indicates the following information: Country of manufacture, manufacturer, vehicle identification number, brand, vehicle model, seating capacity, gross vehicle weight, drive motor model, drive motor peak power, rated voltage of power battery system, rated capacity of power battery system and manufacturing date.

### ■ Vehicle identification number

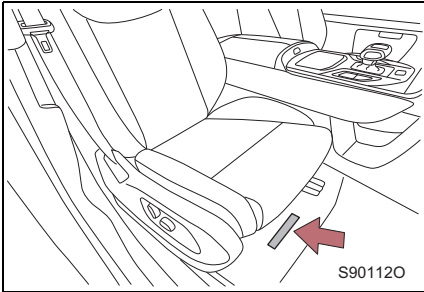
The vehicle identification number (VIN) is the legal identification of the vehicle. As the primary identification number, the VIN is used for owner registration.

#### ► Top left of the instrument panel



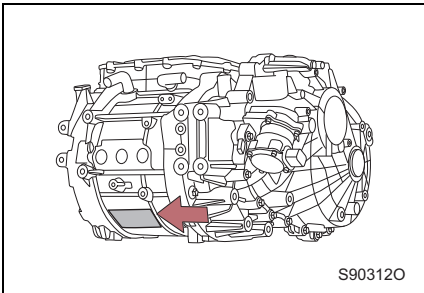
It is affixed under the windshield at the top left of the instrument panel.

► Under the front passenger's seat



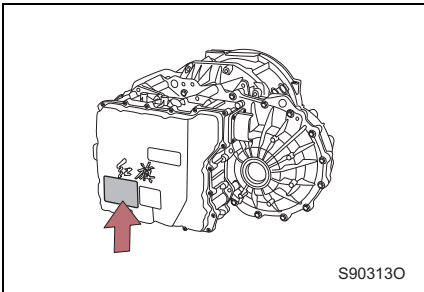
It is imprinted under the front passenger's seat.

■ Motor No. (CAM220PT2)



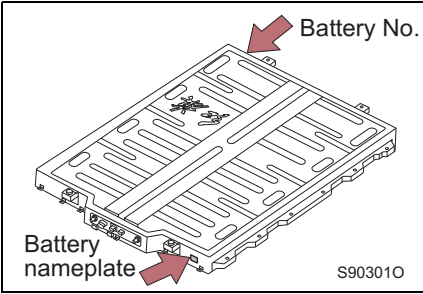
As shown in the figure, the motor number and motor nameplate are located on the motor body.

■ Motor No. (CAM250PT1)



As shown in the figure, the motor number and motor nameplate are located on the motor body.

■ Power battery No.



As shown in the figure, the battery number and battery nameplate are located on the battery housing.

■ Microwave window

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001, QRP6WGCN0001,  
QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

Recommended position for microwave window (viewed in the cab)

A top-down view of a microwave window. A dashed vertical line indicates the center. A rectangular area is marked with dimensions: 125mm (width) and 20mm (height). The part number 'S904350' is printed in the bottom right corner.

■ Cooling system

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001

|                                 |                                                                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Motor system coolant capacity   | 8 ± 0.8 L                                                         |
| Battery system coolant capacity | 10.5 ± 1 L                                                        |
| Coolant type                    | Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year (G30-91) |

■ Model No.: QRP6WGCN0001, QRP7WGCN0001

|                                 |                                                                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Motor system coolant capacity   | $8 \pm 0.8$ L                                                     |
| Battery system coolant capacity | $12.5 \pm 1$ L                                                    |
| Coolant type                    | Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year (G30-91) |

■ Model No.: QRP7DKCN0001

|                                 |                                                                   |
|---------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Motor system coolant capacity   | 8.4 L                                                             |
| Battery system coolant capacity | $14 \pm 1$ L                                                      |
| Coolant type                    | Use the automobile long-life coolant throughout the year (G30-91) |

### Reducer (front/rear)

■ Model No.: QRP5WHCN0001

|                        |                                |
|------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Reducer fluid capacity | $0.64 \pm 0.02$ L (front/rear) |
| Reducer fluid type     | CASTROL BOT350 M3              |

■ Model No.: QRP6WGCN0001, QRP7WGCN0001, QRP7DKCN0001

|                        |                                                      |
|------------------------|------------------------------------------------------|
| Reducer fluid capacity | $0.64 \pm 0.02$ L (front)<br>$1.4 \pm 0.05$ L (rear) |
| Reducer fluid type     | CASTROL BOT350 M3                                    |

### Electrical system

|              |                                |
|--------------|--------------------------------|
| 12 V battery | 45 Ah maintenance free battery |
|--------------|--------------------------------|

### A/C refrigerant

|                               |              |
|-------------------------------|--------------|
| A/C refrigerant capacity      | 1,120 ± 25 g |
| A/C refrigerant specification | R134a        |

### Brake

|                                                        |               |
|--------------------------------------------------------|---------------|
| Free travel of brake pedal                             | ≤ 10 mm       |
| Travel of brake pedal                                  | 115 mm        |
| Brake fluid capacity                                   | 0.83 ± 0.01 L |
| Brake fluid type<br>(In accordance with GB 12981-2012) | DOT4          |

### Reasonable usable range of brake lining pairs

#### ► Front

|                         |          |                  |                                           |
|-------------------------|----------|------------------|-------------------------------------------|
| Thickness of brake pad  | Standard | Total<br>18.3 mm | Thickness of friction material<br>12.5 mm |
|                         | Minimum  | Total<br>8.8 mm  | Thickness of friction material<br>3 mm    |
| Thickness of brake disc | Standard | 32 mm            |                                           |
|                         | Minimum  | 30 mm            |                                           |

► Rear

|                         |          |               |                                       |
|-------------------------|----------|---------------|---------------------------------------|
| Thickness of brake pad  | Standard | Total 17.5 mm | Thickness of friction material 11 mm  |
|                         | Minimum  | Total 9 mm    | Thickness of friction material 2.5 mm |
| Thickness of brake disc | Standard | 24 mm         |                                       |
|                         | Minimum  | 22 mm         |                                       |

 **CAUTION**

When the brake pad is worn to the minimum thickness, there will be an audible alarm prompt, and the brake pad should be replaced as soon as possible.

Tires and wheels

|                                        |                                          |           |           |           |
|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| Tire specifications                    | 265/45 R21 108W XL<br>275/40 R22 107W XL |           |           |           |
| Wheel dimensions                       | 21×9J    22×9.5J                         |           |           |           |
| Tire pressure kPa (bar)                |                                          | 3 persons | ECO       | Full load |
|                                        | Front                                    | 240 (2.4) | 280 (2.8) | 240 (2.4) |
|                                        | Rear                                     | 270 (2.7) | 280 (2.8) | 270 (2.7) |
| Wheel bolt torque                      | (160 ± 10) N.m                           |           |           |           |
| Requirements for wheel dynamic balance | Residual unbalance: ≤ 8 g                |           |           |           |



Seat (when the seat cushion is deep)

Model No.: CA6520H0EVH, CA6520H0EVXK, CA6520H0EVXM

|                  |                                                                                           |                |
|------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|
| Front seats      | Longitudinal position (forward from the limit position at the rear end of the slide rail) | 254 mm         |
|                  | Seat back reclining                                                                       | 25°            |
| Second row seats | Longitudinal adjustment                                                                   | 150 mm         |
|                  | Seat back reclining                                                                       | 25°            |
| Third row seats  | Longitudinal adjustment                                                                   | Not adjustable |
|                  | Seat back reclining                                                                       | 20°            |

Normal use state of the seat back: The seat back in any position within the range of adjustable travel is in normal use state.



Other information

---

List of abbreviations ..... 436

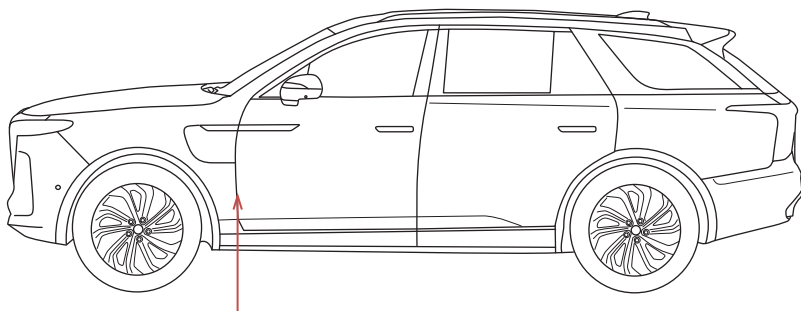
## List of abbreviations

| Abbreviation | Description                               |
|--------------|-------------------------------------------|
| ABP          | Automatic Brake Prefill                   |
| ABS          | Antilock Brake System                     |
| ACC          | Adaptive Cruise Control                   |
| ADB          | Adaptive Driving Beam                     |
| ADS          | Auto Defrost System                       |
| AEB          | Autonomous Emergency Braking              |
| APA          | Auto Parking Assist                       |
| AQS          | Air Quality System                        |
| BSD          | Blind Spot Detection                      |
| CDC          | Continuous Damping Control                |
| CDD-S        | Controlled Deceleration for ACC-Stop & Go |
| CDP          | Controlled Deceleration for Parking Brake |
| DCLC         | Driver Controlled Lane Change             |
| DSM          | Driver Status Monitoring                  |
| EBD          | Electronic Brakeforce Distribution        |
| EDR          | Event Data Recorder                       |
| ELR          | Emergency Locking Retractor               |
| EPB          | Electrical Parking Brake                  |
| EPS          | Electric Power Steering                   |
| ESC          | Electronic Stability Control              |

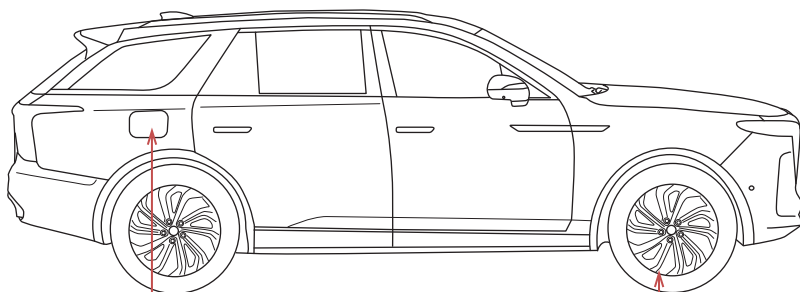
| Abbreviation | Description                      |
|--------------|----------------------------------|
| ESS          | Emergency Stop Signal            |
| FCW          | Forward Collision Warning        |
| GPS          | Global Positioning System        |
| HBA          | Hydraulic Brake Assist           |
| HBB          | Hydraulic Brake Boost            |
| HCU          | Hybrid Control Unit              |
| HDC          | Hill Descent Control             |
| HHC          | Hill Hold Control                |
| LDW          | Lane Departure Warning           |
| LED          | Light Emitting Diode             |
| LKA          | Lane Keeping Assist              |
| MAX          | Maximum                          |
| MIN          | Minimize                         |
| OBD          | On-Board Diagnostic              |
| POI          | Point Of Interest                |
| PTC          | Positive Temperature Coefficient |
| SACC         | Super Adaptive Cruise Control    |
| SOC          | State Of Charge                  |
| TCS          | Traction Control System          |
| TPMS         | Tire Pressure Monitoring System  |

| Abbreviation | Description                   |
|--------------|-------------------------------|
| TSR          | Traffic Sign Recognition      |
| USB          | Universal Serial Bus          |
| VIN          | Vehicle Identification Number |

## References for charging station



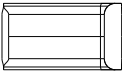
Front compartment cover release handle  
P. 353



Charging port cover  
P. 175

Tire pressure  
P. 432

### List of accompanying tools

| Illustration                                                                      | Name                     | Quantity |
|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|----------|
|  | Warning triangle         | 1        |
|  | Towing eye               | 1        |
|  | Reflective vest assembly | 1        |
|  | Tire repair kit          | 1        |



### Technical prerequisites

Trailer towing device must comply with regulations.

Although your vehicle is primarily used for transporting personnel and luggage, it can also tow a trailer when equipped with relevant technical devices.

If your vehicle leaves the factory equipped with a trailer towing device, all necessary technical and legal conditions for driving with trailer have been taken into consideration.

This vehicle has a plug-in device for electrical connection between towing vehicle and trailer.

The installation of a trailer towing device must be carried out in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

The maximum trailer weight is 1,500 kg.

If the loading weight exceeds 750 kg, the trailer should be equipped with an independent brake system. The brake must be suitable for the weight of trailer. Please follow the instructions provided by the trailer brake manufacturer to ensure that the trailer brake is properly installed, debugged and maintained.

The maximum vertical load is 60 kg.

Vertical load is the downward force exerted by the weight of trailer on the ball joint of trailer towing device, which shall not be less than 4% of the trailer load. When the towing vehicle is loaded with a certain weight of equipment, personnel or cargo, the vertical load will be reduced, thereby weakening the maximum traction force.

When calculating the maximum traction force, it is assumed that the vehicle rated weight has not been exceeded.



#### **WARNING**

Trailer towing device should be installed by professional enterprises.

- **If there is no suitable cooling system, do not drive uphill for a long time, especially when the ambient temperature is high. Otherwise, it will cause the cooling system to overheat.**
- **Incorrect installation poses a risk of accidents!**

## Usage guide

When driving with trailer, several precautions must be taken.

### ■ Traction load

- Under no circumstances is it permitted to exceed the allowable traction load.
- The supporting load data on the trailer towing device model plate is only the test value of device. The actual values for each vehicle are often lower than these values. For details, please contact an authorized FAW Hongqi dealer.

### ■ Horizontal height adjustment system\*

The following is applicable to vehicles equipped with air suspension system:

- Before connecting the trailer and adjusting the supporting load of trailer, the trailer mode must be set to keep the vehicle at normal height.

### ■ Load distribution

- The front axle load ratio after connecting a trailer cannot be less than 20% of the full load mass.
- Please try to place heavy objects near the axle when distributing the load on the trailer. Secure the object to prevent it from slipping. Improper loading may affect driving behavior.
- Efforts should be made to use the vertical supporting load of the towing rod allowed on the ball joint of the trailer towing device, but should not be exceeded.

### ■ Tire pressure

Select the tire inflation pressure under "full load" condition, please refer to the tire pressure label for details. If necessary, the tire inflation pressure of the trailer should be corrected according to the manufacturer's recommendations (when the trailer is fully loaded, the rear tire pressure needs to be increased to 290 kPa).

### ■ Exterior rearview mirror

If the rearview mirror with standard configuration is not sufficient to see the road conditions behind the trailer, an additional exterior rearview mirror must be installed. These two additional exterior rearview mirrors should be fixed to a foldable bracket. Please adjust these two rearview mirrors to provide sufficient visibility to the rear of vehicle.

### ■ Headlamp

- Before driving with a trailer, please check the setting of the headlights.
- Equipped with the automatic headlamp leveling system, the light distance will be automatically adjusted according to the load state of vehicle.

- 
- **For vehicles equipped with air suspension system, driving with trailer mode must be turned on before towing.**
  - **If you frequently drive with a trailer, we recommend performing additional maintenance on the vehicle between two maintenance sessions.**
  - **After towing, the overload mass of front vehicle cannot exceed 100 kg, and in this case, the vehicle speed cannot exceed 100 km/h, and the rear axle tire pressure is 0.2 bar higher than before.**

## Driving guide

Be particularly careful when driving with trailer.

### ■ Weight distribution

Towing a loaded trailer with an unloaded vehicle is extremely detrimental to load distribution. However, if you must drive in this combination, the vehicle speed must be particularly slow.

### ■ Vehicle speed

- The vehicle speed when driving a trailer must not exceed 80 km/h. If the front and rear vehicles meet specific technical prerequisites when towing, the maximum vehicle speed of 100 km/h is available. Please pay attention to the special regulations attached by each country.
- The driving stability of the two vehicles decreases with the increase of vehicle speed. Therefore, when the road conditions, weather and wind speed are poor, you should not drive at the legally permitted maximum speed, especially on downhill sections.
- No matter how small the trailer swings from side to side, once it is noticed, it must be slowed down immediately. Do not attempt to "straighten" the towing vehicle and trailer by accelerating.
- Brake timely! For trailers with inertia brakes, brake gently and then depress quickly and evenly. This avoids brake shock caused by trailer's wheels locking up. Before driving downhill, energy recovery can be used to generate brake effect.
- The shaking of vehicle body can be reduced through additional stability auxiliary device. When the traction load is high, it is recommended to install this type of stability auxiliary device. These devices can be purchased and installed by professional enterprises.

### ■ Overheating

When outside temperature is high, please pay attention to the coolant temperature. If the alarm for high coolant temperature is issued or a decrease in power is felt, reduce the vehicle speed immediately.